Recommended Citation:

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 87-619813

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents
(order form on p. 313)
‘Where can we dispose of our wastes?’ is a question being faced by virtually every community and industry in the country. For years, one common answer for communities and industries located in coastal areas has been to intentionally dispose of large amounts of waste materials in the Nation’s marine environments—estuaries, coastal waters, and the open ocean.

Two congressional committees—the House Committees on Merchant Marine and Fisheries and on Public Works and Transportation—requested OTA to undertake a broad assessment of waste disposal in marine environments. In addition, the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation endorsed the assessment. As part of the assessment, OTA issued a report on Ocean Incineration: Its Role in Managing Hazardous Waste (August 1986), and a staff paper on Subseabed Disposal of High-Level Radioactive Waste (May 1986).

This final report addresses two fundamental questions: what is the general condition of different marine environments and their resources, and what role can and should marine environments play in overall waste management? OTA’s principal findings are that estuaries and coastal waters are in deep trouble around the Nation, and that more coordinated waste management efforts are needed in many areas. As a Nation, we have been only partially successful in protecting these waters—and their ecologically, commercially, and esthetically valuable resources—from degradation. Policies to maintain or improve their quality, however, must be implemented in conjunction with policies about waste management strategies in general, including disposal in the open ocean and on land.

OTA is particularly grateful for the considerable effort devoted to this undertaking by our advisory panel, numerous contacts in Federal and State agencies, and numerous individuals in industry, academia, and public interest and environmental groups. These individuals helped OTA examine the enormous amount of available information from a number of important perspectives. We greatly appreciate this help.

JOHN H. GIBBONS
Director
Wastes in Marine Environments: Advisory Panel

Thomas Clingan, Chair
School of Law, University of Miami

Michael G. Norton, Co-Chair
Warren Spring Laboratory, United Kingdom
(formerly First Secretary, British Embassy)

Walter Barber
Waste Management, Inc.

Willard Bascom
Scripps Institute of Oceanography
(formerly with Southern California Coastal Water Research Project)

Rita Colwell
Department of Microbiology
University of Maryland

A. Myrick Freeman III
Department of Economics
Bowdoin College

Jon Gosdin
Governor’s Office
State of Texas

John Knauss
Graduate School of Oceanography
University of Rhode Island

George Lutzic
New York City Department of Environmental Protection

William J. Marrazzo
City of Philadelphia

Joseph T. McGough, Jr.
Parsons Brinckerhoff
(formerly with New York City Department of Environmental Protection)

Jerry Schubel
Marine Sciences Research Center
State University of New York at Stony Brook

Richard F. Schwer
Engineering Department
E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.

NOTE: OTA appreciates and is grateful for the valuable assistance and thoughtful critiques provided by the advisory panel members. The panel does not, however, necessarily approve, disapprove, or endorse this report. OTA assumes full responsibility for the report and the accuracy of its contents.

Related OTA Reports

● Ocean Incineration: Its Role in Managing Hazardous Wastes. OTA-O-3 13; August 1986. GPO stock #052-003-01046-1; $11.00.
● Serious Reduction of Hazardous Waste for Pollution Prevention and Industrial Efficiency. OTA-ITE-3 17; September 1986. GPO stock #052-003-1048-8; $12.00.
● Super fund Strategy. OTA-ITE-252; April 1985. GPO stock #052-003-00994-3; $10.00.
● Protecting the Nation Groundwater From Contamination. OTA-O-233; October 1984. GPO stock #052-003-00966-8; $7.50.
● Acid Rain and Transported Air Pollutants: Implications for Public Policy. OTA-O-204; June 1984. GPO stock #052-003-00956-1; $9.50
● Technologies and Management Strategies for Hazardous Waste Control. OTA-M - 196; March 1983. NTIS order #PB 83-189241.
OTA Project Staff

John Andelin, Assistant Director, OTA
Science, Information, and Natural Resources Division

Robert M. Niblock, Oceans and Environment Program Manager

Howard Levenson, Project Director

William D. Barnard, Senior Analyst
Richard A. Denison, Analyst
Gretchen E. Hund, Analyst
Nicholas A. Sundt, Analyst
Kathryn D. Wagner, Congressional Fellow
Patricia A. Catherwood, Analyst
Dale T. Brown, Analyst

Administrative Staff
Kathleen A. Beil
Jim Brewer, Jr.
Brenda B. Miller

*Principal Author of OTA's report, "Ocean Incineration: Its Role in Managing Hazardous Waste."

**Principal Author through November 1985
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Findings and Options</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Understanding Marine Disposal: The Broader Context</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Waste Disposal Activities and Pollutant Inputs</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Marine Environments and Processes, and Fate of Pollutants</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Impacts of Waste Disposal on Marine Resources</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Impacts of Waste Pollutants on Human Health</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Statutes and Programs Relating To Marine Waste Disposal</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Managing Industrial Effluents</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Managing Municipal Effluent and Sludge</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Managing Dredged Material</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Managing Industrial Wastes Dumped in Marine Waters</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td></td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1
Findings and Options
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Estuaries and Coastal Waters</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Open Ocean Waters</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Marine Waste Disposal in Broad Context</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Choices for Marine Waste Disposal</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Needs</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollutant Inputs and Impacts in Marine Waters</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waste Disposal and Pollutant Inputs</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impacts on Marine Environments</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Examples</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Issues and Options for Estuaries and Coastal Waters</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue 1: Current Pollutant Control Programs Will Not Protect All Estuaries and Coastal Waters</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options To Improve Current Pollutant Control Programs</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 1: Improving Enforcement</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 2: Ensuring Funding of Municipal Treatment Plant Construction</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 3: Expanding Regulation of Important Pollutants and Sources</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 4: Applying Ocean Discharge Criteria to Estuaries</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue 2: Some Estuaries and Coastal Waters Need More Comprehensive Management</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options To Provide Additional Waterbody Management</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 1: Establishing Measurable Goals and Evaluating Progress</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 2: Identifying Waterbodies Needing Additional Management</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 3: Developing Management Plans</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Issues and Options for Open Ocean Waters</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issues Regarding Waste Disposal in Open Ocean Waters</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options for Managing Waste Disposal in Open Ocean Waters</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 1: Maintaining or Strengthening the Current Restrictive Policy</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 2: Allowing Increased Disposal of Some Wastes</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Jurisdictional Boundaries of Environmental Laws Affecting Marine Disposal</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Boxes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Marine Environments and Relevant Federal Statutes</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Sources and Types of Pollutants Entering Marine Environments</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. The Water Quality Act of 1987</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1

Findings and Options

OVERVIEW

The marine waters of the United States—estuaries, coastal waters, and the open ocean—are used extensively for the disposal of various types of waste. Much public concern and debate has focused on the form of disposal known as dumping, which occurs when wastes such as sewage sludge, industrial wastes, and dredged material are transported by ships or barges to designated marine sites and dropped overboard. Relatively less attention has been given to other marine disposal activities such as the discharge of industrial and municipal effluents from numerous pipelines and to nonpoint pollution from agricultural and urban runoff. Pipeline discharges and runoff, however, are at least as important as dumping in causing impacts on marine resources.\(^1\)

OTA believes the most productive way to look at the disposal of wastes in the Nation’s marine environments is to understand two fundamental issues: first, the general condition of each of the types of marine waters that are used for disposal; and second, the nature and extent of the role that these waters can and should play in waste management. This study’s major findings about the first issue point to several policy options that could be instituted to maintain or improve the condition of these waters. The study also explores the policy implications of these options within the broad context of the second issue—the role of marine waters in waste management.

OTA developed three major findings concerning the health of the Nation marine environments. Although discussed later in this chapter and throughout the report, summarized briefly they conclude the following:

- Estuaries and coastal waters around the country receive the vast majority of pollutants introduced into marine environments. As a result, many of these waters have exhibited a variety of adverse impacts, and their overall health is declining or threatened.
- In the absence of additional measures, new or continued degradation will occur in many estuaries and some coastal waters around the country during the next few decades (even in some areas that exhibited improvements in the past).
- In contrast, the health of the open ocean generally appears to be better than that of estuaries and coastal waters. Relatively few impacts from waste disposal in the open ocean have been documented, in part because relatively little waste disposal has taken place there and because wastes disposed of there usually are extensively dispersed and diluted. Uncertainty exists, however, about the ability to discern impacts in the open ocean.

Managing Estuaries and Coastal Waters

Several Federal “pollutant control” programs have been established under the Clean Water Act (CWA) and the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) to regulate the disposal (via both discharge and dumping) of wastes into marine waters and to control the levels of pollutants in these wastes.\(^2\) The cornerstone of these programs has been the promulgation of uniform national regulations applicable to point sources of wastes or pollutants. Using this approach, some significant reductions in the quantities of pollutants entering marine waters have been and will probably continue to be achieved.

---

\(^1\)These terms are defined in box A

\(^2\)These terms are described in box B. OTA analyzed the ocean incineration of hazardous wastes in a companion report, Ocean Incineration: Its Role in Managing Hazardous Waste (586) and the potential disposal of high-level radioactive waste under the seafloor in a staff paper, Subseafloor Disposal of High-Level Radioactive Waste (585). Box B lists other sources of pollution that are not covered in this assessment.

\(^3\)These statutes are discussed in box A and in ch. 7. The term pollutant is defined and types of pollutants are described in box B.
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
River Runoff

CWA - Clean Water Act, formally known as the Federal Water Pollution Control Act

MPRSA - Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act

Dumping beyond the inner boundary of the territorial sea is covered by MPRSA (CWA covers dumping within the territorial sea in principle, but is preempted by MPRSA (see box A)). Estuarine dumping falls under CWA.

Pipelines (wherever they are located) are covered by CWA.

This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
such as total nitrogen, nitrates, total phosphorus, and others such as chlorine, fluoride, and certain metals (40 CFR 122, app. D).

Regulated Pollutants

In principle, any substance discharged or dumped to water is subject to regulation under the Clean Water Act and the Safe Drinking Water Act and Protection Act; “catch-all” provisions in both statutes (Secs. 301 and 103, respectively) of any material that would impede achievement of the broad goals of these statutes would be regulated. To facilitate the development of regulations and to provide some degree of consistency, specific lists of pollutants have been developed by the Federal Government. However, for a variety of economic, technical, and environmental reasons, standards that actually limit release have been developed for only a subset of these substances. Moreover, many additional pollutants that have been identified in wastes maybe of concern with respect to environmental or human health; in some cases, State or local limits on such substances have been developed, but many remain entirely unregulated (see ch. 8).

In practice, then, the term regulated pollutant has a rather limited meaning, referring only to: 1) those substances specifically included on government lists, or 2) the subset of these (plus any additional) substances for which limits are actually specified in discharge or dumping permits or ordinances. In this assessment, the term refers to a substance that meets one or both of the above criteria, with the understanding that even for many regulated pollutants, actual limits governing their disposal have not been developed. The term unregulated pollutants is reserved for other potentially significant pollutants that do not meet either of the above criteria.

These programs represent reasonable approaches to address the problem of pollution in marine environments. However, while relatively easy to conceptualize, they have proven far more difficult to fully implement. Only partial implementation has been achieved to date and numerous obstacles hinder them from becoming fully operative. Indeed, the prospect of ever achieving full implementation and enforcement is unlikely: the Nation’s past commitment of resources has been insufficient to accomplish all the essential activities of existing programs (e. g., monitoring and enforcement, municipal treatment plant construction) and even these resources are now declining (chs. 7, 8, and 9).

Moreover, even if total compliance with today’s regulations is achieved, existing programs will not be sufficient to achieve some goals of the CWA, in particular to maintain or improve the health of all estuaries and coastal waters. In the absence of additional measures to protect our marine waters, the next few decades will witness new or continued degradation in many estuaries and coastal waters around the country (including some that exhibited past improvements):

- current programs do not adequately address toxic pollutants or nonpoint source pollution;
- pipeline discharges and nonpoint source pollution (particularly urban runoff) will increase as population and industrial development expand in coastal areas;
- Federal resources available for municipal sewage treatment are declining, and the ability of States or communities to fill the breach is highly uncertain; and
- in many cases, economic, technical, or social factors will make it difficult or impossible to shift disposal or dumping of certain wastes out of estuaries and coastal waters.

The number of people living in counties near marine waters increased more than 80 percent from 1950 to 1984; by 1984, 40 percent of the U.S. population lived within 50 miles of a marine coast (including counties near but not necessarily adjacent to marine coastlines, but excluding Hawaii, Alaska, and areas around the Great Lakes) (566). Coastal populations are projected to continue to increase, and the intensity of recreation, development, and waste disposal that can impact marine waters will increase accordingly.
This projection of continued or increasing degradation is of great concern because estuaries and coastal waters are among the most important of all marine environments, with respect to their commercial resources, recreational uses, and ecological roles (chs. 2 and 4). Moreover, the ability to detect such deterioration and to understand its causes will be hampered if funding for monitoring and basic research continues to decline.

The nature and extent of impacts, and their causes, show tremendous variation from one estuary or coastal water to another. This diversity suggests that any additional management efforts should be site-specific—i.e., tailored specifically to the needs and problems of individual waterbodies—regardless of whether such efforts are conducted by Federal, State, or local agencies. “Waterbody management” programs have been established for a few marine water bodies (e.g., the Chesapeake Bay Program), but many other estuaries and coastal waters need additional management.

If the Nation desires to maintain or improve the health of its estuaries and coastal waters, a two-tiered approach toward managing these waters will be needed. First, implementation of the present system of uniform national controls should be continued and enhanced to provide a consistent, minimum level of protection. Second, additional waterbody management that provides sufficient flexibility to address site-specific problems, while probably difficult to develop and implement, will be needed in many areas to supplement current programs. OTA’s analysis of policy options for estuaries and coastal waters reflects this two-tiered approach.

Managing Open Ocean Waters

The health of the open ocean generally appears to be better than that of estuaries and coastal waters. Relatively few impacts from waste disposal have been observed, partly because the open ocean has been subject to relatively little waste disposal and because wastes are typically dispersed and diluted. Considerable uncertainty still exists, however, about the ability to discern impacts, particularly long-term ones, that may have occurred in the open ocean.

MPRSA has been relatively successful in managing dumping and providing some degree of protection for the open ocean. Nevertheless, the potential for harm to some valuable resources exists (e.g., from toxic chemicals such as polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), which have been detected in open-ocean fish).

Policy options for the open ocean discuss the implications of increasing, maintaining, or easing the current restrictions on open ocean disposal. If wastes are disposed of in the open ocean, it seems prudent to ensure that they contain low levels of toxic pollutants. Few long-term adverse consequences would be expected if relatively uncontaminated sewage sludge and dredged material were to be dumped in the open ocean under dispersive conditions.

Viewing Marine Waste Disposal in Broad Context

The environmental legislation passed in the 1960s and 1970s and the continued popularity of the environmental movement are clear expressions of society’s desire to protect the environment, including marine waters. The expected degradation in many estuaries and coastal waters and the relatively greater degree of protection afforded the open ocean, however, in some respects reflect a lack of comprehensive waste management (ch. 2). Current programs established to manage wastes focus primarily on one waste source or on disposal in one environment. Such narrowly focused programs were reasonable steps in approaching pollution problems. Attempts to control one problem, however, sometimes generate other problems, and pollutants often have been merely transferred among environments or wastestreams without any significant overall reduction in associated risks.

Some problems might be alleviated if policy choices about the role of marine waters in waste disposal were made within the context of a hierarchy of preferred waste management strategies (262, 377, 586). These strategies include:

5For example, the processes used to remove conventional pollutants from municipal wastewater result in increased production of sewage sludge. Moreover, most sludge is contaminated with toxic pollutants from industrial and other discharges into municipal sewers. While disposal of uncontaminated sludge faces obstacles, the disposal of contaminated sludge is even more severely constrained: it often cannot be applied on land and may not be amenable to incineration, landfill disposal, or ocean dumping (ch. 9).
• reducing the generation of wastes;
• when possible, beneficially using or recycling wastes; and
• when beneficial uses are not possible, choosing treatment or disposal options that cause the least damage to the environment and human health and that are acceptable to society at large. 6

None of these options eliminates risks entirely, and in some cases new risks can be created. Moreover, not all waste generation can be eliminated. Once wastes are generated, some type of ‘‘multi-media assessment’’ that compares the risks of different treatment and disposal options can help determine a preferred strategy in a given situation. Even then, a critical component will be public acceptability of the strategy itself and of the decision-making process (ch. 2).

To the extent that waste generation can be reduced, the need for disposal in different environments, including marine waters, can also be reduced. It is evident, however, that large amounts of wastes requiring disposal (e. g., municipal effluents and sludge, industrial effluents, and dredged material) will continue to be produced, although the levels of specific pollutants in these wastes could be lowered. At the same time, there is a strong desire for waste disposal to be inexpensive and to occur in remote locations. Several factors will increase pressure to use marine environments for waste disposal:

• the proximity of marine waters to major and/or growing urban areas that generate large amounts of wastes requiring disposal;
• the frequently lower costs of marine disposal;
• limits on the economic feasibility of land-based disposal for some highly voluminous wastes (e. g., municipal effluents); and
• limits on the availability of land-based disposal options for some wastes (e. g., sewage sludge, dredged material, and some industrial wastes) because of increased public opposition and State or local regulatory restrictions. 7

Policy Choices for Marine Waste Disposal

As indicated by OTA’s analysis, the degradation of marine waters is most threatening in many estuaries and coastal waters. The open ocean, in contrast, exhibits relatively better health and has received a greater degree of protection. Thus, different policy choices are applicable to estuaries and coastal waters and to the open ocean.

Estuaries and Coastal Waters

With regard to impacts caused by waste disposal activities and runoff, the only policy choice available to maintain and improve the health of estuaries and coastal waters is to minimize pollutant inputs to these waters. One option to minimize inputs is to shift some disposal activities to the open ocean (depending on policies regarding open ocean disposal, discussed below), for example, by extending pipelines or moving the dumping of dredged material. 8 For a variety of technical, logistical, and economic reasons, however, it appears unlikely that a significant number of pipelines now located in estuaries and coastal waters could be extended much further offshore. Similarly, at least some dumping of dredged material in estuaries and coastal waters will be necessary. Some disposal activities might be moved to land, but the availability of some land-based options is becoming more restricted.

For these reasons, several other, more feasible options for minimizing waste disposal and pollutant inputs in estuaries and coastal waters deserve attention. These options are organized by OTA within a two-tiered approach:

1. Maintain or consider expanding the current system of pollutant controls, as exem-

---

6 In this assessment, waste reduction includes those activities at the generation source that reduce the degree of risk associated with waste byproducts. OTA has analyzed the potential for, and obstacles to, achieving greater waste reduction (587). Reduction and reuse options may be applicable to some extent even to wastes commonly considered to be difficult to reduce or reuse. In some parts of the country, for example, municipal effluents are reallocated for use in irrigation or groundwater recharge. Water conservation efforts (e. g., use of waterless toilets) could reduce the quantity of wastewater requiring disposal.

7 Restrictions on land-based disposal, mandated by the 1984 Hazardous and Solid Wastes Amendments to the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) (see ch. 7), also could increase pressure to dispose of some hazardous wastes in the ocean (241, 263).

8 Some shifting of sewage sludge dumping from coastal waters (at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site in the New York Bight) to the open ocean (at the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site, 125 to 150 nautical miles southeast of New York harbor) is already underway.
plified by CWA’s uniform technology-based controls and requirements. Ensuring maintenance would require some combination of continued Federal, State, and local investments in:

— the construction of municipal treatment plants;
— increased and sustained support for enforcement efforts; and
— increased and sustained support for monitoring and research, to aid enforcement and evaluate long-term trends.

Expanding the system would involve regulating more toxic pollutants, industrial sources, and pathogens.

2. Establish additional, site-specific controls on waste disposal and nonpoint pollution where needed. ‘This would require:

— identifying those areas where such controls are needed (i.e., where the first tier of controls is not sufficient);
— establishing measurable, site-specific goals toward which progress could be evaluated; and
— in some cases, initiating or expanding formal “waterbody” management plans such as those developed for the Chesapeake Bay and Puget Sound.

Both Congress and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) are well aware of the need to continue supporting existing efforts and to develop new initiatives like those listed above. Congressional awareness of these needs is reflected in some of the major provisions of the Water Quality Act of 1987, which amended the Clean Water Act (box C). For example, Congress expressed its intent to continue Federal funding, for a limited time, of municipal treatment plant construction (although at a level considerably below that estimated by EPA to be needed); to promote additional management of various estuaries; and to provide funding for States to develop nonpoint source pollution programs. EPA has been involved in developing several waterbody management programs (e.g., the Chesapeake Bay and National Estuary Programs; see ch. 7), and has begun several efforts to identify waterbodies needing additional management (246,670). Many of these initiatives to provide additional, site-specific controls are in their infancy, however, and they will require much more direction, support, and oversight from Congress. Furthermore, these efforts currently are not part of a single, integrated strategy.

Establishing additional, site-specific controls could be aided by increasing the emphasis given to the “water quality” approach. This approach consists of designating desired goals such as fishable waters for a waterbody, developing pollutant-specific numerical criteria that establish the quality of water needed to attain the goals, and implementing controls on wastes or pollutants from point and/or nonpoint sources to meet the criteria. The water quality approach, which has always been a component of CWA, was intended to supplement the uniform pollutant controls once they were well-established and thus provide an additional layer of controls when and where necessary. EPA has developed some water quality-based controls, but in general the water quality approach has not been systematically applied to estuaries and coastal waters. Given OTA’s findings about the declining health of many estuaries and coastal waters and the limitations on the effectiveness of pollutant control programs, it now seems appropriate that Congress and EPA begin developing a systematic framework to implement the water quality approach more extensively.

Open Ocean Waters

Several distinct policy choices about the use of the open ocean for waste disposal are possible:

1. maintain current restrictions on and allowances for open ocean disposal,
2. tighten these restrictions, or
3. ease them.

Deciding which policy to choose is not clear-cut and depends on factors such as the availability of disposal options on land and in estuaries and coastal waters, as well as on the character of the particular waste in question. For example, uncontaminated sewage sludge and dredged material might best be used beneficially on land or in certain aquatic settings (e.g., sludge could be used to fertilize forestland; dredged material could
be used to replenish beaches or wetlands"). The feasibility of such uses can sometimes be limited, however, by economic constraints, land availabil-

ity, public opposition, and local and State regula-
tions (chs. 9, 10). These wastes, as well as acid or alkaline industrial wastes, also can be dumped in the open ocean under certain conditions with little likelihood of causing significant long-term impacts.

Contaminated material, on the other hand, can rarely if ever be used beneficially and therefore generally requires some other form of management. In such cases, the full range of available options, including some forms of marine disposal, needs to be evaluated. For example, it might be determined that disposal of some types of contaminated dredged material is best accomplished by “capping” it with clean material in marine waters; in other cases, disposal on land may be preferable.

Pressure to use the open ocean for disposal of sewage sludge, dredged material, and some in-
Industrial wastes will probably increase, especially if greater protection is provided for estuaries and coastal waters.

In response to growing pressure for such disposal, Congress could choose to allow increased disposal of some wastes in the open ocean, deciding that some types of marine disposal are environmentally acceptable.

In contrast, Congress could opt to maintain or even strengthen the current restrictive policy, either because of concerns about the long-term health of the open ocean or because allowing such disposal could be a disincentive to developing better waste management options. This course of action might, however, interfere with attempts to implement other measures designed to improve the health of estuaries and coastal waters (e.g., shifting some dumping further out to sea).

Therefore, maintaining or increasing the availability of alternative, land-based management options (e.g., waste reduction, treatment, and disposal) would be critical to the success of this strategy.

Whether or not increased disposal is allowed, Congress may wish to provide guidance and oversight by ensuring that:

- the level of pollutants in wastes is reduced prior to disposal;
- disposal sites and methods are chosen so that impacts are minimized;
- long-term monitoring and research is properly designed and coordinated; and
- disposal does not provide a disincentive to the development of beneficial uses for these wastes or to reduced waste generation wherever possible.

**INFORMATION NEEDS**

Many types of information are essential for developing policies about marine waste disposal, including information about the value of marine resources, ecological relationships, the quantity and fate of pollutant inputs from disposal activities, environmental and human impacts, and the ability of different disposal technologies to lessen impacts. Without such information, it is impossible to identify problems in specific areas, support enforcement activities, or effectively evaluate progress toward specific goals.

Programs for gathering and analyzing information are conducted by numerous Federal, State, and local agencies, as well as by industrial firms that must comply with regulatory requirements (ch. 7). The effectiveness of these programs has often been questioned. Some observers contend that: 1) monitoring is not sufficiently linked with basic research to facilitate the understanding of why certain impacts are occurring; and 2) too much responsibility for monitoring has been delegated from the Federal to the State and local levels, with a concomitant loss of proper design and quality control (84).

The responsible Federal agencies contend that the design, implementation, and success of such programs has improved in recent years. Agencies such as the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), EPA, and the Army Corps of Engineers (COE) have initiated many new programs during the 1980s that are better designed than their predecessors and that address issues on a more comprehensive basis (ch. 7). NOAA, for example, has several ongoing programs including an inventory of resources in the Nation’s estuaries, a project to map living resources in the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, and a survey of outdoor marine recreation (611).

Nevertheless, information gaps still constrain analyses of marine waste disposal, partly because of a lack of information-gathering in some areas of the country, a lack of systematic analyses of gathered data, and ineffective dissemination of results. For example, high-quality, systematically analyzed information is not available about overall compliance with discharge permits, the types of pollutants present in many waterbodies, or the na-
ture and extent of impacts in many waterbodies. Moreover, different programs that address the same issue often are not well-coordinated.

Many information programs also suffer from inadequate funding. Relatively little is invested in programs that obtain and analyze information in comparison with other expenditures (e.g., capital investments in pollution control technology). The effectiveness of pollution controls is difficult to evaluate without such information, yet funding levels for monitoring and other information programs generally are declining.

Increased political and financial support will be needed to ensure the coordination and proper design of these programs. The need for coordination and long-term support has been emphasized in recent endeavors. NOAA has developed plans under the National Ocean Pollution Planning Act, with input from other Federal agencies, that recommend establishing a national network to better coordinate and synthesize existing programs. A recent symposium focused on improving the design of monitoring programs and their utility in the decisionmaking process (332).

Aside from actual information-gathering programs, continued support of basic ecological research and applied technological research also is needed, both to understand how waste disposal affects marine resources and to improve disposal methods. Observers have suggested the need for additional Federal funding of numerous research topics including:

- improving the engineering and design of disposal technologies (e.g., ways to produce higher dilutions of wastewater);
- predicting how marine systems will respond to waste disposal (the experimental discharge of municipal sludge is discussed in ch. 9);
- enhancing, possibly through genetic engineering, the ability of microorganisms to degrade pollutants such as organic material or chemical pollutants in municipal and industrial wastes, both before and after disposal in marine waters; and
- increasing the use of biomonitoring tests (e.g., effluent toxicity tests) or indices of environmental degradation to identify areas likely to suffer or actually suffering some degradation (105,375,385,412,659).

POLLUTANT INPUTS AND IMPACTS IN MARINE WATERS

Waste Disposal and Pollutant Inputs

Estuaries and Coastal Waters

Many municipal and industrial wastes are discharged directly into estuaries and coastal waters. More than 1,300 major industrial facilities and 500 municipal sewage treatment plants discharge wastewater effluents directly into estuaries, and an additional 70 municipal plants and about 15 major industrial facilities discharge into coastal waters; only a few pipelines are used to discharge wastewater into the open ocean (ch. 3). Some sewage sludge is discharged through pipelines in southern California and in Boston, although these discharges are scheduled to be terminated.

The large quantities of waste entering estuaries and coastal waters through discharges reflect: 1) the close proximity of population centers and industries to these waters; 2) cost savings to waste generators that use this option; and 3) a management approach that allows certain discharges, generally based more on technological treatment capabilities than on resulting water quality. 12 The net effect is a considerable degree of ‘acceptance’ of this routine but environmentally significant activity, espe-

---

1 For instance, EPA’s Permit Compliance System is an automated data system for tracking National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) discharge permits that is intended to fill this need. Until recently, it was only used by some States and EPA regional offices, and therefore has been far from complete; its use is now mandatory (ch. 8).
Marine waste disposal activities (pipeline discharges and dumping operations) are overwhelmingly concentrated in estuaries and coastal waters. Over 1,300 major industrial and almost 600 municipal facilities discharge directly into estuaries and coastal waters, and at most a few discharge into the open ocean.

Dumping also occurs in estuaries and coastal waters. The majority (80 to 90 percent by volume) of all waste material dumped in marine waters originates from dredging operations. About 180 million wet metric tons of dredged material are dumped annually in marine waters. According to COE, most of this material is relatively uncontaminated and does not contribute significant quantities of pollutants to these waters (ch. 10).

The quantity of municipal sewage sludge dumped in marine waters has increased over the last decade and now totals about 7 million wet metric tons annually. Sludge dumping now occurs primarily in coastal waters at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site in the New York Bight, although it is scheduled to be shifted entirely to the Deepwater

---

1. Almost two-thirds of the material is dumped in estuaries, about one-sixth in coastal waters within the territorial boundary, and one-sixth beyond the territorial boundary. Most dumping beyond the territorial boundary is still within coastal waters.
Ch. I—Findings and Options • 15

Municipal Sludge Site in open ocean waters during 1988.

Much smaller amounts (about 50,000 wet metric tons) of acid and alkaline industrial wastes are currently dumped in coastal waters each year at the Acid Waste Disposal Site in the New York Bight. Other wastes (e.g., seafood processing wastes or drilling fluids from offshore oil and gas operations) are also dumped or discharged into marine waters.

Relative Contribution of Pollutants From Waste Disposal and Nonpoint Sources.—The relative contribution of pollutants from discharges, dumping, and nonpoint sources varies with the type of pollutant and the location (ch. 3). In most estuaries and coastal waters, little or no dumping occurs and therefore discharges and runoff contribute greater amounts of pollutants. Where dumping does occur, however, it can sometimes be the major source of pollutants. The most extreme case probably occurs in the New York Bight, where dumping of sludge and dredged material accounts for one-half or more of the cadmium, chromium, copper, PCBs, total suspended solids, and phosphorus introduced to these waters.

Metals and organic chemicals enter marine waters from various disposal activities, and they primarily originate from industrial discharges. A portion of the pollutants discharged by industries to municipal sewers passes through municipal treatment plants into receiving waters or contaminates sludge; thus, municipal plants can act as a conduit for industrial pollutants. Furthermore, the pollutants in industrial and municipal discharges can contaminate sediments that may later need to be dredged.

Pathogens enter marine waters through discharges of raw sewage (e.g., from septic systems or combined sewer overflows) as well as treated effluent and sludge. Municipal treatment processes destroy most, but not all, bacteria, and they are less effective against viruses and parasites (chs. 6 and 9). (The shortcomings of current standards regarding pathogens are discussed in ch. 6).

Estuaries and coastal waters also receive large amounts of pollutants from upstream sources. Thousands of industrial and municipal plants discharge into rivers that subsequently flow into estuaries, and nonpoint runoff is a major contributor of pollutants to rivers. In some cases (e.g., the Mississippi River delta region), upstream sources are the major contributor of most pollutants; these pollutants may be highly diluted by the large flow of a river, however, so that their subsequent impact may be less than commensurate with their quantity.

Open Ocean Waters

In contrast with estuaries and coastal waters, relatively little dumping and discharge occurs in the open ocean. Some sewage sludge is now dumped at the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site, and this site will eventually receive all of the sludge that is now dumped in the New York Bight as well as additional sludge from New York City’s new treatment plants. About 30 million wet metric tons of dredged material (less than one-sixth of the material dredged from all estuaries and coastal waters) is dumped in the open ocean. Currently, about 150,000 metric tons of acid and alkaline wastes from two industrial facilities are dumped at the Deepwater Industrial Waste Site.

Over the past 10 to 15 years, industrial waste dumping has decreased dramatically, while dumping of sewage sludge has steadily increased; dumping of dredged material has fluctuated considerably during this period. Future pressure for dumping could take many forms. Some coastal municipalities (other than those already conducting such disposal) have expressed interest in renewing or initiating ocean dumping of sewage sludge if it were to be allowed (32,532), and certain large-volume, industrial wastes such as flue-gas desulfurization sludges and coal ash have been considered potential candidates for dumping.

---

15 Nonpoint pollution can arise from a wide variety of distinct sources (box B). Comprehensive data is available only for urban and nonurban runoff, however, so this section only discusses these sources.

16 Quantifying nonpoint runoff is difficult because it tends to be diffuse and widespread, occurs along the shorelines of virtually all estuarine and coastal waters, and varies dramatically over time, but some data are available. In addition, the availability of pollutants in different wastes to organisms may differ somewhat. For example, many pollutants in dredged material tend to be bound to particles that are deposited on the bottom and then rapidly covered, processes that make these pollutants less likely to be taken up by organisms.
Impacts on Marine Environments

General Nature of Impacts

Some conventional and nonconventional pollutants can contribute to excess nutrient levels (eutrophication) and low oxygen levels (hypoxia), particularly in estuaries and some coastal waters. Pathogenic organisms (e.g., certain bacteria, viruses, and parasites) contained in sewage or runoff can contaminate water and fish, resulting in direct risks to human health such as outbreaks of hepatitis and gastroenteritis. Their presence can also cause direct economic and recreational losses.

Many metals and organic chemicals can cause severe, short-term, acute impacts on marine organisms. Moreover, many organic chemicals and some forms of certain metals can dissolve and accumulate in the fatty tissues of these organisms. When these organisms are consumed by predators, some of these pollutants can increase in concentration (i.e., biomagnify). Because of their persistence and toxicity, they can cause long-term, chronic impacts on organisms, potentially including humans. The presence of metals and organic chemicals in sewage sludge and dredged material also greatly constrains the management of these wastes.

Because of the sheer physical volume of waste that is dumped in marine environments—particularly dredged material—the solid material in such waste can modify bottom sediments or bury bottom-dwelling organisms at disposal sites. Such impacts, however, are often transient or reversible once the activity is halted.

Evaluating the Relationship Between Pollutants and Impacts

The nature and severity of impacts vary greatly among waterbodies, reflecting differences in the physical characteristics of the waterbodies, the extent and types of disposal that take place, and the types and values of the marine resources present. The information available to OTA supports the conclusion that, even though the precise link between specific pollutants and impacts is often unclear, many of the adverse impacts on marine waters and organisms are caused by the introduction of pollutants through the disposal of wastes. The site-specific relationship between impacts and waste disposal is illustrated, for example, through selected examples (see below). Evidence suggests that losses in individual incidents attributable to waste disposal (e.g., closures of shellfish beds or restrictions on fishing) can amount to millions of dollars; nationwide, many millions of people can be affected directly or indirectly each year.

Several factors create some uncertainty about the absolute extent to which pollutants from individual waste disposal activities contribute to observed affects, but not about the general conclusion that they do indeed cause many impacts. Uncertainty exists, for instance, because:

- pollutants can originate from many sources;
- the significance of contamination to marine organisms and humans is often poorly understood;
- impacts can be caused by other factors (e.g., overharvesting of fisheries or natural reductions in oxygen levels);1 and
- the information available is often incomplete.

For example, although good information exists about some areas, for many other areas little effort has been made to systematically collect and analyze needed data. This hinders attempts to rank estuaries and coastal waters according to their importance and extent of impacts, or even to confidently catalog all impacts that have occurred. 18

Health of Estuaries and Coastal Waters

Estuaries and coastal waters are among the most ecologically and economically important of all aquatic environments (chs. 2 and 4). Many such waters around the country have suffered significant impacts, although the overall trend during the last 10 to 15 years has been mixed. Some areas that once exhibited severe impacts have improved, but noticeable deterioration continues to occur or is accelerating in many other areas. Much public at-

---

1 Other activities (e.g., dredging and filling of wetlands, or hydrologic modifications such as channelization and regulation of freshwater flow) also can affect the quality of estuaries and coastal waters (582, 670).

18 Some useful data on pollutant inputs are available from NOAA’s National Coastal Pollution Discharge Inventory and from Resources for the Future (ch. 3), but few comparable data are available on actual impacts.
Many beaches have been closed because of contamination of water with fecal coliform bacteria, particularly from raw sewage in combined sewer overflows. Most closures are temporary, but some have been permanent.

Attention has focused on well-documented problems in the Northeastern United States (including the Chesapeake Bay and the New York Bight), southern California, and Puget Sound. Serious impacts, however, have also occurred in the less-studied Gulf of Mexico and the Southeastern United States.

The extent of degradation varies greatly around the country—in type, spatial scale, duration, and commercial importance. Observed effects include:

- Impacts on entire marine communities (changes in diversity, abundance, and distribution as reflected, for example, in declines in commercial fisheries);
- Closures of beaches and shellfish grounds because of microbial or chemical contamination;
- A rising incidence of reported human disease, from consuming contaminated shellfish or swimming in contaminated marine waters; and
- Accumulation of toxic pollutants in sediments (in some cases, to levels that warrant classification as hazardous waste sites requiring cleanup under the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act, or Superfund).

Estuaries and coastal waters are susceptible to these problems for several reasons. First, many marine organisms use these waters during critical parts of the organisms’ life cycles (e.g., for spawning or nursery habitat). Second, these waters (particularly estuaries) bear the brunt of marine disposal activities and nonpoint pollution. Third, the physical and chemical features of many estuaries (circulation patterns, semi-enclosed configuration, shallow depth, mixing of fresh and saltwater) cause pollutants to be flushed relatively slowly from these waters or to actually become trapped. Particles (and many metals and organic chemicals, which have a tendency to bind to particle surfaces) aggregate and settle to the bottom; in addition, metals dissolved in the water can become insoluble and also settle. In many estuaries, there is a net landward flow of these sediments, so that they are far less likely to be moved further out to sea by tides or currents.

Estuaries and coastal waters and their indigenous organisms can in some cases recover from certain impacts if the inputs of pollutants are reduced or terminated. For example, impacts on water quality such as low dissolved oxygen levels or eutrophication can be reversed, and areas where communities have been destroyed by physical burial can be recolonized.

The terms “recovery” and “reversal” describe the degree to which a condition that existed prior to an impact is restored. This does not necessarily include restoration of other conditions that were affected by the original impact. For example, decreases in levels of dissolved oxygen could also lead to the decimation of fish populations.
Wastes in Marine Environments

result from better control of conventional pollutants and nutrients in municipal and industrial discharges or from halting the activity entirely. Other impacts, however, may require more time to be reversed or may in some cases be irreversible. For example, contamination of sediments with metals or persistent organic chemicals, or major changes in community structure (including ones caused by other, reversible impacts, such as loss of aquatic vegetation due to eutrophication) may be difficult, if not impossible, to correct.

Health of Open Ocean Waters

Living resources in the open ocean also are commercially important, but they tend to be distributed unevenly (i.e., they can be concentrated in certain areas and relatively absent in others). In general, the open ocean has exhibited few documented impacts that can be attributed to waste disposal activities, partly because fewer wastes have been disposed of directly in these waters. In addition, certain problems are less likely to occur there than in estuaries and coastal waters, because the physical character and processes of the open ocean (e.g., depth, currents, and wind) tend to dilute and disperse pollutants. For example, the open ocean is less susceptible to problems such as hypoxia or eutrophication, which generally occur only when certain conventional pollutants and nutrients are present in high concentrations, and to physical burial of organisms.

In contrast, metals, organic chemicals, and pathogens are of great concern, even though they also are dispersed, because: they can cause impacts at very low concentrations, many are persistent, some can accumulate in organisms, and some can increase in concentration as they are passed up marine food chains. Uncertainty exists about the ability to discern impacts from these pollutants, because detection of such impacts is generally difficult and the impacts may not be observed until long after the polluting incident is over. Some of these pollutants have been detected in significant concentrations, both in the water and in the tissues of various marine organisms including fish, seabirds, and marine mammals. The significance of such contamination is not always clear, however, because of gaps in our understanding of issues such as the nature of open ocean food chains, the concentrations of various chemicals likely to cause reproductive failure in marine organisms, or the likelihood of pollutants being transferred to humans.
Puget Sound

Puget Sound, a large and relatively deep waterbody in northwest Washington, contains numerous bays and inlets and is the receiving basin for many rivers. In contrast to other areas in the Northwestern United States, it is characterized by a high degree of urban and industrial development, dominated by Seattle. At the same time, however, numerous parks and wildlife refuges are scattered along its shores, and large adjacent areas are devoted to farming.

The Sound supports many commercially or ecologically important populations of fish and shellfish. The commercial and recreational harvest of fish and shellfish was valued at nearly $79 million in 1984. The Sound also is well-known for its diversity of birdlife and marine mammals— including harbor seals, gray whales, and killer whales (24). Its waters and shores annually attract 56 percent of the State's residents and support a large tourist industry (469).

The health of the Sound has become a major issue, in part stimulated by the designation of some areas as Superfund sites and by the publicity surrounding incidents like the unexplained death of eight gray whales in 1984. In general, problems in the Sound are most prevalent in embayments and inlets, which tend to trap and accumulate various pollutants. High concentrations of toxic metals and organic chemicals, for example, have made Commencement Bay one of the most contaminated sites in the country. Exposure of fish to toxic organic chemicals and metals has been linked to diseases and abnormalities and, notably, liver tumors in bottom-dwelling fish. As a result, many people are concerned that public health could be threatened by the consumption of contaminated fish. In addition, many miles of commercial shellfish beds have been closed because of fecal coliform bacteria contamination.

These impacts have arisen from current waste disposal practices and are exacerbated by pollution. When conditions were worse, large volumes of untreated wastes were released, in some cases causing sediment contamination that still persists. Currently, over 400 municipal and industrial pipelines (both major and minor) discharge significant quantities of pollutants to the Sound (463). Runoff from agricultural and forest lands and urban surfaces is a major contributor of conventional pollutants.

Federal and State pollutant control programs have resulted in the reduction of some pollutants. Municipal and industrial discharges. Further reductions are anticipated—e.g., Seattle is now meeting treatment levels at its municipal treatment plant. In an ambitious attempt to provide integrated management of all point and nonpoint sources, the State of Washington created and funded the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority in 1985. The Authority is developing a comprehensive plan for waste management in the Sound, and implementation of the plan will begin in 1987.

San Francisco Bay

San Francisco Bay actually is a large, shallow, estuarine system that includes California's northernmost part of the San Francisco Bay, Oakland, and San Mateo counties. The bay is ringed by intense urban development and industrial development (including major petroleum refineries). Numerous parks and wilderness reserves, however, are located on the bay's shores. Relatively little agricultural activity occurs into the Bay.

The Bay supports many valuable recreational and commercial fisheries, and serves as a major port. A large tourist industry (510). It also provides very important ecological functions; for example, it provides a very important habitat on the California coast for shorebirds as they migrate to and from breeding grounds (24).

The Bay has been subject to extensive activities—including filling of wetlands, dredging, industrial projects, and the restoration of freshwater inputs—have had significant consequences in the Bay (395). At one time, for example, industrial facilities contributed to the collapse of the Bay's oyster industry. Conditions continued to deteriorate for many decades, until the 1960s, when oxygen deficiencies periodically resulted in mas-
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
Public attention to these problems was galvanized in 1976, when reduced oxygen levels caused massive shellfish kills and when raw sewage washed ashore. These events were attributed by some of the public to sludge dumping, but other factors were equally or more important—natural events (seasonal water stratification), inputs of nutrients from other sources (including municipal discharges), and inputs of untreated sewage. Oxygen levels in 1985 were the lowest in some areas since the 1976 episode (610).

Determining the relative contribution of different sources to the Bight's problems has been difficult. Sludge dumping will soon be shifted out of the Bight to a site much further offshore; the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site. The degree of improvement in water and resources quality in the Bight that will result from this shift is uncertain, however, given the magnitude of pollutant inputs from other sources. If an improvement does occur, it will only be detected if sufficient monitoring is conducted before and after the shift.

As might be expected, many Federal agencies (including EPA and the COE) and local and State agencies have some responsibility for different aspects of the Bight. Several public groups (e.g., the Coalition for the Bight and the New York Academy of Sciences) are bringing these agencies and the public together to discuss improving the quality of the Bight. Congress has considered amending MPRSA to establish a New York Bight Restoration Plan.

The Deepwater Disposal Sites

Two waste disposal sites are located in the open ocean waters off the continental shelf about 125 to 150 nautical miles southeast of the entrance to New York harbor. The Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site and the Deepwater Industrial Waste Site (49 FR 19005-19012, May 4, 1984; see ch. 3 for additional descriptions of

...
POLICY ISSUES AND OPTIONS FOR ESTUARIES AND COASTAL WATERS

Pressures to continue current disposal activities in estuaries and coastal waters will probably increase. Unless inputs of pollutants into estuaries and coastal waters are reduced, however, the extent and severity of impacts in these waters are likely to increase. The ideal strategy to protect most estuaries and coastal waters is to reduce waste generation or reuse wastes, thereby avoiding disposal. Even with extensive waste reduction efforts, however, large amounts of wastes now disposed of in marine waters will continue to require disposal for the foreseeable future.

Therefore, it will be essential to increase efforts to reduce the levels of pollutants in municipal and industrial discharges and to reduce nonpoint pollution where necessary, as well as to minimize waste disposal in estuaries and coastal waters wherever possible. The ability to minimize disposal in these waters, however, maybe precluded by policy decisions made about disposal in the open ocean and on land. Reducing pollutant levels in discharges and reducing nonpoint pollution are likely to be more broadly applicable.

Any attempt to address impacts from disposal activities must therefore determine the ability of the current statutory and regulatory system to control pollutant inputs. Most Federal regulatory and management programs relevant to the control of discharges (as opposed to dumping) in estuaries and coastal waters fall under CWA. Two basic types of regulatory programs have been established under the Act to address pollutant inputs into these waters: pollutant control programs, which regulate specific pollutants or sources; and waterbody management programs, which address the overall management of particular waterbodies.

The ability of these programs to achieve their stated goals is summarized below (based on chs. 7 and 8). Several options are described for improving the ability of pollutant control programs to reduce the inputs of pollutants and subsequent impacts. For many waterbodies, however, improvements in pollutant control programs alone will not be sufficient. The policy question that must then be decided is whether additional efforts (and, if so, what types) should be undertaken to counter the onset, continuation, or increase in degradation in these waterbodies. Options are presented below for providing additional waterbody management where necessary.

Although CWA also addresses nonpoint pollution, the Federal Government has not been extensively involved in controlling this type of pollution. The Water Quality Act of 1987, however, authorized $400 million for grants to help States develop nonpoint management programs.
Issue 1: Current Pollutant Control Programs Will Not Protect All Estuaries and Coastal Waters

The two major pollutant control programs authorized by CWA are the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) and the National Pretreatment Program. These programs establish effluent guidelines and other requirements to regulate the discharge of certain pollutants from municipal and industrial facilities. States or EPA Regions have primary responsibility for granting permits and setting standards that incorporate these requirements, and discharges that meet the standards specified in the permits are legal.

These pollutant control programs have been responsible for important reductions in some pollutants. The construction or upgrading of sewage treatment plants has reduced the levels of conventional pollutants and nutrients in many municipal discharges and, as a result, the health of some estuaries and coastal waters has improved in some aspects. In southern California coastal waters, for example, kelp beds have partially recovered. Similarly, reducing the levels of pollutants in industrial discharges into sewers has improved the quality of municipal sludge in some cases, allowing it to be used beneficially as fertilizer on farmland and forests.

Such reductions, however, have been achieved at considerable expense. The Federal Government has spent over $44 billion since 1972 to build municipal treatment plants that meet requirements specified in CWA and implemented through NPDES. Industrial facilities also have made substantial investments in response to the regulations established under these programs.

If compliance with existing regulations is achieved, the levels of regulated pollutants in municipal and industrial discharges are likely to continue to decline. The extent of future reductions, however, is difficult to predict. Although compliance has improved during the last few years, the likelihood of achieving full implementation and enforcement is unclear because Federal funding of some critical activities has been inadequate and is declining. For example, proposed funding levels in the fiscal year 1987 budget for water quality enforcement and permitting and for municipal enforcement are lower than current levels. As a result, some municipal and industrial facilities will probably continue to discharge pollutants in amounts that exceed their permit limits.

Moreover, even if total compliance with existing regulations were achieved, these programs would not be sufficient to maintain or improve the health of all estuaries and coastal waters in the future because:

- Pipeline discharges and nonpoint source pollution (particularly urban runoff) will...
Beds of giant kelp along the southern California coast provide important habitat for many valuable fish and shellfish and support a substantial kelp harvesting industry. Large acreages of these beds disappeared prior to the 1970s, in part because of pollutants discharged to nearby waters. Reductions in the discharges of some pollutants, accompanied by kelp restoration efforts, have helped reverse this trend and kelp bed acreage is now increasing.

increase as populations and industrial development expand in coastal areas.

• Current pollutant control programs do not address all pollutants. Standards have not been developed for some pollutants that are listed in CWA and present in wastestreams in large quantities (ch. 8) because control technology is not available or because EPA has determined that its use would impose unreasonable economic burdens on affected industries. Standards also have not been developed for other pollutants that can be important in some situations but that are not listed in CWA (e.g., organic chemicals such as dibenzofurans and trichlorophenols; pathogens such as viruses).

• Current pollutant control programs do not address all sources of pollution. These programs already address the most easily controlled sources, in particular municipal and most industrial discharges, but they do not adequately regulate some additional important industrial sources of pollutants (e.g., textile mills and commercial laundries) or nonpoint sources.

• Federal resources available for maintaining or improving current levels of municipal sewage treatment are declining, and the ability of States or communities to fill the breach is uncertain. Federal funding for capital investments in new and improved municipal treatment plants is declining, and the cost of maintaining operations at existing plants is likely to increase as the plants become older. In addition, some plants could be required to upgrade treatment to remove certain problem pollutants such as nitrogen and phosphorus.

• Monitoring, research, and enforcement currently are inadequate, and funding levels for these activities are being reduced in some instances.

• The contamination of sediments with persistent toxic pollutants is not adequately addressed. These sediments may be a source of contamination for long periods; many observers have proposed the need to develop sediment quality criteria analogous to those for water quality.

---

\[\text{Estimates suggest that about $110 billion would be required by the year 2000 for the Nation to meet its remaining municipal treatment needs (654). Prior to the Water Quality Act of 1987, about one-half of these needs (e.g., construction of secondary treatment plants and new "interceptor" sewers) would have been eligible for grants from the Federal Construction Grants Program; the Federal share would have been about $36 billion (569). EPA recently lowered its estimate of remaining municipal treatment needs to $76 billion by the year 2005 (676). Most of the reduction is attributed to changes in documentation requirements for responding States, and some State officials have criticized the estimate as not reflecting all water quality-related treatment needs (154). The Water Quality Act provided $18 billion for the Construction Grants Program and State revolving loan funds, with funding ending in 1994.}\]
**Options To Improve Current Pollutant Control Programs**

Although total implementation of and compliance with existing pollutant control programs will not be sufficient to maintain or improve the health of all estuaries and coastal waters, these programs will continue to achieve important reductions in pollutant inputs and to provide the primary foundation for pollution control efforts. Therefore, maintaining and improving their capabilities is critical. Four options for improving these capabilities are discussed below:

1. **Improving Enforcement**
   - Enforcement of current regulations on point source dischargers is inadequate for many reasons (ch. 8). More rigorous enforcement would reduce pollutant discharges by the affected parties and would provide a greater deterrent to other facilities. Mechanisms for improving enforcement include the following:
     - Support continued or enhanced implementation and enforcement of the current NPDES and pretreatment programs, through oversight, financial support, and technical guidance. Virtually any increase in financial resources for the implementation and enforcement activities of these programs should be helpful, although the cost of completely enforcing all regulations would greatly exceed current levels of funding committed to this activity.
     - Enhance EPA’s enforcement authority by allowing administrative civil penalties in addition to court-imposed civil penalties. Civil enforcement actions in court (fines or consent decrees) tend to be time-consuming. Many observers have suggested that the authority to levy administrative fines could improve the ability of EPA to pursue enforcement in a timely and focused manner. 26 Congress also could consider the effectiveness of the provisions that encourage enforcement actions by private citizens.
     - Provide oversight to ensure that efforts to focus or target enforcement activities are based on consistently applied criteria. EPA has implemented a policy to focus enforcement efforts first on major dischargers in ‘significant’ noncompliance, then on major dischargers in less significant noncompliance and on minor dischargers. While attractive in theory, focusing enforcement could result in differential enforcement around the country, raising questions about equity. Some observers contend that selective enforcement makes more efficient use of available resources and is therefore justified; others question whether the deterrent effects of enforcement would be lessened for lower priority dischargers (502).

2. **Ensuring Funding of Municipal Treatment Plant Construction**
   - Under the provisions of the 1987 Water Quality Act, only $18 billion in Federal funds will be provided for municipal treatment needs. EPA intends to continue requiring municipal treatment plants to comply with CWA’s treatment requirements, however, whether or not Federal funding is available to help meet these requirements. A long-term capacity, therefore, still must be developed for funding new plant construction, replacing or repairing treatment plants as they deteriorate, and expanding capacity as needed. The large-scale feasibility of different non-Federal funding mechanisms such as State revolving loan funds, privatization, nondebt financing, and municipal bonds has been debated but remains uncertain (542,569).
   - Congress considered this problem and authorized: 1) a transition period until 1994 to allow States and localities to develop alternative funding mechanisms, and 2) about $8 billion (of the total authorization of $18 billion) to be used for the capitalization of State revolving funds. Congress could further...
support efforts to develop funding mechanisms, for example, by increasing direct incentives for their development; such incentives could include tax credits for privatization.

Option 3: Expanding Regulation of Important Pollutants and Sources

The coverage of the pretreatment and NPDES programs could be expanded by developing standards for additional individual pollutants and sources of pollutants, particularly industrial sources. The mechanisms to expand coverage generally are already available to EPA, but Congress could provide support for expansion initiatives through oversight and commitment of sufficient financial resources. This could entail several complementary approaches:

- Promoting the development of effluent guidelines for pollutants that are listed in the Clean Water Act as priority pollutants but for which guidelines have never been developed. Congress could increase its support of EPA efforts to identify unregulated pollutants present in large amounts in particular discharges and to develop feasible treatment technologies.
- Supporting efforts to identify pollutants not on the CWA list but that can cause significant impacts, and supporting efforts under the pretreatment and NPDES programs to develop effluent guidelines for these pollutants. EPA has undertaken preliminary efforts to develop screening processes and tests (e.g., effluent toxicity tests) to identify additional pollutants that are important in marine waters, but no new effluent guidelines have yet been developed. A screening effort that combined and augmented these efforts could expedite the identification of such pollutants and the development of effluent guidelines when necessary. This would require more research on the potential impacts of unregulated pollutants, and monitoring to search for specified pollutants in individual waterbodies.
- Expanding pollutant control programs to improve coverage of important point sources that are not adequately regulated. These include certain unregulated industrial categories (e.g., commercial laundries) and combined sewer overflows or stormwater outfalls.
- Supporting EPA’s ongoing effort to develop technical guidance on the quantities of toxic pollutants allowable for different municipal sludge disposal options. Current sewage sludge regulations do not establish allowable levels of most pollutants for different disposal options. The development of comprehensive guidance or standards for sludge disposal would increase the ability of municipal treatment plants to require reduced industrial discharges of toxic pollutants into sewers.
- Deciding how to best address the problem of hazardous waste discharges into municipal sewers. An exemption in the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) that allows such discharges could be abolished. If it is, problems in other environments could ensue (e.g., because of illegal dumping). If the exemption is retained, then improving the implementation and enforcement of the pretreatment program would become critical in ensuring adequate regulation and treatment of such discharges. This could include expansion of efforts by municipal treatment plants to develop local limits on such discharges. 29

Option 4: Applying Ocean Discharge Criteria to Estuaries

The CWA Ocean Discharge Criteria (Sec. 403(c)) currently apply to discharges into coastal waters, 28

"Hazardous" refers to those substances or wastestreams specifically defined as such under RCRA.

29This problem is symptomatic of a larger issue, the role of municipal plants in the management of industrial wastes (ch. 9). Municipal wastes are often contaminated to some degree with metals and organic chemicals from industrial discharges, and some observers have suggested prohibiting industrial discharges into sewers. The near-term likelihood of a prohibition is low, although the practice could be partially restricted by prohibiting new industrial discharges into sewers. Water quality would then depend on the control (by NPDES) of direct industrial discharges and/or the implementation of other management options such as waste reduction, process substitution, recycling, and centralized treatment facilities.
but not to discharges into marine waters inside the baseline of the territorial sea (i. e., estuaries). These criteria specify additional factors that must be considered prior to the granting of a permit for discharging into non-estuarine marine waters, and in theory provide greater regulatory control.

Congress could consider applying the Ocean Discharge Criteria to discharges into estuaries, which would provide an additional means of control on such discharges. Whether this would increase actual protection would depend on the strength of the criteria. If necessary, the criteria could be strengthened by making the issuance of a discharge permit contingent on additional factors, such as:

- development of an acceptable monitoring protocol;
- specification and acceptance of conditions under which the discharge may be terminated or modified (e. g., if monitoring revealed severe impacts); and
- requiring that a need be demonstrated to discharge wastewater into estuarine waters.\(^{30}\)

**Issue 2: Some Estuaries and Coastal Waters Need More Comprehensive Management**

More comprehensive planning and coordination of management efforts will be needed for several reasons if the Nation wishes to lessen, avoid, or reverse degradation of some estuaries and coastal waters. First, estuaries and coastal waters exhibit very site-specific characteristics with respect to physical nature, disposal activities and impacts, and economic importance. Second, these waters can encompass multiple political jurisdictions and fall under the authority of multiple agencies.

Third, the need to allocate available resources efficiently will become more critical, because financial resources for Federal and State pollution control efforts probably will not increase substantially in the future. In addition, because pollutants can be contributed by many sources, it is not always clear whether changes in current pollutant control efforts, such as regulating additional pollutants or achieving full compliance, would be sufficient to achieve the desired improvements, or whether new efforts are needed.\(^{31}\) Increasing the effectiveness of point source control programs might be sufficient in some areas, whereas in other areas efforts to control nonpoint source pollution may be critical.

These factors necessitate greater coordination and cooperation among responsible agencies to identify site-specific problems and allocate resources toward the most effective control efforts.

The need for comprehensive and coordinated management has led to the development of some ‘‘waterbody management’ plans and programs by the Federal Government (e. g., Chesapeake Bay Program), the States (e. g., Puget Sound Water Quality Authority), and local authorities (e. g., Southern California Coastal Water Research Project). In most cases, numerous agencies from different levels of government share responsibilities for implementation. The Puget Sound program, for example, involves more than 10 governmental entities. Most programs address single waterbodies, although the National Estuary Program currently involves efforts in six areas.

Existing waterbody management programs vary greatly in their design. Some have the authority to set goals and establish plans (e. g., the Chesapeake Bay Program), while others are designed only to gather and share information about research needs or findings (e. g., Southern California Coastal Water Research Project). Most programs have the authority to perform only some of the following functions: address multiple disposal activities and pollutant sources, identify the most serious or tractable problems, allocate resources toward these problems, design and implement management plans, and coordinate various involved agencies.

In general, existing waterbody management programs are in the early stages of implementation and their effectiveness cannot yet be judged (ch. 7). The initial focus of many programs has been to characterize problems, identify sources of pollution, and develop pollution abatement strategies. The Ches-
apeake Bay Program, which is among the most advanced of existing programs, is currently entering the implementation stage.

While these efforts appear promising, programs have been established for only a few waterbodies to date; many of the estuaries and coastal waters in need of additional management are not covered by such programs. Furthermore, current programs generally have only limited authority and financial support, and may not be sufficient to ensure the health of the target waterbodies.

**Options To Provide Additional Waterbody Management**

Creating new waterbody management programs would probably be relatively straightforward, and in the Water Quality Act of 1987 Congress designated some specific waterbodies for which management efforts should be undertaken. However, establishing a systematic approach for providing comprehensive and coordinated waterbody management will require additional, difficult policy decisions. The critical link that is lacking is a framework for making decisions about when and how to provide additional means of management, in particular, how to complement the current uniform national pollutant control programs to address situations that require additional, site-specific controls.

A water quality-based approach could complement the system of primarily uniform, technology-based controls and provide a framework for addressing the site-specific needs of individual waterbodies. Although the 1972 CWA Amendments marked a shift away from this approach and toward the use of technology-based standards, the authority to institute water quality-based regulation was retained in the Act because Congress intended it to serve as an additional layer of pollution control, after the more uniform pollutant control programs were well-established. In general, however, it has not yet been used to provide comprehensive and coordinated management of estuaries and coastal waters, although EPA has begun to develop a water quality approach to better control toxic pollutants in discharges (49 FR 9016-9019, Mar. 9, 1984). EPA’s Science Advisory Board recently recommended that the agency investigate applying water quality criteria to research conducted in marine waters (244,675).

Development of a framework that uses a water quality approach to provide additional waterbody management, where needed, now seems appropriate. Such a framework, which could build on existing mechanisms, would differ from or expand on current efforts by:

- providing better means of evaluating progress in improving the quality of estuaries and coastal waters;
- identifying those waterbodies that will continue to be degraded, even after continued development and implementation of current pollutant control programs;
- developing new waterbody management programs for some of these waterbodies; and
- providing the guidance and flexibility needed for waterbody management programs to set site-specific goals and establish coordinated plans for achieving those goals.

**Wastes in Marine Environments**

---

32A water quality approach places controls on pollution sources, based on an assessment of the concentrations of pollutants in receiving waters below which unacceptable impacts will not occur. It relies on the development of water quality-based standards, which consist of designated uses (e.g., swimmable water) for defined segments of waterbodies and pollutant-specific numerical criteria designed to assure attainment of the uses. The States designate uses and set water quality standards, with Federal guidance. Individual dischargers generally have greater flexibility in choosing how they will comply with water quality standards than with technology-based standards (130). A water quality approach, however, requires enormous amounts of information, continuous monitoring, and the development of site-specific criteria for many pollutants. Furthermore, it can be difficult to ascertain the portion of the problem that is caused by disposal because, for example, ambient water quality is affected by episodic events (e.g., storms that cause excess runoff or low flow that causes salinity problems). Nevertheless, developing such an approach could provide the flexibility to address site-specific problems.

33For example, 9 of the 24 coastal States have not developed marine water quality standards for any priority pollutants (ch. 8). For the 8 coastal States that have marine standards for priority metals, standards have been developed for an average of 4.5 of the 14 metals. For the 15 coastal States that have such standards for priority organic chemicals, standards have been developed for an average of 6.8 of the 85 organic chemicals.

34Additional States have addressed seasonal variations or differences in the contribution of pollutants from different sources, while not relaxing technology-based standards, by using water quality-based techniques such as seasonal or variable permits (130).

35Some of the decisions that would be made within such a framework would be affected by the availability of land-based and open ocean disposal options. For example, if the relatively restrictive policy regarding waste disposal in the open ocean is maintained, then some methods for improving the quality of estuaries and coastal waters, such as shifting disposal further out to sea, will not be available.
Implementing these steps could take considerable time. In addition, the relative roles of Federal, State, and local governments in these activities is a central issue. Some observers advocate reliance mostly on State and local efforts, while others advocate a strong Federal role. This issue is addressed briefly below, but in general the question of primary responsibility will need to be addressed on a case-by-case basis.

Option 1: Establishing Measurable Goals and Evaluating Progress

CWA established as national goals the elimination of discharges of toxic pollutants in toxic amounts and the restoration or maintenance of fishable and swimmable waters. Clearly, such improvements will not, and were not expected to, occur overnight; many years may pass before the effects of changes in pollutant control programs or of now-developing waterbody management programs become apparent.

Moreover, it is often difficult to measure progress toward such broadly stated goals. Establishing goals toward which progress could more easily be measured could increase the ability to assess improvements in the health of estuaries and coastal waters, and, concomitantly, increase the ability to judge the need for additional controls. Congress might consider:

- Refining the goals of CWA so that they apply explicitly to estuaries and coastal waters. This could involve a statement of the intent to maintain the current quality of resources or to reverse any trends of degradation in these waters.
- Supporting the further development and implementation of the water quality approach and the specification of site-specific, measurable goals toward which progress could be measured. To be effective, such goals should be quantitative whenever possible and should be directly linked to tangible improvements in resources. Examples of measurable goals include:
  - avoiding specific impacts (e.g., no fish mortality in a specified area);
  - achieving desired changes in ecological conditions (e.g., reestablishment of submerged aquatic vegetation in a specified area); and
  - achieving desired changes in economic or recreational returns (e.g., the lifting of restrictions on harvesting shellfish). 37

Progress toward such goals could be measured for individual waterbodies. If the waterbody met the goals, then no additional control efforts would be needed. If it did not meet one or more goals, then site-specific control efforts could be increased for those pollutants and waste disposal activities that most significantly impede attainment.

Pollutant control programs would still need to be implemented and enforced, but they would only constitute a first step. Setting measurable, site-specific water quality goals would allow the effectiveness of these programs to be evaluated and judgments to be made about the need for more stringent controls on any pollutant sources. 39 Available resources could then be focused on the most viable or most cost-effective control efforts; additional permit limits on discharges, as well as the use of best management practices for controlling nonpoint pollution, could be required in site-specific situations.

Two additional uses of the water quality approach to waterbody management deserve mention:

1. A water quality approach could be extended to address sediment quality. The tendency for metals, organic chemicals, and pathogens to become concentrated in sediments suggests the need to develop sediment quality criteria

36 EPA has initiated a study to evaluate the potential economic benefits of improvements in the water quality of estuaries (K. Adler, U.S. EPA, pers. comm., December 1986).
37 This concept is already a component of air pollution control plans required of individual States under the Clean Air Act. EPA recently indicated that extending this concept to marine pollution problems might provide an effective means of evaluating the effectiveness of management strategies (670).
38 In theory, existing control plans for point sources (i.e., NPDES permit limits) could also be relaxed or made less stringent if specified water quality standards in a waterbody were being met. Such a backsliding was prohibited, except in some narrowly defined circumstances, in the Water Quality Act of 1987; the current national technology-based standards are unlikely to be modified to any great extent.
that would be analogous to those for water quality. Such criteria could be useful in determining, for example, if shellfish harvesting in a particular area should be restricted, or whether dredged material is sufficiently contaminated to pose undue risks to bottom-dwelling marine organisms. These criteria do not currently exist, although EPA is evaluating the feasibility of developing them for certain metals and organic chemicals (C. Zarba, EPA, pers. comm., November 1986).

Option 2: Identifying Waterbodies Needing Additional Management

Not all estuaries and coastal waters require additional management, so some mechanism would be needed to identify waterbodies likely to suffer degradation despite current pollution control efforts. This need probably could be met by establishing a ‘‘screening’’ process to identify those waterbodies requiring additional management.

Some States have developed criteria to identify such waterbodies, but uniform criteria probably should be used since waterbodies around the Nation are involved. Consistent criteria could be developed, for example, by the Federal Government and used by States to evaluate waterbodies within their boundaries. Some waterbodies, however, are bounded by and receive pollutants from several States, and multiple agencies could have responsibilities pertinent to waterbody management. In such cases, it may be appropriate to have the Federal Government conduct or coordinate the process. EPA’s National Estuary Program and NOAA’s National Estuarine Program are evaluating such an approach for some coastal waters, so a new program would not necessarily be required.

A screening process would need to precede other management decisions and thus should be relatively streamlined. Information would need to be collected for most or all of the Nation’s estuaries and coastal waters, so decisions regarding what information will be needed should be made early in the process.

Option 3: Developing Management Plans

If a general goal of maintaining or improving the health of estuaries and coastal waters is to be pursued, additional programs will need to be developed for those waterbodies likely to suffer continued or new degradation. Several options exist for overseeing the development of management plans and defining the structure of individual waterbody management plans:

- Decide whether a national program is necessary to coordinate and oversee the development of individual management plans. While a strong Federal presence has not been necessary for the initiation of some programs (e.g., in Puget Sound), a national program

---

Some observers have argued that supplementing current technology-based controls with even stricter controls in response to water quality standards might impose unreasonable financial burdens on dischargers. Congress may wish to consider the use of financial incentives such as fees or taxes to ease this burden. According to some economists, this market-oriented approach to water quality management could be introduced in a manner that does not unduly compromise the technology-based approach (A.M. Freeman, Bowdoin College, pers. comm., July 1986; and refs. 130,305).

---

+A, Federal court recently ruled in Scott v. City of Hammond, Indiana, et al. (741 F. 2d 992, 1984) that NPDES-permitted dischargers to Lake Michigan’s tributaries must consider the effect of the discharges on the lake itself, not just on the tributaries. This water quality approach will involve difficult tasks such as assessing the capacity of Lake Michigan to accommodate wastes and allocating the rights to discharge certain amounts of wastes into tributaries. EPA Region V is developing a long-term toxic strategy to address this problem, including evaluation of the most cost-effective controls (whether they be best management practices for nonpoint pollution or controls on point sources). EPA considers this decision to be applicable nationwide, but some States disagree (L. Fink, U.S. EPA Region V, pers. comm., October 1986; and refs. 251, 674). In theory at least, the concept could be extended to estuaries and coastal waters impacted by pollutants from upstream sources.
could: 1) conduct any screening effort, 2) encourage States to develop plans for waterbodies entirely within their jurisdiction, and 3) initiate the development of programs for waterbodies encompassing multiple jurisdictions. A program could be newly developed or could build on ongoing efforts such as the National Estuary Program. If needed, a Federal program could provide incentives to the States, for example, by making grants contingent on the development of adequate plans.

- Establish national guidelines for the development of individual plans. Individual plans could be required to: 1) designate a lead agency to coordinate planning, 2) establish site-specific, measurable goals, 3) specify what efforts would be undertaken to achieve the goals, and 4) indicate how progress will be evaluated and reported. Existing planning mechanisms in CWA (e.g., Sec. 208 areawide plans or Sec. 303(e) water quality management plans) could provide the statutory authority for such plans. Alternatively, existing plans, for example, those of the National Estuary Program, Chesapeake Bay Program, or the Great Lakes Program, could be used as models.

- Support the development of well-designed, long-term monitoring and data analysis programs whose results can be used to evaluate progress toward specific goals. Such programs would have to be long-term because attainment of some goals is likely to require relatively long periods. If a monitoring or analytical program indicated insufficient progress toward attainment, then responsible agencies might need to shift planning or control efforts. Any planning and evaluation processes thus would have to be continuous and include mechanisms for modifying plans as needed.

Proposals to expand existing waterbody management programs or to develop new ones with multiple responsibilities might be dismissed for fear of large new expenditures. It is true that efforts to maintain or improve the health of estuaries and coastal waters will require new expenditures. If, however, management programs can identify site-specific problems and coordinate control efforts, the overall costs of such efforts could in some cases be less than the costs of separate, uncoordinated pollution control efforts.

**POLICY ISSUES AND OPTIONS FOR OPEN OCEAN WATERS**

**Issues Regarding Waste Disposal in Open Ocean Waters**

Waste disposal in the open ocean is generally limited to the dumping of acid or alkaline industrial wastes, sewage sludge, and dredged material. The permitting system established under the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act has been relatively successful in managing such dumping: dumping of industrial wastes has declined dramatically, and the dumping of sewage sludge and dredged material is relatively well-controlled.

Some of the wastes currently dumped in the open ocean also can be used beneficially on land and in certain aquatic settings. When relatively uncontaminated, for example, dredged material can be
used for beach or wetland replenishment projects, and sewage sludge can be used as a fertilizer or soil conditioner on farms and forests.

Most often, however, these wastes must be managed by other treatment or disposal options, and pressure to use the open ocean for dumping will probably increase. In light of these pressures as well as the 1981 court decision (City of New York v. United States Environmental Protection Agency) that required the balanced consideration of all available alternatives, a total ban on disposal in the open ocean seems unlikely.

It is essential, therefore, to consider whether there are conditions under which open ocean disposal might be environmentally acceptable. Some wastes (e.g., sewage sludge, dredged material, and acid and alkaline wastes) probably can be dumped in the open ocean, if levels of toxic pollutants in the wastes are low, without causing significant long-term impacts. Open ocean features and processes (e.g., large volume, well-mixed waters, high dispersal ability) reduce the likelihood of impacts such as hypoxia, eutrophication, and significant accumulations of suspended material. In addition, the open ocean is generally capable of quickly neutralizing acid or alkaline wastes because of its large natural buffering capacity. Some pipeline discharges might be environmentally acceptable for the same reasons.

However, some uncertainty is associated with these conclusions about the acceptability of open ocean waste disposal. For example, it is unclear whether pathogens and toxic chemicals, at concentrations likely to exist at disposal sites, can cause long-term impacts on open ocean organisms and populations, or whether the overall productivity of the open ocean would be affected by such impacts. In addition, since the productivity and corresponding biological activity of the open ocean is generally low, the degradation of wastes disposed of there could be slow relative to degradation in estuaries and coastal waters.

Other factors could constrain open ocean disposal of relatively uncontaminated wastes. In particular, most pipelines probably could not be sufficiently extended into open ocean waters (particularly on the Gulf and east coasts, where the distance to the open ocean generally is greater than on the west coast), and the shifting of dredged material dumping further out to sea may be seen as prohibitively costly in many cases.

In contrast, contaminated material can rarely if ever be used beneficially and therefore generally requires some form of disposal. In such cases, the full range of available options, including some forms of marine disposal, needs to be evaluated. Marine disposal that depends on containment rather than dispersion may sometimes be preferable to land disposal. For example, “capping” of some contaminated dredged material with clean material may cause fewer impacts than disposing the same material on land. Similarly, solidified coal ash potentially could be used in the construction of artificial reefs.

**Options for Managing Waste Disposal in Open Ocean Waters**

Two basic policy directions exist regarding waste disposal in the open ocean: maintain or strengthen the current restrictive policy, or allow increased disposal of some wastes under some conditions. Each choice involves some specific implications that are addressed by the options described below.

**Option 1: Maintaining or Strengthening the Current Restrictive Policy**

As currently implemented, MPRSA tends to restrict waste disposal in the open ocean. Maintaining or strengthening this policy could be justified, even though open ocean disposal is technically and economically feasible under certain conditions, because of concerns about the long-term health of the open ocean or because policy makers decide that allowing more ocean dumping might hinder the development of better management options. Thus Congress could strengthen this policy by amending the Act to specifically exclude particular wastes from eligibility for dumping, although total restriction of open ocean waste disposal appears implausible.

Choosing to maintain the current restricted policy, however, might preclude some measures for improving the health of estuaries and coastal waters (e.g., shifting disposal activities further out to sea).
Therefore, ensuring the availability of alternative options, such as beneficial use or land-based treatment and disposal options for wastes that could be disposed of in marine waters, would be a critical component of continuing this policy.

Option 2: Allowing Increased Disposal of Some Wastes

A choice also could be made to allow increased disposal of some wastes in the open ocean under certain conditions because of the environmental acceptability of and increased pressure for some disposal. If some increase in open ocean disposal is allowed, many of the necessary statutory and regulatory mechanisms to ensure sufficient control are already in place.

Whether or not open ocean waste disposal increases, Congress probably would need to support and oversee several important aspects by:

- Ensuring that disposal sites and methods are chosen so that impacts are minimized. MPRSA and its associated regulations define siting criteria for open ocean disposal, specifying that chosen disposal sites exhibit dispersive characteristics and contain few economically or ecologically important resources; sites also must exhibit a relative lack of pollutant inputs from other sources and a lack of use for other purposes. These criteria appear to be sufficient if rigorously implemented by EPA. It might be worth considering whether the use of several carefully selected sites is preferable to the use of only one or two dumpsites for a particular waste. Using several sites would reduce the input of pollutants (and the possibility of subsequent impacts) at any one site, but it also would require additional resources for monitoring and surveillance.

- Supporting efforts to reduce pollutants in wastes prior to disposal. The options for reducing pollutant levels in estuaries and coastal waters are equally applicable to waste disposal in the open ocean; they include, for example, greater implementation and enforcement of the pretreatment and NPDES programs and the development of comprehensive regulations for sludge disposal. In addition, Congress could require that stricter controls be imposed on the composition of wastes that are to be dumped—in particular, to minimize the presence of toxic pollutants and pathogens.

- Providing additional resources for properly designed and nationally coordinated monitoring and research programs, and ensuring that results are used in future policy decisions. Greater support and coordination of monitoring and research is needed to ensure that significant impacts (including those that might become evident only after several years) are detected and that information on these impacts is effectively analyzed and disseminated. In addition, Congress could consider developing an explicit policy that allowed disposal to continue only if monitoring detected no significant impacts (‘significant’ or ‘unacceptable’ impacts probably should be carefully defined prior to disposal). This could include specific provisions requiring that the disposal activity be phased out or modified if such impacts were detected. MPRSA currently appears to provide sufficient authority to phase out harmful disposal activities, as witnessed by the reduction of industrial waste dumping.

- Ensuring that open ocean disposal does not hinder the development and use of other options, such as land-based treatment or beneficial use. Existing provisions, if implemented consistently and rigorously, appear to provide a means of addressing this issue; for example, regulations (under Secs. 101 and 102 of MPRSA) for granting ocean dumping permits require:
  —initial analysis of all management and disposal options,
  —demonstration of a need for open ocean disposal, and
  —periodic reconsideration of other available management and disposal alternatives.

Congress also could consider influencing market conditions to attain specific goals. For example, financial incentives such as fees, taxes, or tradable discharge permits (56,305) could be used to make the total cost of ocean dumping comparable to that of other options or to ensure that short-term economic factors alone do not drive decisions regarding dumping.
Chapter 2

Understanding Marine Waste Disposal: The Broader Context
CONTENTS

Introduction .................................................. 39
Perspectives on Marine Waters .................................. 40
  Tie Value of Marine Resources ................................. 40
  Philosophical Positions ........................................ 44
Comprehensive Waste Management ............................... 47
  Waste Management Hierarchy .................................. 47
  Multi-Media Assessment ....................................... 48
Public Concerns About the Use of Marine Environments .... 49
  Equity ......................................................... 49
  Public Participation .......................................... 50
  Risk Acceptability ........................................... 50

Table

Table No.  Page
1. Commercial Fish Landings in the United States, 1985 .... 42

Boxes

Box  Page
D. Economic Losses in the Atlantic Coast Striped Bass Fishery .... 43
E. Economic Consequences of PCB Contamination in New Bedford Harbor .... 44
F. The Siting Issue ........................................... 50
G. The Liability Issue ........................................ 51
Introduction

Decisions about marine waste disposal are affected by many ecological, economic, and social factors that extend beyond purely technical considerations. These other important factors include the economic and aesthetic value of marine resources, philosophical perspectives on the use of marine environments for waste disposal, and the nature of public concerns over such disposal. Looking at this range of considerations can help define a broad context within which decisions can be made about using marine environments for the disposal of wastes.

Marine waters have enormous value. They are home to a tremendous diversity of marine organisms and play a critical role in nutrient and energy cycles. From an economic perspective, they harbor food species that provide sustenance to people, primarily from commercial and recreational fishing, but also from hunting coastal waterfowl, harvesting marine plants, and aquaculture and mariculture operations. Fishing supports numerous other commercial activities, such as shipbuilding, fish processing, and retailing. Marine resources are also important sources of products such as pharmaceutical chemicals and many common consumer goods (e.g., the base for toothpaste).

From an aesthetic perspective, marine waters afford the value of a relatively unspoiled and mysterious frontier, as well as numerous recreational opportunities. The sights, smells, and sounds of the sea and its life provide countless people with feelings of pleasure and well-being. Fishermen, mariners, poets, and beachcombers all recount the irresistible attractions of the sea. Commercial fishermen cling tenaciously to their way of life despite economic and physical hardships; recreational fishermen frequently continue to fish for pleasure even when advised not to consume fish due to high contamination levels. Although difficult to fully quantify, it is clear that marine resources are of substantial importance to a wide range of Americans.

Public interest in marine resources heightened in recent decades because of several marine pollution incidents. These include the detection of DDT residues and PCBs in parts of the deep ocean, closures of beaches and shellfish beds in the United States because of bacterial contamination, and a lethal incident in Japan that involved the consumption of mercury-contaminated fish. In addition, problems arising from waste disposal on land (e.g., the discovery of many toxic waste sites and increasing groundwater contamination) generally stimulated public concern about the impacts of wastes in all environments.

The images left after these and other pollution incidents have combined with aesthetic considerations to confer a special status on marine waters. The ocean is viewed by many in the general public as a unique and precious resource requiring careful stewardship because of its vital importance to the earth’s ecosystem and the potential for rendering irreversible harm to it. In addition, in recent years the international community has begun to recognize marine waters in general as a global resource.

1 A recent study of recreational fishermen in New Jersey found that 40 percent of the fishermen surveyed were aware that the fish they caught had unacceptable levels of contaminant ion and refrained from eating them (31). A survey by the U.S. Department of the Interior in 1982–83 found that fishermen most frequently cite relaxation and enjoying nature as the reasons why fishing is a favored outdoor activity; the prospect of catching or consuming fish is cited much less frequently (626).
For these reasons, any discussion of the use of marine waters for waste disposal must consider not only the technical and economic feasibility of a disposal option, but also its political acceptability. Thus, it is increasingly important to consider marine disposal alternatives in the context of broader issues. In particular, the aesthetic and economic value of marine waters should be considered relative to land-based resources and marine waste disposal should be seen as one part of a more comprehensive strategy of waste management.

This chapter examines various perspectives toward marine waters, including their economic and social value from a recreational and commercial viewpoint, and the broad philosophical positions that affect use of these waters, ranging from a protectionist view to managerial stances. These differing philosophical perspectives are reflected in current statutes and could be obstacles to comprehensive marine waste management. Next, two elements of a more comprehensive waste management strategy are examined: a general waste management hierarchy and the use of “multi-media assessment. Finally, recognizing that credibility is crucial to the public acceptability of any waste management decisions, several specific public concerns about marine disposal are discussed: 1) questions of equity; 2) opportunities for public participation; and 3) risk acceptability.

**PERSPECTIVES ON MARINE WATERS**

**The Value of Marine Resources**

It is impossible to accurately and meaningfully quantify the full value of all marine resources to all people. Thus, the following discussion focuses on marine resources that are directly important to large numbers of people or are economically significant, and in addition are especially vulnerable to changes induced by waste disposal. These resources include organisms dependent on marine waters, such as fish, birds, mammals and vegetation, and waters used for swimming and other recreational purposes.

These marine resources support commercial and recreational fishing, beach-going, and other activities generated by the tourist trade in coastal areas. The activities tend to be concentrated in estuaries and coastal areas, although a significant amount of fishing occurs in the open ocean. Marine resources are of substantial and direct importance to tens of millions of Americans and they generate annual expenditures of billions of dollars.

Fishing and beach-going are among the principal recreational uses. Almost 12 million Americans aged 16 or over fished recreationally in U.S. marine waters in 1980 and spent approximately $2.4 billion on food, lodging, transportation, equipment, licenses, tags, and permits (628). Approximately 30 percent of all U.S. finfish landings used for human food (as opposed to uses such as pet food or fish meal) in 1985 were caught by marine recreational fishermen (614). About three-fourths of these fish were caught within 3 miles of shore (605,606).

Although the nationwide significance of beach-going has not been studied in detail, its importance is suggested by a study conducted in Florida (27). Over 13 million adults used the State’s beaches in 1984, and direct and indirect beach-related sales amounted to $4.6 billion—nearly 3 percent of the State’s gross sales. These sales generated about 180,000 jobs, with a payroll of about $1.1 billion, and over $164 million in revenues for the State.

The same study also attempted to quantify the social value of Florida’s beaches. Based on extrapolations from a survey that asked people in Florida how much they would be willing to pay to use the beaches, the investigators estimated a social value ranging between $2 billion and $28 billion. This large range illustrates the uncertainty associated with such an estimate. Nevertheless, it draws attention to the enormous economic significance of recreational activities, and beach-going in particular, to some coastal economies.

*These public concerns were selected to illustrate the range of such concerns, but are only a sample of the various types of issues important to the public.*

*This figure refers to fish landed in all U.S. marine ports, regardless of where they were caught.*
Almost 12 million Americans aged 16 or over fished for recreation in U.S. marine waters in 1980.

In addition to being drawn to marine waters for recreational fishing and bathing, people travel to or live near these waters for other recreational purposes, ranging from waterfowl hunting to whale and bird watching. The degree to which wildlife draws people to marine waters for these other activities is not known, but large numbers of people are involved. For example, National Park Service lands that include marine waters recorded more than 60 million recreational visits in 1985; over 22 million of these visits were recorded at National Seashores (627). A government survey found that wildlife alone attracted at least 5 million people to oceanside areas in 1980 (628).

Besides their recreational uses, wildlife resources are also of tremendous commercial value, primarily to commercial fishermen. About 231,000 commercial fishermen were employed in the United States in 1984. Total commercial landings of fish and shellfish from all U.S. marine waters had a dockside value in 1985 of about $2.3 billion (table 1), and a retail value several times greater. About one-half of the total commercial value was generated by fish and shellfish harvested within 3 miles of shore. These figures do not include the value of support services, such as shipbuilding and fish processing. For example, nearly 110,000 people were seasonally employed in 1984 as processors and other uses, while not discussed here, are locally important. These include activities such as the commercial harvesting of aquatic vegetation (e.g., kelp) and commercial exploitation of fur-bearing mammals.
Table I.—Commercial Fish Landings in the United States, 1985

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coastal region</th>
<th>Million pounds</th>
<th>Million dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Northern Pacific</td>
<td>1,454</td>
<td>$730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California and Hawaii</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulf of Mexico</td>
<td>2,412</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Atlantic</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Atlantic</td>
<td>1,556</td>
<td>644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maryland, Virginia</td>
<td>(815)</td>
<td>(124)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware, New Jersey, New York</td>
<td>(151)</td>
<td>(101)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New England States</td>
<td>(590)</td>
<td>(419)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>6,113</td>
<td>$2,282</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


In 1985, marine fisheries supported well over 200,000 U.S. fishermen, and U.S. landings were valued at $2.3 billion. The single most important commercial marine species was menhaden, shown here being hauled aboard a fishing vessel. Some menhaden being caught along the Atlantic coast, from North Carolina south, exhibit skin ulcers that may be linked to pollutants, but a clear explanation for the affliction has yet to be found.

Recreational and commercial activities have been affected by waste disposal activities in numerous instances. The effects are not always detrimental, and may in fact at times be beneficial. For example, wastes discharged from small fish-processing firms, if properly managed, can increase the food supply for local fish and improve nearby recreational fishing.

Unfortunately, in many cases the impacts are not advantageous. The nationwide magnitude of impacts certainly is very large, although its exact

Photo credit: U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
An additional concern is that since ‘nothing in the sea is provincial, a global perspective must be maintained regarding marine waters. In particular, the United States has been considered a leader in environmental protection, so there is concern that if the United States increases its marine disposal activities, other nations will follow.

Even many strong proponents of protection, however, acknowledge that disposal in marine waters may be appropriate for certain wastes. For example, marine disposal of acid wastes might be considered acceptable in some instances, if properly managed and monitored. At the same time, there is general consensus that certain highly toxic wastes are probably never appropriate for such disposal. Most protectionists would argue that marine disposal should only be chosen after a comparison with land-based treatment and disposal methods (i.e., after conducting a multi-media assessment) (121).

The Managerial View

The managerial position contends that marine waters can be viewed in many ways, and ‘one of the uses of the oceans is that [of] a receptacle for wastes. If used properly, it should serve as a renewable resource’ (189). This perspective is rooted in the conservation movement of the Progressive era; the movement emphasized wise and multiple use of natural resources. From the managerial perspective, many factors need to be balanced in deciding how to use marine waters. These factors include: environmental and human health considerations, technological feasibility, economic costs, and the availability of other disposal options. Depending on how these different factors are weighted, the managerial perspective can support a range of positions from strong protection to maximum use of marine waters.

A basic distinction between the protectionist and managerial perspectives is that the latter is a human-centered approach which views the environment, including marine waters, as a resource to be used for society’s benefit. In contrast, the protectionist position places primary emphasis on the environment itself, treating anthropological concerns as peripheral in any policy decisions. It considers the environment for its own value, however.

The protectionist position argues further that the level of scientific uncertainty about marine environments requires extreme caution when considering their use for waste disposal. Given the potential irreversibility of negative impacts that might result from waste disposal activities or accidents, this view gives special weight to the effects of actions by today’s society on future generations, as Jacques Cousteau explained:

To fulfill a moral obligation that the legacy of the oceans be continued, our first concern must be directed to the future. Risks for our progeny must be weighed against anticipated short-term provincial benefits. Our responsibility toward them is overwhelming... Poisoning the sea will inevitably poison us. Let us act with wisdom, foresight, and prudence (117).

Most proponents of the protectionist perspective maintain that the first management priority is to reduce the generation of a waste at its source. When wastes must be disposed of, protectionists argue that marine waters should only be used as a last resort or at least not be considered equally along with other potential disposal media. One reason given for this strict stand is that whenever marine waters are considered as an option for waste disposal, they are chosen because marine disposal is often the least socially objectionable alternative (i.e., because it satisfies people’s desire to have waste disposal occur at a distance). Marine disposal is also often the least costly disposal alternative for some wastes. For some coastal municipalities, for example, marine disposal of sewage sludge costs less than land-based treatment or disposal. Some observers, however, advocate changing this by having the costs associated with marine disposal (e.g., site selection and monitoring) be borne more directly by waste disposers rather than by the government.

An additional concern is that since ‘nothing in the sea is provincial, a global perspective must be maintained regarding marine waters. In particular, the United States has been considered a leader in environmental protection, so there is concern that if the United States increases its marine disposal activities, other nations will follow.

Even many strong proponents of protection, however, acknowledge that disposal in marine waters may be appropriate for certain wastes. For example, marine disposal of acid wastes might be considered acceptable in some instances, if properly managed and monitored. At the same time, there is general consensus that certain highly toxic wastes are probably never appropriate for such disposal. Most protectionists would argue that marine disposal should only be chosen after a comparison with land-based treatment and disposal methods (i.e., after conducting a multi-media assessment) (121).

The Managerial View

The managerial position contends that marine waters can be viewed in many ways, and ‘one of the uses of the oceans is that [of] a receptacle for wastes. If used properly, it should serve as a renewable resource’ (189). This perspective is rooted in the conservation movement of the Progressive era; the movement emphasized wise and multiple use of natural resources. From the managerial perspective, many factors need to be balanced in deciding how to use marine waters. These factors include: environmental and human health considerations, technological feasibility, economic costs, and the availability of other disposal options. Depending on how these different factors are weighted, the managerial perspective can support a range of positions from strong protection to maximum use of marine waters.

A basic distinction between the protectionist and managerial perspectives is that the latter is a human-centered approach which views the environment, including marine waters, as a resource to be used for society’s benefit. In contrast, the protectionist position places primary emphasis on the environment itself, treating anthropological concerns as peripheral in any policy decisions. It considers the environment for its own value, however.

The protectionist position argues further that the level of scientific uncertainty about marine environments requires extreme caution when considering their use for waste disposal. Given the potential irreversibility of negative impacts that might result from waste disposal activities or accidents, this view gives special weight to the effects of actions by today’s society on future generations, as Jacques Cousteau explained:

To fulfill a moral obligation that the legacy of the oceans be continued, our first concern must be directed to the future. Risks for our progeny must be weighed against anticipated short-term provincial benefits. Our responsibility toward them is overwhelming... Poisoning the sea will inevitably poison us. Let us act with wisdom, foresight, and prudence (117).

Most proponents of the protectionist perspective maintain that the first management priority is to reduce the generation of a waste at its source. When wastes must be disposed of, protectionists argue that marine waters should only be used as a last resort or at least not be considered equally along with other potential disposal media. One reason given for this strict stand is that whenever marine waters are considered as an option for waste disposal, they are chosen because marine disposal is often the least socially objectionable alternative (i.e., because it satisfies people’s desire to have waste disposal occur at a distance). Marine disposal is also often the least costly disposal alternative for some wastes. For some coastal municipalities, for example, marine disposal of sewage sludge costs less than land-based treatment or disposal. Some observers, however, advocate changing this by having the costs associated with marine disposal (e.g., site selection and monitoring) be borne more directly by waste disposers rather than by the government.
difficult to quantify, rather than its value only in terms of its use for humans (558). Thus, the severity of the same impact can be interpreted differently.

When marine waters are viewed as a resource (i.e., from the managerial perspective), they are not necessarily used by society in the most beneficial or environmentally sound way. This problem is related to the ‘‘tragedy of the commons’’ argument: for any resource for which there are no individual property rights (i.e., a common resource), it is in each individual’s interest to use the resource to his/her fullest advantage regardless of any long-term consequences. Ultimately, since all resources have the potential to be exhausted, disaster can result.

A managerial perspective can use several different approaches to encourage better management of such resources. The approach commonly used in the United States is a standard-setting regulatory approach, which delineates the allowable amount of resource degradation or use. Standard-setting can be based on environmental and human health considerations, as well as technological and economic factors; it is used extensively, for example, in the Clean Water Act. Another approach relies more on the use of economic mechanisms to control degradation. For example, a society could use fees or taxes to adjust the degree of resource use to a desired level, or it could use transferable property rights or tradable permits to allocate the rights to use the resource (172).

It is possible that an economic fee or charge approach and a standard-setting system might be integrated to better provide incentives for reduction and more efficient control of certain pollutants; the combination of a permit system with an economic charge system might be better than either system alone in providing the flexibility needed for responding adequately to changing circumstances (56).

Comparing the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act and the Clean Water Act

Currently, the two major statutes regulating marine waste disposal—the Clean Water Act (CWA) and the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA)—embody somewhat different expressions of these basic philosophical perspectives. MPRSA includes protectionist provisions (e.g., establishment of marine sanctuaries), but allows managed use through a permit process for marine dumping. The permit system could also be used to increase or decrease protection. An assessment of all relevant factors, such as alternative options, potential effects, and economics is required before a dumping permit can be granted.

Under MPRSA, disposal of some wastes is absolutely prohibited (e.g., warfare substances and high-level radioactive waste). Other wastes such as some industrial wastes, sewage sludge, and dredged material can be disposed of under regulated conditions.

CWA is more consistently managerial in its orientation, and it stresses a ‘‘best available technology, economically achievable’’ and ‘‘best management practices’’ approach. Under CWA, permits include standards for allowable discharges, but do not require consideration of the full range of factors required for an MPRSA permit.

As a result, and because the two statutes also differ in their jurisdiction over marine environments (ch. 7), different marine environments have received varying degrees of protection from and use for waste disposal. In open ocean environments, dumping activities have generally been strictly controlled or reduced under the guidelines set forth by MPRSA. In estuaries and coastal waters, however, disposal activities regulated under CWA and MPRSA are much more frequent, and in general these waters have borne the brunt of marine disposal activities.

The basic orientation of a law, however, can evolve and change. In the case of MPRSA, Congress embodied a protective attitude in the law a decade ago by setting a 1981 deadline for terminating the disposal of sewage sludge which might ‘‘unreasonably degrade or endanger’’ human health, welfare, or the environment. In a landmark case, City of New York v. United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (543 F. Supp. at 1084, 1099 (S. D.N.Y. 1981)), the court held that not all dumping of sludge was necessarily prohibited by

Congressional intent has been a source of confusion in the Environmental Protection Agency’s implementation of this provision: Congress apparently imposed an absolute deadline, but also included language that can be interpreted to allow the dumping of ‘‘reasonable sludge’’ (1 2,291 ,531).
the 1981 deadline. EPA decided not to appeal the case and currently interprets it to: 1) allow sludge dumping if it does not cause "unreasonable" harm, and 2) require development of criteria for comparing land-based and ocean alternatives to determine when ocean dumping can be allowed. Several cities, including Philadelphia and Washington, have indicated that they would consider the ocean disposal option for sludge if it were to become available.

Although Congress has not officially removed the ban on dumping harmful sludge, it has allowed the 1981 deadline to pass. The law's originally protective attitude thus may be evolving into a more managerial approach to marine waste disposal, but the final policy direction is not yet clear. Specific deadlines for eliminating dumping at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site have been set by EPA and some dumping activity has already shifted to the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site in open ocean waters. The House of Representatives has supported this shift (ch. 7). The extent to which sludge dumping activities should continue under MPRSA, however, has not yet been clarified by Congress.

**COMPREHENSIVE WASTE MANAGEMENT**

It is increasingly recognized that the existing suite of pollution control laws, each primarily focused on abating pollution in one particular medium (air, water, or land), has sometimes resulted in the shifting of wastes from one environmental medium to another and that long-term environmental and human health risks may not have been substantially reduced (110,111,1263,378,382). As a result, there is a need for greater incentives to reduce or avoid the generation of wastes as the best means of reducing waste disposal-related risks (144,263,377,586,587). As our understanding has grown, it has become clear that a highly protective policy toward the open ocean may be counterproductive and that, for particular wastes and situations, marine disposal should be carefully considered in context with land-based alternatives.

Thus, consensus is developing about the need for a more comprehensive waste management strategy in this country. Two key elements of such a strategy would be: 1) a hierarchical approach to waste management, and 2) multi-media assessment. A hierarchical approach ranks waste management methods according to their ability to reduce risk; for example, the highest tiers include methods that avoid the generation of waste (586). Multi-media assessment can be used as a tool to determine which treatment or disposal method, in which environment, would most minimize risk.

**Waste Management Hierarchy**

The idea of a waste management hierarchy was developed originally for wastes classified as hazardous according to the legal definition in the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), but its principles are equally applicable to all wastes which can cause harm to the environment or human health (144,263). Tiers in the waste management hierarchy include:

- reduced generation of waste, with respect to both volume and toxicity (using techniques such as product or input substitution and process modification);
- recovery of waste for recycling or reuse of materials for energy (including the use of waste exchanges, shared central facilities, and third-party recycles);
- destruction or treatment of wastes to reduce toxicity (using techniques such as land-based or ocean incineration);
- stabilization of waste through physical or chemical means (e.g., including neutralization and evaporation);
● isolation or containment (e.g., in surface impoundments or landfills); and
● dispersion in the environment (e.g., by dumping or discharge) (586).

With regard to marine destruction and disposal methods, for example, methods such as ocean incineration, which has the potential to destroy 99 percent of certain hazardous wastes, occupy a middle position in such a waste hierarchy. Other methods such as sewage sludge dumping occupy a lower tier.

Waste minimization was declared to be a national policy in the 1984 amendments to RCRA, but incentives to ensure its implementation are not yet sufficient (587). Strong incentives for reduction, recovery, and treatment of wastes prior to disposal, and for selecting the best available disposal options or improving disposal technology, could be made a more integral part of many environmental statutes (263, 586, 587). Some companies that have voluntarily implemented waste reduction strategies have found that they not only reduce the amount of waste generated, but also save money (279, 490, 587).

It is important to note, however, that even when waste reduction does occur large quantities of wastes may still result. Within a waste management hierarchy, the next objective would be to reduce the levels of toxic pollutants in the wastes, by recovering or recycling materials when possible, and then to select the best disposal option for any remaining wastes. The particular characteristics of a waste and the feasibility or availability of potential disposal media would determine the number and nature of options available, as well as their economy. In general, additional encouragement by Congress of a hierarchical approach for waste management could help facilitate the move toward more comprehensive environmental management.

**Multi-Media Assessment**

Multi-media assessment as an approach to waste management has gained considerable popularity. This procedure involves comparing the impacts of different treatment and disposal options, including impacts on environmental media other than the one directly used, and then selecting an option on the basis of the greatest reduction in overall environmental risk. Other social and economic factors can also be considered in the process.

Multi-media assessment can be difficult to implement, partly because the amount of information needed to perform such an analysis is large and expensive to obtain, and partly because estimating risks is difficult. Thus, this approach may be most useful as a qualitative gauging method for comparing options, rather than as a rigorous, exclusive, or formal basis for decisions.

The need for multimedia assessment arises in part because disposal in each environmental medium is generally regulated by separate statutes. Although possibilities exist for incorporating multi-media considerations into current statutes, to date waste management programs have operated quite independently. For municipal sludge, for example, MPRSA and CWA place strict limits on (and in some cases effectively prohibit) disposal of sludge in marine and surface waters generally. RCRA limits land-based disposal and land application options, and the Clean Air Act sets extensive technological requirements for sludge incineration operations. Each environmental medium may in theory be protected, but factors such as the cross-media transfer of wastes among the media and the effects of one regulatory program on another are not taken into account (49, 283). Moreover, since the sludge must go somewhere, it commonly ends up in the least regulated medium. (EPA is developing comprehensive regulations for sewage sludge management to address these problems; see ch. 9.)

This lack of coordination arises in part because most major environmental statutes were developed...
independently, by different combinations of congressional committees and subcommittees, and are administered by different EPA offices and programs. Differences exist among the statutes with respect to their philosophy and intent, as well as their designation of management authority, and no mechanism provides for development of a comprehensive approach to waste management.

The use of multi-media assessment and a hierarchical approach to waste management could conceivably be integrated into current regulatory programs as a way to promote comprehensive waste management. This would be an enormous under...

PUBLIC CONCERNS ABOUT THE USE OF MARINE ENVIRONMENTS

A critical component of all decisions regarding waste disposal in marine waters is the public acceptability of disposal alternatives. A wide range of factors influence whether an individual or the public at large will accept a particular option, but this discussion only highlights several of the most important ones. One fundamental factor is the level of trust the public has for decisionmakers. While any government action is dependent on public trust for its legitimacy, such trust can be elusive.

EPA’s credibility, for example, eroded in the early 1980s when several scandals involving the Agency and its dealings with some industries were uncovered (360). Efforts are underway to improve this situation, but rebuilding trust is a slow process. In addition, past violations of environmental regulations (that resulted, for example, in the creation of Superfund sites) have led industry and waste management companies to lose credibility. Given these problems, technical assessments about disposal options often hold little sway with the public, especially when such assessments are unclear about the risks of environmental degradation. Building credibility is closely linked to: 1) how equity issues are resolved during the decisionmaking process, 2) how the public is allowed to participate; and 3) how risks and other public concerns are addressed.

Equity

Equity issues arise every time a waste disposal alternative is discussed because residents near a proposed facility or area of disposal fear that their health or property values will be disproportionately jeopardized (see box F). As a consequence, the public often believes that the generator of a waste not only should treat and dispose of it but also should be held liable for any impacts (see box G). One of the most frequently voiced objections at public hearings—whether about the siting of hazardous waste facilities or land disposal of sludge, or permitting for ocean incineration—is that one community should not have to bear the economic burden and potential health and environmental risks of another community’s wastes. Although this is not an easy issue to resolve, several techniques to deal with these concerns are being attempted; when siting hazardous waste treatment facilities, for example, the use of risk-mitigating proposals (e.g., regular safety inspections by public officials and rep-
resentatives) appears to be more attractive to communities than risk compensation proposals (e.g., lowering property taxes) (450).

Public Participation

The right of citizens to participate in decisions that directly affect their interests is a fundamental component of our form of government. Certainly one way to increase the credibility of a waste disposal decision is to involve the public early and throughout the decisionmaking process. The scientific and technical issues surrounding waste disposal options (e.g., the risks of siting a facility or disposing of waste in a certain location) are important factors, but the way they are communicated to and discussed in the community is equally critical. For example, one of the most significant obstacles to the ocean incineration program proposed by EPA is public opposition, which stems in part from poor communication. In this case, the public was excluded from participating in decisions made early in the process (586,667).

Risk Acceptability

If information about a disposal option is highly uncertain, then risks associated with the option are likely to be perceived as high and its acceptance is less likely. Effective communication with the pub-
lic regarding the nature of risks associated with a disposal option is an important aspect of building credibility, addressing equity issues, and encouraging effective public participation in helping to solve problems. Given that access to information influences an individual’s perception of risk, efforts have been made recently to improve communication between government, industry, and citizens about risks (112). Public involvement has been encouraged by EPA, for example, to help make decisions about how to balance risks and other ethical, social, and economic considerations (652). Various States also are developing strategies for involving the public. The New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection, for example, is restructuring risk assessment activities so that information...
"In haul-seining, a net-filled dory is launched through the open surf, an enterprise that, on a rough Atlantic day, demands nerve and experience as well as skill. Without the striped bass, haul-seining is unlikely to survive, and the end of this fishery will mean the end of a surfboat tradition that began when the Atlantic coast was still the American frontier."

about risks is communicated more effectively to the public.  

A number of factors influence risk acceptability (316). Two of the most crucial, especially with respect to marine disposal, are the controllability and irreversibility of potential risks. One of the primary reasons why the public has a protective attitude toward the oceans is a perception that any harm incurred as a result of waste disposal activities in marine waters may be irreversible. The public genuinely believes that the oceans are a resource requiring careful stewardship and that they should not be damaged perhaps irrevocably. As one fisherman noted:

One method is to involve citizen groups in the decisionmaking process before an issue becomes a media event. For example, a New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection study recently found toxic contamination with dioxin in New York Bight lobsters; before any policy determinations were made, the agency invited representatives from the fishery cooperatives in New Jersey and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to meet with its staff. The Corps of Engineers was invited because lobstermen maintain that the marine disposal of dredged material is the primary source of the dioxin contamination. The involvement of both groups is intended to ensure that human health and economic issues will be adequately considered, that credibility in the process can be maintained, and that information will be effectively communicated to the broader public (29).

I’ve seen bluefish come and go in my lifetime, and striped bass, too. The bluefish is a wild fish and a hardy fish, and because he don’t go up in them dirty rivers, he’ll survive where the striped bass will go down. All the fish around here come and go in cycles, and years back, you could anticipate the cycles, but today, with the pollution the way it is, you can’t be so sure that a fish that’s gone will ever come back at all (342).

The logical conclusion drawn by most fishermen, then, is that some stewardship of marine resources is necessary (342).

This sentiment is generally shared by the public which—judging by its high level of recreational use of coastal areas—highly values marine environments. An observation frequently heard when discussing marine waste disposal options—that ‘fish don’t vote’—is literally true, but not completely accurate. Marine waters and organisms do have a constituency that attempts to represent their interests. A number of public interest groups are highly attentive to any decisions regarding the uses of marine waters and the potential impacts of waste disposal. At the same time, most groups would agree that decisions regarding the disposal of wastes in marine waters should be considered in the broader context of comprehensive waste management.
Chapter 3

Waste Disposal Activities

and Pollutant...
CONTENTS

Introduction .......................................................... 57
Availability and Quality of Data ...................................... 57
Ability To Make National Comparisons ................................. 57
Lack of Information on Unregulated Pollutants of Concern ......... 58
The Extent of Pollutant Inputs Into U.S. Marine Waters ............ 60
Pollutants From Pipeline Discharges and Dumping ................ 60
Pollutants From Waste Disposal and Nonpoint Sources .......... 63
Major Sources of Pollutants to U.S. Marine Waters ............... 66
Waste Disposal ......................................................... 66
Nonpoint Pollution .................................................... 72

Tables

Table No. Page
2. Number of Municipal and Major Industrial Facilities Discharging Directly Into Marine Waters .................................. 61
3. Quantities of Dredged Material Disposed of Annually in Marine Waters ................................. 62
4. Relative Contribution of Pollutants by Major Sources in Coastal Hydrologic Units, Circa 1977-81 ........................................ 62
5. Relative Contribution of Various Pollutants by Major Sources in the New York Bight, Circa Mid-1970s .................................. 65
6. Comparison of All Discharges in Coastal Counties and Those Discharges Directly to Marine Waters .......................................... 70

Figures

Figure No. Page
2A. Amount of Dredged Material Dumped in Coastal and Open Ocean Waters Only, 1973-84 ........................................ 63
2B. Amounts of Industrial Wastes and Municipal Sewage Sludge Dumped in All Marine Waters, 1973-85 .................................... 63
3. Location of Current Municipal Sewage Sludge and Industrial Waste Dumpsites in the Northern Atlantic Ocean .............................. 67
4. Amount of Effluent Discharged From Major Municipal Sewage Treatment Plants Directly Into Marine Waters, By State, Circa 1982 ................................. 71
6. Typical Combined Sewer Collection Network During a Storm ................................................................. 74

Boxes

Box Page
H. Management of Low-Level Radioactive Waste ...................... 68
I. Quantities of Wastes Dumped in the Ocean by Other Countries ............. 73
J. Other Pollutants in Marine Environments: Plastics and Tributyltin ............ 76
Waste Disposal Activities and Pollutant Inputs

INTRODUCTION

To fully understand the potential for wastes to affect marine resources and ecosystems and to evaluate management options for reducing adverse impacts, it is important to have an understanding of the amounts of different pollutants entering marine waters from different sources. Marine waters currently receive a variety of wastes, including municipal and industrial effluents, sewage sludge, dredged material, and some industrial wastes. These wastes vary considerably in physical nature and in biological and chemical composition. In addition, many of the same pollutants can be carried directly into marine waters by nonpoint sources such as agricultural and urban runoff, and both disposal activities and nonpoint pollution can occur upstream in rivers that later flow into marine waters.

This chapter first discusses the quality of information available about pollutant inputs into U.S. marine waters, including the issue of unregulated but potentially significant pollutants. The chapter then reviews the extent and variability of waste disposal activities and nonpoint runoff, including a comparison of the relative contributions of pollutants from different sources, and describes the major sources of pollutants to marine waters.

AVAILABILITY AND QUALITY OF DATA

Ability To Make National Comparisons

Considerable information is available describing waste disposal and nonpoint sources and pollutant inputs from these sources. The quality of this information varies considerably, however, which creates some uncertainty in estimates of pollutant inputs on a national scale and places some constraints on our ability to make comparisons among different sources of pollutants. This section briefly describes the quality of available information and how well it can be used in making estimates and conducting comparisons.

For this report, data on dumping activities were obtained primarily from Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) reports and from the Corps of Engineers. Data on pipeline discharges and nonpoint source pollution were obtained primarily from analyses of various EPA computer databases such as the Industrial Facilities Data Base (139,503), and from databases provided by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and Resources for the Future (RFF).\(^1\)

Information on the magnitude of major pipeline discharges and dumping operations that occur into or directly adjacent to marine waters is relatively complete and reliable. For example, the quantities of wastes dumped and the number of major industrial and municipal pipelines discharging into marine waters are relatively well-documented. This is because they occur in a limited area and involve a relatively small number of discrete events or continuous activities. Such data can readily be used to compare the relative importance of these particular sources in different marine waters.

In contrast, the information that would be needed for an accurate national assessment of relative inputs of particular pollutants from all sources (discharges, dumping, nonpoint sources, and upstream activities) is often less complete and reliable, or is gathered and analyzed using differing methodologies and assumptions. Any comparison of information about different pollutant sources that

---

\(^1\)NOAA's Ocean Assessments Division provided data from its National Coastal Pollutant Discharge Inventory, which will eventually contain estimates for all coastal regions. RFF provided data from its Environmental Data Inventory, which contains estimates for both coastal and inland areas. These inventories are referred to as the NOAA and RFF databases, respectively.

\(^2\)Even then, however, extracting information about different types of discharges from existing databases can sometimes be difficult (139).
Lack of Information on Unregulated Pollutants of Concern

The information now available about pollutant inputs to marine waters is largely restricted to the substances that are specifically regulated under the Clean Water Act (CWA) or Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste search, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste search, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste search, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste search, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste search, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste search, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) because information programs and resources are generally focused on regulated pollutants. Thousands of additional pollutants are present in the wastes disposed of in marine waters, however, and hundreds of these may have the potential to affect marine environments and human health. Most of these unregulated and potentially significant pollutants are either pathogens or organic chemicals. Little information is available about their presence in waste materials or marine environments.

These unregulated pollutants can be important. Hundreds of types of microorganisms—viruses, parasites, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa—can be present in waste discharges, sludge, or runoff, and many of these are capable of causing diseases. They can contaminate water and fish, and thus cause economic and recreational losses and direct risks to human health. Only one class of microorganisms—fecal coliform bacteria—is regulated as a CWA pollutant. While not generally pathogenic, it is used to indicate the presence of sewage-derived material (and indirectly, pathogens). Recent studies have concluded, however, that the presence of fecal coliform bacteria is not a good indicator of the presence of these pathogens in marine waters (205).

Several hundred organic chemicals that are not on the CWA list of 126 toxic “priority” pollutants can also be present in waste material and sometimes in runoff. In one survey, EPA identified 385 organic chemicals (with hundreds of others unidentified for various technical reasons) in municipal and industrial wastestreams (644). The chemicals included xylenes, dibenzofurans, and trichlorophenols. In addition, the environmental degradation of chemicals can yield products that sometimes are as toxic or more toxic than the parent compounds. Since tens of thousands of organic chemicals are currently in commercial use and hundreds of new ones are produced annually (386), it is likely that many other chemicals are also present in waste
discharges and runoff (e.g., from pesticide application). An unknown portion of these may be potentially harmful and warrant regulation.

As coastal populations and developments increase, and as the land-based disposal of certain hazardous wastes is increasingly restricted, it is likely that the amounts of pollutants—both regulated and unregulated—entering marine environments will increase. This trend raises concerns over whether current regulations cover all of the “important” pollutants—those pathogens, metals, and organic chemicals that are most likely to cause impacts.

In marine environments, there is little disagreement that the conventional and nonconventional pollutants currently regulated under CWA should indeed be regulated. This consensus is based on a long history of experience, research, and monitoring.

Substantial disagreement exists, however, about the need to regulate additional pathogens, organic chemicals, and metals. From an economic perspective, resources are not available to individually regulate the dozens of metals and hundreds of microorganisms and organic chemicals that have been detected in waste material. Moreover, our technical capabilities and scientific understanding are not sufficient to determine which of these substances are present in concentrate ions sufficient to cause impacts.

One way to evaluate and regulate the large number of potentially significant pollutants would be to develop better pollutant screening approaches to identify the unregulated pollutants that are of primary concern in marine environments. EPA has taken some initial steps to develop screening processes that, while broadly designed, could identify additional pollutants important in marine environments. In one effort, for example, EPA analyzed various industrial wastestreams and identified hundreds of unregulated organic chemicals (644). EPA identified six chemicals that were present in significant amounts, were not currently treatable, and which exhibited toxicity to humans or aquatic organisms: dibenzofuran, two trichlorophenols, carbazole, trichlorobenzene, and a form of dioxane. No standards have yet been developed for these six compounds, however. In a second effort, EPA is developing technical regulations for sewage sludge disposal options (including ocean dumping and various land-based options); the regulations will identify and focus on those pollutants that pose the greatest risks to humans and various environments.

These screening efforts have focused primarily on organic chemicals for several reasons. Many of these chemicals tend to persist in the environment for long periods and are acutely toxic to organisms. In addition, many are soluble in the fatty tissues of organisms and, once ingested from water or sediment, can bioaccumulate (i.e., concentrate) in these tissues. Some of these chemicals can also biomagnify (i.e., increase in concentration in higher levels of food chains) when the contaminated organisms are consumed by predators. Significant acute and long-term chronic impacts attributable to many organic chemicals have been documented in the laboratory and in the field. They are perhaps best exemplified by our experiences with DDT, the use of which has been banned since the early 1970s (54).

The continued development and use of screening procedures may help resolve existing uncertainties about which pollutants are of primary concern in marine environments (254). For example, a relatively simple test of the volatility of an organic chemical in certain organic solvents can serve as a measure of its potential to bioaccumulate in the tissues of marine animals (195). Similarly, the susceptibility of an organic chemical to degrade (e.g., by light energy or by organisms) or volatize can be used as a measure of its potential to be available to marine organisms or to cause impacts in marine environments.

For metals, additional factors such as the precise chemical form can be essential in determining bioavailability or toxicity. For example, organic mercury shows much higher toxicity and bioaccumulation potential than does inorganic mercury. Under conditions that generally prevail in marine environments, most metals bind strongly to particular material, thus altering their environmental fates and impacts. Thus, screening efforts could focus on identifying those forms of metals that are...
actually toxic in marine environments, and those settings where toxic forms are likely to be present in levels sufficient to cause impacts to humans or marine organisms.

The presence in sewage sludge and other waste material of microorganisms that can cause diseases in humans often limits the availability of disposal options for these wastes. Monitoring for their presence is difficult because microorganisms are exceedingly difficult to detect in the field or characterize in the laboratory. Better culturing methods and indicators need to be developed before more extensive pathogen screening efforts can be undertaken. In addition, because many microorganisms are more likely to survive in sediments or in marine organisms than in the water column, monitoring programs must be designed to sample sediments and organisms.

Even for chemicals identified as being of potential significance through screening efforts, however, other factors must be evaluated in determining the need for, or the form of, regulation. For example, in some areas an important source of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) to marine environments is the natural seepage of oil from the ocean floor (19). Similarly, certain known human pathogens are natural members of the bacterial communities in nearshore marine environments (ch. 6).

The screening approaches discussed here focus on identifying individual compounds that have the potential to cause significant impacts. Because numerous pollutants can be present in wastestreams and in marine waters, approaches that first consider the overall toxicity of a wastestream or the cumulative impacts of all pollutants in a waterbody could also be helpful. For example, as a first step biomonitoring procedures (including whole-effluent toxicity tests) (49 FR 9016-9019, Mar. 9, 1984; ref. 64) and environmental indices (414) could be used to identify an effluent or water quality condition that has the potential to cause or is actually causing impacts. Then more extensive screening, using the approaches discussed for individual pollutants, could be used to pinpoint particular pollutants.

**THE EXTENT OF POLLUTANT INPUTS INTO U.S. MARINE WATERS**

Waste disposal activities in marine environments are diverse and highly variable in type, frequency, volume, location, and potential to cause adverse effects. Despite this diversity, much of the debate about marine waste disposal has centered on two main issues: 1) the direct dumping of sewage sludge, industrial waste, and radioactive materials; and 2) the incineration of hazardous wastes at sea. Much less attention has been devoted to comparing the relative contributions of pollutants from other disposal activities or sources such as pipeline discharges and runoff.

While the available data about these two main sources exhibit serious deficiencies, some generalizations can be made about pollutant inputs in different marine environments. In addition, the data can be used to illustrate the complexity and site specificity of disposal activities and pollutant inputs in marine waters.

**Pollutants From Pipeline Discharges and Dumping**

Marine waste disposal activities (i.e., pipeline discharges and dumping operations) are overwhelmingly concentrated in estuaries and coastal waters (see tables 2 and 3). For example, over 1,300 major industrial and almost 600 municipal facilities discharge directly into estuaries and coastal waters, and at most a few discharge into the open ocean. The open ocean is used for the dumping of some dredged material, sewage sludge, and industrial wastes, but four-fifths of the marine-disposed dredged material and virtually all marine-disposed sewage sludge are dumped in estuaries and coastal waters.\(^6\)

\(^6\)The New York Bight is included among coastal waters. However, the dumping of sewage sludge that now takes place in the New York Bight will soon be shifted to a site in the open ocean 106 miles from shore (see below and ch. 9). Current waste disposal sites are discussed below; both active and inactive sites are illustrated in (612).
Furthermore, most pipeline discharges and many dumping activities occur specifically in estuaries rather than in coastal waters. Almost 99 percent of industrial pipelines and 89 percent of municipal pipelines discharge directly into estuaries (table 2), and over half of all marine dumping of dredged material occurs there as well. The extent of these activities varies greatly around the country (tables 2 through 4). For example, over half of the major industrial and municipal pipelines are located in the Northern Atlantic region and the western Gulf of Mexico; three-fourths of all municipal effluent is discharged from the Northern Atlantic States and California. The marine dumping of industrial wastes and sewage sludge is restricted to a few sites in the coastal and open ocean waters of the Northern Atlantic region.

To facilitate discussion, OTA has grouped coastal States into various regions—northern Atlantic, southern Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, California and Hawaii, and northern Pacific (see fig. 21 in ch. 5).

### Table 2.—Number of Municipal and Major Industrial Facilities Discharging Directly Into Marine Waters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coastal States</th>
<th>Municipal</th>
<th>Major Industrial</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Northern Atlantic region:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maine</td>
<td>38 (3)</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Hampshire</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massachusetts</td>
<td>20 (1)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhode Island</td>
<td>8 (2)</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecticut</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>47 (1)</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Jersey</td>
<td>48 (12)</td>
<td>129 (2)</td>
<td>177 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennsylvania</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maryland</td>
<td>34 (1)</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>154 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virginia</td>
<td>11 (4)</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>87 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>244 (24)</td>
<td>576 (2)</td>
<td>820 (26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Southern Atlantic region:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Carolina</td>
<td>10 (1)</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Carolina</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida (Atlantic)</td>
<td>34 (10)</td>
<td>24 (1)</td>
<td>58 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>59 (11)</td>
<td>113 (1)</td>
<td>172 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gulf of Mexico region:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida (Gulf)</td>
<td>22 (5)</td>
<td>17 (1)</td>
<td>39 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alabama</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louisiana</td>
<td>27 (1)</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>106 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texas</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>192 (1)</td>
<td>244 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>113 (6)</td>
<td>347 (2)</td>
<td>460 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>California and Hawaii:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California</td>
<td>50 (18)</td>
<td>112 (5)</td>
<td>162 (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawaii</td>
<td>13 (4)</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>13 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>63 (22)</td>
<td>112 (5)</td>
<td>175 (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Northern Pacific region:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oregon</td>
<td>17 (1)</td>
<td>40 (5)</td>
<td>57 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washington</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alaska</td>
<td>31 (5)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>38 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>99 (6)</td>
<td>184 (5)</td>
<td>283 (11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total/United States**         | 578 (69) | 1,332 (15)       | 1,910 (84) |

*aMunicipal category includes all municipal facilities. Industrial category includes those industrial facilities (excluding steam electric plants) discharging more than 10,000 gallons per day. The most recent available data pertain to dischargers as of 1982 or earlier.*

*bNumbers in parentheses indicate discharges directly into coastal waters. All remaining discharges are into estuarine waters.*

Table 3.—Quantities of Dredged Material Disposed of Annually in Marine Waters (mmt/yr)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coastal region</th>
<th>Estuaries</th>
<th>O to 3 miles offshore</th>
<th>Over 3 miles offshore</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Northern Pacific</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>15.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pacific</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulf of Mexico</td>
<td>91.3</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>118.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Atlantic</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Atlantic</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>115.2</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>30.5</td>
<td>180.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.—Relative Contribution of Pollutants (in percent) by Major Sources in Coastal Hydrologic Units, Circa 1977’81

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region and source</th>
<th>BOD</th>
<th>TSS</th>
<th>TKN</th>
<th>TP</th>
<th>CD</th>
<th>CR</th>
<th>CU</th>
<th>PB</th>
<th>AS</th>
<th>FE</th>
<th>HG</th>
<th>ZN</th>
<th>OIL</th>
<th>HCS</th>
<th>COL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Northern Pacific</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpoint</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Southern Pacific</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpoint</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gulf of Mexico</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpoint</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Southern Atlantic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpoint</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Northern Atlantic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpoint</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total U.S. coastal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonpoint</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.—Average quantities disposed of annually (mmt/yr)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coastal region</th>
<th>Estuaries</th>
<th>O to 3 miles offshore</th>
<th>Over 3 miles offshore</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Northern Pacific</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>15.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pacific</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulf of Mexico</td>
<td>91.3</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>118.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Atlantic</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Atlantic</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>115.2</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>30.5</td>
<td>180.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) Data were obtained from each U.S. Army Corps of Engineers District Office in the form of an annual average. Data were not obtained for individual years; the period over which the data are averaged varies from one district to the next, but generally includes most of the 1970s and early 1980s. Units are millions of metric tons per year (mmt/yr); numbers in parentheses are the percent of the total.
b) The distinction between "O to 3 miles offshore" and "Over 3 miles offshore" was used by the Corps to classify its data, based on the statutory definition of the territorial sea. This division does not, however, correspond exactly to the division between coastal and open ocean waters used by OTA; some open ocean waters may be included in the "O to 3 miles offshore" category, and some coastal waters may be included in the "Over 3 miles offshore" category (see box A in ch. 1).

SOURCE: Office of Technology Assessment, 1987; compiled from data obtained through a 1985-88 survey of District Offices of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
The largest quantities of waste material are introduced into marine waters by industrial and municipal pipeline discharges and from the dumping of dredged material. Pipeline discharges are generally expected to increase in association with increasing industrial development and the growth of coastal populations. Dumping of dredged material in coastal and open ocean waters has fluctuated widely (figure 2A), depending on the nature and timing of harbor development and maintenance activities. Only relatively small quantities of industrial wastes and sewage sludge are currently dumped in marine waters. During the last 10 years, dumping of industrial wastes declined dramatically, while dumping of sludge increased (figure 2B).

Pollutants From Waste Disposal and Nonpoint Sources

Pollutants that enter marine environments from waste disposal activities and nonpoint sources are classified into three categories in the Clean Water Act. Conventional pollutants include suspended solids, oxygen-demanding substances, pH, oil and grease, and fecal coliform bacteria. Nonconventional pollutants is a catch-all category that includes nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphorus. Toxic or priority pollutants include 126 metals and organic chemicals. Each of these categories of regulated pollutants has been linked with observed impacts on marine resources and humans.

Inputs of these pollutants from disposal activities are significantly greater in estuaries and coastal waters than in the open ocean because of the greater intensity of these activities in waters close to shore. This skewed distribution is even further accentuated because many of the same pollutants are introduced into estuaries and coastal waters by rivers and by nonpoint sources (i.e., agricultural and urban runoff).

On a national scale, available data allow a rough comparison of pollutant inputs from point source pipeline discharges and nonpoint runoff that directly enter marine waters. In this limited compar-
ison, the source contributing the majority of a particular pollutant varies with the pollutant (table 4). It is also apparent that more than one source can be an important contributor of some pollutants (e.g., phosphorus). As can be seen from table 4, some generalizations at a national level are possible, however:

- Industrial discharges are, not surprisingly, the dominant sources of many organic chemicals and some metals, accounting for about 90 percent or more of the inputs of cadmium, mercury, and chlorinated hydrocarbons. Inputs of some other metals (e.g., chromium and lead) are dominated by nonindustrial sources in some areas of the country.

- Municipal point sources are major contributors of certain conventional pollutants, accounting for about half of biochemical oxygen demand, total nitrogen, and oil and grease. Surprisingly, however, municipal discharges contribute only one-sixth of the input of fecal coliform bacteria. Municipal discharges are particularly dominant sources of biochemical oxygen demand and nitrogen in the northern Atlantic and in California.

- Nonpoint runoff dominates as a source of suspended solids, and also contributes half or more of total phosphorus, chromium, copper, lead, iron, and zinc. It is also the overwhelming contributor of fecal coliform bacteria in all areas of the country. Nonpoint runoff is a particularly significant contributor of a range of pollutants along the Pacific coast.

In addition, sufficient information is available to conclude that upstream sources of pollutants—whether originating from waste disposal or nonpoint pollution—are the largest sources in the Gulf of Mexico and appear to be important in the northern Atlantic region. However, the absolute quantity of pollutants is only a partial measure of their subsequent impact; for example, many riverborne pollutants are considerably more diluted or degraded by the time they reach marine waters than they would be if they had been released directly into those waters. Thus, the magnitude of marine impacts due to upstream sources is not necessarily commensurate with the magnitude of their pollutant inputs.

It is difficult to compare pollutant inputs from pipeline discharges and runoff to those resulting from marine dumping of dredged material or sewage sludge because of the extreme variability in composition of dumped wastes and the intermittent and localized nature of dumping operations. Dumping—and resulting pollutant inputs—appears to be relatively minor in most estuaries and coastal waters; however, in those areas where dumping does occur, it can be a significant contributor of many pollutants. Table 5 compares inputs from various sources to the waters of the New York Bight based on estimates for the mid-1970s; more recent comprehensive data are not available. This example represents an extreme case, however, because the significance of dumping as a source of pollutants is probably greater in the New York Bight than in other estuarine or coastal regions of the United States.

On a local or regional scale, the relative importance of any source can vary from the above generalizations, depending on factors such as: the type of industrial development, the nature of industrial discharges to municipal sewage treatment systems, the relative amounts of urban and agricultural runoff, the extent of combined sewer overflow, the relative contamination of sediments by discharges and runoff, and the extent of port maintenance. The majority of total phosphorus, for example, is contributed by municipal pipelines along the east coast and by nonpoint sources along the west coast; in the Gulf of Mexico, roughly equal amounts are contributed by industrial discharges, municipal discharges, and nonpoint sources (table 4).

The amounts of specific pollutants in discharges or runoff can change over time. For example, regulations governing the production, use, or disposal of certain substances can affect the amounts of pol-
Many pollutants are carried into the Gulf of Mexico by rivers, especially the Mississippi River, from areas far from the coast. This satellite photo shows river water laden with sediment and other matter appearing as whispy white plumes.

Table 5.—Relative Contribution of Various Pollutants by Major Sources in the New York Bight, Circa Mid-1970s

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pollutant</th>
<th>Total mass input</th>
<th>Dumping*</th>
<th>Atmospheric input</th>
<th>Pipeline discharges*</th>
<th>Runoff</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>880 mt/yr</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>1,810 mt/yr</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>5,100 mt/yr</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>4,500 mt/yr</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>110 mt/yr</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>12,000 mt/yr</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCBS</td>
<td>7.4-6.6 mt/yr</td>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>3-13</td>
<td>39*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS</td>
<td>8,800 x 10^3 mt/yr</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOC</td>
<td>950 x 10^3 mt/yr</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>190 x 10^3 mt/yr</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>50 x 10^3 mt/yr</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ABBREVIATIONS**
- PCBS = polychlorinated biphenyls
- TSS = total suspended solids
- TOC = total organic carbon
- mt/yr = metric tons per year
- Dumping* includes dumping of both sewage sludge and dredged material
- Pipeline discharges* includes both municipal and industrial discharges

**SOURCES**
Wastes in Marine Environments

Pollutants, such as when restrictions on DDT and PCBs significantly reduced the levels of these substances in pipeline discharges. Regulations have resulted in some reductions in the amounts of oxygen-demanding pollutants and nutrients in industrial and municipal discharges.

Climatic factors also differentially affect the contribution of pollutants from various sources and their subsequent impacts. For example, municipal point sources may be more important contributors of nutrients during summer months, when rainfall and river flow (and thus nonpoint runoff) are generally lower; conditions conducive to eutrophication are also most prevalent in the summer.

**MAJOR SOURCES OF POLLUTANTS TO U.S. MARINE WATERS**

Two major source categories contribute pollutants to U.S. marine waters: waste disposal and non-point pollution. (In addition to this information, box H discusses the management of low-level radioactive waste, and box I summarizes information about the quantities of wastes dumped in the ocean by other countries.)

**Waste Disposal**

Waste disposal means the intentional release of wastes to marine waters, either through direct dumping or through pipeline discharges. Nonpoint pollution, in contrast, is more diffuse and includes, for example, runoff from rural and urban land surfaces.

**Dumping Activities**

Wastes dumped in marine environments include dredged material, municipal sewage sludge, and industrial wastes.

**Dredged Material.** — Very large amounts of dredged material—about 180 million wet metric tons (mt)—are disposed of each year in U.S. marine waters (table 3), accounting for some 80 to 90 percent of the volume of all material dumped in these waters. Approximately two-thirds of all dredged material is dumped in the Gulf of Mexico. Almost two-thirds of marine dumping of dredged material occurs in estuaries (including intertidal areas), The remainder is divided more or less evenly between waters within the 3-mile territorial boundary and waters beyond this boundary. The types of marine waters used most frequently for disposal vary considerably around the country. In the Gulf of Mexico and in California, for example, most material is dumped in estuaries; in the southern Atlantic region, in contrast, most material is dumped more than 3 miles from shore.

Over the last 10 to 15 years, the annual amount of dredged material disposed of in coastal and open ocean waters only has varied considerably (data are not readily available for the amounts of material dumped each year in estuaries). The total amount of material dumped in these waters showed a general decline from 120 million wet mt in 1974 to about 35 million wet mt in 1982 (figure 2A). It is difficult to predict how much material will be dredged in the future, but it could increase substantially if several harbor deepening projects that are now being considered by the Corps of Engineers and Congress are undertaken (see ch. 10).

The composition of dredged material also varies from one area to the next. In some areas, sediments have been contaminated by metals and organic chemicals originating from industrial and municipal discharges and nonpoint pollution. When these sediments are dredged and then dumped, the pollutants are carried along to the dumping site. Only a fraction of all dredged material is considered by the Corps of Engineers to be contaminated, although the absence of specific numerical criteria to define contaminated material is a source of controversy.

**Municipal Sewage Sludge and Industrial Wastes.** — Most waste other than dredged material that is dumped in marine waters consists of sewage sludge from municipal treatment plants and acid or alkaline liquid industrial wastes. These wastes can contain a variety of different pollutants.

---

1 Most of the waters beyond this boundary can be classified as open ocean, but some—particularly, the New York Bight—are classified here as coastal waters.
For the last several decades, many marine dumpsites have been used for the disposal of sewage sludge and industrial wastes. However, most dumping of these materials has taken place in the coastal waters of the Northeastern United States. Currently, only a few sites are being used, all located either in the New York Bight or in open ocean waters about 100 miles east of the coast of Delaware.

The dumping of sewage sludge has steadily increased from 2.5 million wet mt in 1958 to 7.5 million wet mt in 1983; 6.6 million wet mt were dumped in 1985 (figure 2B). In 1980, EPA phased out dumping by over 100 municipalities (including one large city, Philadelphia); however, these municipalities together accounted for only 3 percent of all dumped sludge (292). The amount of sludge dumped continued to increase after 1980, partly because more secondary treatment plants, which produce more sludge, came into operation in the New York area. Most sewage sludge has been dumped either at the mid-Atlantic site off of Delaware Bay or at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site located in the New York Bight (figure 3). Sewage sludge currently dumped in marine waters originates from nine sewerage authorities in New York and New Jersey; most of it is currently dumped at the 12-Mile site, but over the next few years all remaining marine dumping will be moved to the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site which lies just off the edge of the continental shelf (figure 3).13

Marine dumping of industrial wastes meanwhile has decreased dramatically over the last decade (figure 2 B) from a peak of 4.6 million wet metric tons in 1973 originating from over 300 industrial firms (6,1 15, 292), to the current level of about 200,000 wet metric tons dumped annually by 3 firms (ch. 11; refs. 139,648). Most of this is dumped at the Deepwater Industrial Waste Site, located about 10 nautical miles west of the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site.14 The vast majority of these industrial wastes has been dumped in the northern Atlantic, although pharmaceutical wastes were dumped at a site north of Puerto Rico for almost a decade until 1981.

Pipeline Discharges

OTA obtained two different types of estimates for the number and flow of pipelines whose discharges may affect marine waters. The first estimate includes all discharges located in coastal counties of the United States; this clearly represents an overestimate because only a fraction (albeit unknown) of wastewater and associated pollutants discharged in inland areas of coastal counties will reach marine waters. The second estimate includes only those discharges directly into marine (estuarine or coastal) waters; this number probably underestimates the total number and flow of pipelines affecting marine waters because it excludes that fraction

---

13 The Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site occupies an area of approximately 100 square nautical miles. It is located approximately 120 nautical miles southeast of Ambrose Light, New York, and 115 nautical miles from Atlantic City, New Jersey, in water depths ranging from 2,250 to 2,750 meters (49 FR 19005-19012, May 4, 1984).

14 The Deepwater Industrial Waste Site occupies an area of approximately 30 square nautical miles. It is located approximately 125 nautical miles southeast of Ambrose Light, New York, and 105 nautical miles from Atlantic City, New Jersey, in water depths ranging from 2,250 to 2,750 meters (49 FR 19005-19012, May 4, 1984).
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
must still approve any LLW dumping permit within 90 days of the initial application. As a result, the Navy has decided to carry the radioactive components on land, despite its conclusions about relative risks.

If dumping of LLW by the United States does occur again, current regulations would require greater containment than in the past. After dumping, the waste would have to remain in a canister with a maximum level of radioactivity determined by EPA to be environmentally innocuous; in addition, a comprehensive monitoring plan would be required. As updating and expanding these regulations (scheduled for completion by December 1987).

Some LLW has been discharged from pipelines into U.S. surface waters and carried downstream to marine waters. Prior to the mid-1960s, reactors at several defense sites had systems in which cooling water could be contaminated with radionuclides if a fuel leak occurred. Such incidents occurred at the Hanford site in Washington, for example, and the contaminated cooling water was discharged into nearby streams and carried into the Columbia River and the river estuary (458). Reactors with this design have been inoperative since the mid-1960s, yet quantities downstream of them still contain residual radioactivity (e.g., cobalt-60) (458). Reactors operating today are designed with a closed system, in which radioactive effluent is carried into cits designed to trap radionuclides. Despite this, some radionuclides have migrated into nearby streams in concentrations higher than those acceptable under EPA drinking water standards (C. Welty, U.S. Department of Energy, pers. comm., September 1986); some of these radionuclides subsequently have migrated into estuaries.

Internationally, no LLW has been dumped since 1983, and an "indefinite" moratorium on such disposal was adopted in 1983 (see box 1).

Issues Affecting Future Marine Disposal

Several issues affect the potential for future marine disposal of LLW: 1) environmental feasibility; 2) economic, political, and social acceptability; and 3) potential problems in siting land-based disposal facilities. Most analysts to date have focused on the environmental issue.

The environmental consequences of dumping at the most heavily used international marine site (in the northeastern Atlantic, see box 1) have been investigated by a panel of experts appointed by the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development's Nuclear Energy Agency. The panel concluded that: 1) maximum exposure of humans to radioactivity from marine dumping of LLW has been extremely low, substantially lower than exposure from land-based disposal; 2) significant damage has occurred to marine organisms at or near the site; and 3) accelerated use of the site would not change these conclusions (312). However, the panel also noted that monitoring the site was difficult, that impacts could not be detected outside of a certain radius, and that impacts in the deep sea could not be adequately assessed without improved biological and environmental information (557). In addition, poor recordkeeping at many LLW dumping sites, including the Hanford site, has made assessments of environmental impact impossible in many cases.

In September 1986, a majority of the nations of the world, through the International Seabed Area Convention (see box Q in ch. 7) passed a resolution that required additional study to "evaluate the feasibility, economic, and social aspects of dumping at sea; 2) costs and risks of long-lived waste disposal; 3) whether it can be proven that dumping will not harm human beings; and 4) assessment by the International Seabed Area Convention and the International Seabed Resources Authority of a function to terminate the moratorium on marine dumping of radioactive waste." The seven Contracting Parties to the LDC, held in October 1986, rejected this resolution because it would influence decisions about marine dumping. The U.S. Department of Energy has been unable to find a permanent, safe long-term storage site at the Hanford or Savannah River project waste (mostly contaminated...
of upstream discharges that does reach marine waters. Table 6 presents a comparison of these two estimates for the number and flow of municipal and industrial pipelines.

Using the conservative data, almost 2,000 municipal and major industrial pipelines discharge effluent directly to estuaries and coastal waters. Almost all of these pipelines (about 96 percent) are located in estuaries, and over two-thirds are industrial (table 2). The largest share (43 percent) of these discharges are concentrated in the northern Atlantic region. The Gulf of Mexico, in particular the western Gulf, also has a high concentration of pipelines.

There are, of course, substantial variations in the amounts of municipal and industrial discharges into individual waterbodies. In one analysis of four estuaries and coastal waterbodies, the number of major industrial dischargers was estimated to be three to five times higher than the number of municipal dischargers in three waterbodies (Puget Sound, San Francisco Bay, and Narragansett Bay). In contrast, in the Chesapeake Bay municipal dischargers were three times as numerous as major industrial dischargers (139).

Table 6. Comparison of All Discharges in Coastal Counties and Those Discharges Directly to Marine Waters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Number of dischargers</th>
<th>Flow (bgy)</th>
<th>Database, source</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Municipal dischargers:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coastal county</td>
<td>2,207</td>
<td>3,620</td>
<td>NCPDI, from NOAA</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct marine</td>
<td>578</td>
<td>2,306</td>
<td>IFD and Needs Survey, from EPA</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Industrial dischargers:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coastal county (major and minor)</td>
<td>4,592</td>
<td>4,914</td>
<td>NCPDI, from NOAA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct marine (major only)</td>
<td>1,332</td>
<td>4,136</td>
<td>IFD, from EPA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ABBREVIATIONS: bgy = billion gallons Per year  
NCPDI = National Coastal Pollutant Discharge Inventory  
IFD = Industrial Facilities Database  
rDischargers located in coastal counties of the United States.  
bDischargers actually discharging wastewater directly into marine (estuarine or coastal) waters of the United States.  
cEstimates include both major and minor dischargers.  
dEstimates include only major dischargers (defined by EG&G, 1986: 139), as those with wastewater flows greater than 0.01 million gallons per day.  
**REFERENCES:**  
1. Data from National Coastal Pollutant Discharge Inventory (NCPDI) received through personal communication, D.J. Basta, Chief, Strategic Assessments Branch, NOAA, Washington, DC, Nov. 14, 1988.  
**SOURCE:** Office of Technology Assessment, 1987.
Municipal Discharges.—Of the approximately 15,500 publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) in the United States, only about 3.5 percent (i.e., a total of 578) discharge directly into estuaries and coastal waters (ref. 503). The POTWs that discharge into marine waters, however, account for one-fourth of the Nation municipal wastewater; moreover, almost 90 percent of them (509) discharge into estuaries (table 2). POTWs discharging into marine waters account for such a large portion of total wastewater because many of them are large and serve densely populated coastal areas. On an annual basis, they discharge a total of about 2.3 trillion gallons of effluent into marine waters—2 trillion gallons into estuaries and 0.3 trillion gallons into coastal waters (503).

The amount of municipal effluent discharged to marine waters varies considerably among different regions of the country (figure 4). More than 60 per-
cent of all municipal discharges to marine waters occurs in the waters of the northern Atlantic region, especially from New York. Almost 20 percent is discharged from California. The magnitude of municipal discharges has increased roughly in parallel with population growth and as previously unsewered sources have been connected to municipal systems.

A few sewerage authorities in Los Angeles and Boston discharge sludge through POTW outfalls into marine waters (see ch. 9). Such discharges are scheduled to be terminated by 1987 for Los Angeles and the mid-1990s for Boston. In 1980, some 107,000 dry metric tons of sludge were discharged by POTWs in southern California (U.S. General Accounting Office, 1983, cited in ref. 503).

The quantities of different pollutants in municipal effluent and sludge depends primarily on the nature of any industrial discharges to POTWs and the degree of treatment used by POTWs. A significant portion of the wastewater entering POTWs consists of indirect industrial discharges. Nationally, some 160,000 indirect discharges account for about one-eighth of the wastewater flow through all POTWs (ref. 666). For those POTWs that discharge into marine waters, indirect industrial discharges account for a slightly larger portion, about one-seventh (0.33 trillion gallons per year, or tgy) of wastewater flow; most of this (about 0.31 tgy) enters estuaries rather than coastal waters (ref. 503). In addition, the concentration of pollutants in municipal discharges depends on the degree of treatment because higher levels of treatment remove (either intentionally or incidentally) greater amounts of pollutants. About two-fifths of the effluent discharged into marine waters receives less than secondary treatment (see ch. 9).

Industrial Discharges.—Over 1,300 major industrial facilities (excluding powerplants) discharge effluents directly into marine waters; about 98 percent of these discharge into estuaries (table 2). This estimate excludes minor dischargers, facilities located upstream whose discharges reach marine waters, and indirect industrial discharges into municipal sewers; lack of data on these additional industrial sources introduces considerable uncertainty into the estimation of these contributions.

As seen in table 2, the number of industrial dischargers varies significantly among different geographic regions, not surprisingly showing a strong correlation with the density of industrial development. The quantity and composition of industrial discharges also varies from one area to the next, depending on the degree and nature of industrial development. Because of the wide variations resulting from these factors, it is very difficult to assess the relative importance of pollutant inputs from industrial discharges in different regions of the country. Information about the amounts of metals and organic chemicals in industrial discharges is discussed in detail in chapter 8.

Nonpoint Pollution

Nonpoint pollution is an important contributor of pollutants to marine waters in all parts of the country. Sources of nonpoint pollution include:

- runoff from cities, industrial sites, and farmland, caused mostly by precipitation and subsequent drainage;
- precipitation itself;
- atmospheric deposition;
- underground transport through aquifers; and
- other releases of pollutants (e.g., leaching of pollutants such as tributyltin from ship hulls; see box J).

Nonpoint pollution also can originate from septic tank systems and from combined sewer overflows (CSOs) (figure 6). Sewage from septic tanks, for example, can drain either directly or through aquifers into marine waters or into rivers flowing into marine waters.

Generally, the only data available on the contribution of pollutants by different nonpoint sources are for runoff. Runoff tends to be an especially large source of fecal coliform bacteria, suspended solids, and, to a lesser extent, oxygen-demanding pollutants and nutrients (table 4). Urban runoff contributes large quantities of oil and grease, lead, and
Box I.—Quantities of Wastes Dumped in the Ocean by Other Countries

The United States is not the only country that dumps wastes into marine waters. According to the most recent data available from records maintained by the London Dumping Convention (LDC), an annual average of 300 to 400 million tons of waste was dumped into marine waters between 1976 and 1982 by Nations that are members of the LDC (including the United States) (figure 5). About 90 percent of this is dredged material generated by the deepening or maintenance of ports, harbors, and shipping channels. Of the remaining 10 percent, about half is industrial waste and half is sewage sludge. This material was disposed of under some 400 to 600 individual annual permits.

No data are available on numbers and amounts of pipeline discharges of industrial and municipal effluents worldwide, and virtually no data exists on the practices of Nations that are not parties to the LDC. Information on the incineration of hazardous wastes at sea is reviewed in reference 586.

Dredged Material

About 1.3 billion metric tons of sediment are dredged each year worldwide. The United States accounts for about 35 percent of this material. Of the total amount of material dredged worldwide, a large portion—about 1.1 billion tons—is disposed of in or near marine waters. Some 23 percent is disposed of in open ocean waters, 36 percent in nearshore and intertidal sites (and behind bulkheads), 27 percent in wetlands or in open-water areas in estuaries, and the remainder in upland areas and other environments. About three-fourths of this total was from new projects and one-fourth from maintenance dredging.

Industrial Wastes

The types of industrial wastes disposed of in the ocean vary greatly among different countries. The most toxic industrial wastes are banned from ocean disposal by all of the international conventions (see box Q in ch. 7), and some countries are phasing out all ocean dumping of industrial wastes. Little if any hazardous waste (as they would be defined by the U.S. Resource Conservation and Recovery Act) is disposed of in the ocean, other than certain corrosive wastes (acid or alkaline liquids) which are neutralized by the natural buffering capacity of seawater.

Many nations, however, still dump some “non-hazardous” industrial wastes in the ocean. Between 1977 and 1982, an annual average of about 17 million metric tons of industrial waste was dumped in the ocean. The largest amount was dumped by the United States, followed by France, the United Kingdom, Hong Kong, Germany (FRG), h-eland, the Netherlands, Belgium, Italy, Spain, New Zealand, Canada, Australia, and Denmark.

Sewage Sludge

Between 1977 and 1982, an average of 17 million wet metric tons of sewage sludge was dumped in the ocean each year. The United States and the United Kingdom contribute roughly equal shares, and together account for more than 95 percent of this total. In many countries, both treated and untreated

---

*The LDC is an international agreement that governs the deliberate dumping of wastes into the world's oceans (see box Q in ch. 7). Member Nations are required to report annually to the LDC the number of permits granted for ocean dumping and the types and tonnages of wastes disposed of in this manner. It is not possible to discern whether dumping of waste into all marine waters (estuaries, coastal waters, and the open ocean) is included in the LDC estimates. This accounts for any discrepancies between these figures and others cited here.

**These figures are based on a survey of 108 ports in 38 countries conducted in 1980 by the International Association of Ports and Harbors.
sewage is discharged into marine waters through pipelines or into rivers that directly enter marine waters.

Radioactive Wastes

No nation has yet used marine waters for the intentional disposal of high-level radioactive waste. The concept of intentionally disposing of such waste within deep-sea sediments, however, has been cooperatively investigated by the Subseabed Working Group, a group of countries within the Nuclear Energy Agency (NEA) of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (585).

In contrast, intentional dumping of low-level radioactive waste has occurred in marine waters. Since 1950, European countries have dumped almost 1 million curies of low-level radioactive waste at a site approved by NEA, northwest of Spain in the northeastern Atlantic ocean (378). The dumping of low-level radioactive waste in marine waters has been curtailed since 1983 by all European countries (as well as by the United States), pending the completion of several studies identified by the London Dumping Convention (see box H). Several European countries (e.g., France, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom) and Japan have expressed interest in resuming such disposal should it be allowed (refs. 378,559; J.P. Olivier, Division of Radiation Protection and Waste Management, NEA, pers. comm., May 1986).***

*** Effluent containing low-level radioactive waste from two fuel reprocessing plants in Europe (Sellafield in the United Kingdom and La Hague in France) continues to be discharged into marine waters. The effluent from Sellafield has been discharged into the Irish Sea since 1957; between 1957 and 1980, it contained 2.3 million curies of radioactivity, considerably more than the total amount of curies dumped at the northeastern Atlantic site.

**Figure 6.** Typical Combined Sewer Collection Network During a Storm

The capacity of municipal sewage treatment plants is usually not adequate to handle the large volumes of combined wastewaters (domestic wastewater, industrial wastewater, and storm water runoff) that may result during storms. In such situations, the wastewater that cannot be handled by the plant is not treated and is diverted to the receiving waters. This diversion is known as a combined sewer overflow.

**Legend**
- Runoff
- Dry weather flow
- Treated effluent
- Overflow

**Source** After U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Of Free of Water, Combined Sewer Overflow Toxic Pollutant Study, EPA 440/1-84/304 (Washington, DC April 1984)
Chromium; agricultural runoff contributes large quantities of pesticides and herbicides, including various chlorinated hydrocarbons (478,608). Runoff is highly variable in different areas and at different times, although this fact can be obscured in average annual statistics.

Some information has been collected to address the importance of nonpoint sources in general. According to an analysis of State and EPA data for 10 States, nonpoint sources were considered the most important contributor of damaging pollutants in 48 percent of the cases where estuaries failed to support key uses (e.g., fishing, swimming, and the propagation of marine life) (658). Furthermore, in all regions but the Northeast, nonpoint sources were considered more important than point sources; 78 percent of the States considered the magnitude of water problems associated with nonpoint sources to be greater than that relating to point sources (658). Even in the Northeast, there are numerous instances where nonpoint sources are the most important sources of specific pollutants and major contributors to serious problems. In the Chesapeake Bay, for example, roughly 60 to 80 percent of the nitrogen (which contributes to eutrophication) in the Bay originates from nonpoint sources (624).

Additional evidence from State reports issued in 1986 provides ample support for the conclusion that nonpoint sources are very significant. In Florida, for example, nonpoint sources were the primary factor in 43 percent of the estuaries which failed to support their designated uses (220). These State reports also indicate that septic systems can be important contributors of certain pollutants (in particular, fecal coliform bacteria) in coastal areas with a high portion of unsewered households—e.g., the Gulf of Mexico and the southern Atlantic coast. In addition, CSOs tend to be more frequent in the older cities of the Northeast that rely to a greater extent on combined sewer systems (631), but are also major problems in areas such as Puget Sound (463) and coastal Florida (220).

Pollutants such as metals and organic chemicals can also be carried from some hazardous waste sites into marine waters through contaminated runoff or transport through aquifers (610). At least 75 hazardous waste sites in coastal counties are considered to present some threat to marine resources and human health.
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted.
While most observers agree that recycling and the development of biodegradable plastics would help reduce the problem, opinions differ about the availability of technologies to carry out these processes, the degree to which they would help, whether biodegradable plastics will break down into nonharmful substances, and which institutional methods (e.g., taxation) would provide effective incentives. Environmental groups (e.g., Environmental Defense Fund, The Ocean Society) and the plastics industry (e.g., Society of the Plastics Industry), along with the U.S. Coast Guard and several other governmental agencies, support the adoption of Annex I of MARPOL (380). Legislation was introduced in Congress in 1986 to begin addressing the issue.

Leaching of Tributylin From Ship Hulls

Another source of pollution to marine vessels is the leaching of constituents of antifouling paints from ship hulls. One of these constituents, tributylin (TBT), is a highly effective antifouling agent used on thousands of recreational and commercial vessels. By preventing the attachment of barnacles and other marine organisms to hulls, for example, TBT can save vessel operators hundreds of millions of dollars annually. In addition, it is used in many consumer products, such as household cleaners.

TBT also is one of the most toxic antifouling agents used. Although it has been used for decades, its potentially deleterious impacts have only recently received attention (198,352). It can damage nontarget marine organisms, some of which have commercial value or are important in estuarine food webs. In Europe, for example, TBT has been considered responsible for deformations and deaths of oysters in the coastal waters of Britain and France. There is also concern over worker exposure to TBT in shipyards; some studies indicate that it may cause health problems ranging from skin disorders to some forms of cancer.

As a result of these and other findings, some countries have regulate the use of TBT. For example, the United Kingdom restricts the composition of antifouling paint, while France prohibits its use on ships below a certain size (198,374).

While the United States has not taken similar steps to date regarding control of TBT, the use of TBT has occurred at the state level. In two states (D. Deley, Environmental Defense Fund (EDF), Washington, D.C., pers. comm., January 1987). North Carolina has adopted a strict water quality standard (0.05 parts per million) for the presence of TBT in saltwater. Concerns that TBT may harm shellfish in Chesapeake Bay has led to calls for controls on the use of TBT (D. Deley, EDF, pers. comm., January 1987, Reid, 1986, EDF, 1986). In Virginia, for example, EDF petitioned the State Water Control Board to adopt a water quality standard for TBT; the board may consider such an action after EPA's water quality criteria document for TBT is issued (tentatively scheduled for draft release in spring 1985). The State has considered banning the use of TBT on recreational vessels less than 25 meters in length and restricting its use on larger vessels; Maryland may consider similar legislation. As a result of these types of concerns, Congress held hearings in 1986 on the use and effects of TBT and EPA has conducted risk-benefit analyses of its use.
Runoff from agricultural lands can carry soil particles, pesticides, bacteria, and other pollutants directly into estuaries and coastal waters or into rivers that later flow into these waters.
Chapter 4
Marine Environments and Processes, and Fate of Pollutants
CONTENTS

Types of Marine Environments and Their Susceptibility to Adverse Impacts .......... 81
   Estuaries .................................................................................................................. 81
   Coastal Waters ......................................................................................................... 85
   The Open Ocean ....................................................................................................... 86
Fate and Distribution of Wastes and Associated Pollutants ............................... 87
   Initial Dilution .......................................................................................................... 87
   Physical Transport .................................................................................................... 88
   Biological Transport ................................................................................................. 88
   Sediment Deposition ............................................................................................... 89
Pollutants and Their Relationship to Impacts ....................................................... 90
   Oxygen-Demanding Substances ............................................................................. 90
   Nutrients .................................................................................................................. 90
   Suspended Solids ...................................................................................................... 91
   Pathogens ................................................................................................................. 91
   Organic Chemicals and Metals ............................................................................. 91
Can Marine Environments Assimilate Wastes or Recover From Impacts? ........ 95

Figures

Figure No. Page
7. Generalized Marine Food Web................................................................. 83
8. Types of Marine Environments ............................................................... 84
9. Primary Productivity In and Near a Typical Estuary .................................. 84
10. Circulation Pattern in a Typical Stratified Estuary ................................. 84
11. General Fate of Sewage Sludge Dumped in Marine Waters .................... 87
12. General Fate of Effluent Discharged Into Marine Waters ...................... 88
13. Life Cycle of the Winter Flounder and Potential Contact With
    Chemical Pollutants ......................................................................................... 91
14. The Transfer of DDT Through a Portion of a Food Web in the
    Long Island Estuary ......................................................................................... 92

Box

Box Page
K. Ecological Conditions and Concepts ....................................................... 82
Marine waters are classified in this report into three categories: estuaries, coastal waters, and the open ocean. The multitudes of different organisms that inhabit these waters require certain environmental conditions to survive and reproduce (box K). Changes in these conditions can occur as a result of waste disposal activities, depending on the fate of the wastes and associated pollutants and on the susceptibility of the waters and organisms to impacts.

The fate of wastes and associated pollutants, and the susceptibility of organisms to impacts from these substances, is influenced by features of marine environments and the organisms. For example, wastes and associated pollutants generally are dispersed and diluted by physical processes that transport and mix water; these physical processes, however, vary greatly in relation to a waterbody’s degree of enclosure, currents, volume, and depth. In contrast, the concentrations of some pollutants can increase after disposal because of chemical processes (e.g., adsorption of pollutants to solid material), physical features (e.g., salinity gradients), or biological processes (e.g., the ability of organisms to accumulate some pollutants).

The three marine environments differ in their general susceptibility to adverse impacts. To understand how the various marine environments are affected by wastes, it is important to consider three issues: 1) the fate of wastes and associated pollutants after disposal, 2) the relationships between pollutants and specific impacts, and 3) whether marine environments can assimilate wastes or recover from adverse impacts.

**TYPES OF MARINE ENVIRONMENTS AND THEIR SUSCEPTIBILITY TO ADVERSE IMPACTS**

**Estuaries**

An estuary is a semi-enclosed waterbody with a free, but often small, connection to coastal waters or the open ocean, within which seawater is measurably diluted with freshwater from land drainage (fig. 8; ref. 612). Estuaries can vary greatly in size, shape, and degree of freshwater influence. For example, the category includes tidal marshes and lagoons, as well as the mouths of large rivers such as the Connecticut and Mississippi rivers. The Chesapeake Bay is considered an estuary because it is semi-enclosed and influenced by several rivers (including the Susquehanna and Potomac rivers).

Estuaries are among the most ecologically and economically important of all aquatic environments. Their productivity is generally very high because nutrients are plentiful (figure 9); large quantities of nutrients stimulate growth, reproduction, and photosynthesis in phytoplankton, and large populations of phytoplankton support large populations of other organisms. The nutrients are generally the result of discharges and runoff from the land, which tend to get trapped when they enter estuaries. Many marine organisms, including some that live primarily in coastal or open ocean waters and some that are very important commercially, migrate into and use estuaries during critical parts of their life cycles. For example, estuaries provide critical breeding, spawning, and nursery habitat for many fish and shellfish, and they also provide important habitat for many birds and mammals; some of these organisms (e.g., bald eagles and several types of whales) are endangered species. The submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV) in estuaries, such as seagrass beds or kelp forests, is important ecologically as a source of food and shelter for many organisms and in stabilizing sediments.
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
Estuarine circulation systems can be extremely complex and variable, depending on freshwater flow, tidal action, wind, depth, and shape (100). Tidal action and seasonal circulation patterns, for example, transport and mix freshwater and saltwater to varying degrees. Freshwater is lighter than seawater, so it tends to flow into estuaries along the surface, while seawater tends to enter below it.

It is useful to distinguish three types of estuaries based on the degree of mixing or stratification of freshwater and saltwater (165): 1) highly stratified (or salt-wedge) estuaries (figure 10), exemplified by the mouth of the Mississippi River; 2) partially mixed estuaries such as the James River estuary in Virginia and the Chesapeake Bay; and 3) well-mixed or homogeneous estuaries, which are rare but do illustrate an extreme in mixing and stratification patterns. The stratification of the water column creates water layers of different densities, with pycnoclines marking the layers. During the course of a year, a single estuary may exhibit a
Primary productivity represents the amount of organic material produced by photosynthesis. The peak in primary productivity typically occurs in estuaries; as a result, estuaries contain abundant food resources and serve as nursery areas for many species (including some saltwater and freshwater organisms that move into estuaries during the breeding portion of their life cycle).


Estuaries and the organisms using them are highly susceptible to adverse impacts. One reason for this is that many organisms use these waters during particularly critical periods of their lives. Second, estuaries often trap particulate matter and nutrients that enter them via rivers, runoff, and waste disposal (effluent discharge or dumping). These waters bear the brunt of marine disposal activities.

Trapping varies among estuaries. In stratified or partially stratified estuaries, material begins to

range of mixing or stratification, which means that organisms inhabiting it must be capable of tolerating large changes in environmental conditions.


and then is carried back toward the upper portion of an estuary by the landward-flowing saltwater. This happens in the upper Chesapeake-Bay, where most of the sediment carried by the Susquehanna River is trapped (139). In shallow or relatively unstratified estuaries, particles can descend quickly to the seafloor, where they are less subject to physical processes that might flush them from the estuary. Particles also descend more quickly when they stick together and increase in size and density, a process called *flocculation* which is enhanced when freshwater mixes with saltwater. Well-mixed estuaries generally trap less particulate matter because they are more subject to physical processes that can flush water from an estuary. In addition, flooding in the watershed of a small estuary may reduce trapping because the high influx of freshwater transports most particles to the sea (349).

In most estuaries, trapping plays an important role in determining the fate of pollutants and the likelihood of impacts. For example, although nutrients can stimulate productivity, trapping of nutrients can lead to nutrient enrichment (eutrophication), which can result in low levels of dissolved oxygen. In addition, many metals, organic chemicals, and pathogens bind to the surfaces of particulate material (e.g., suspended solids) and thus are frequently trapped in estuaries. These pollutants can cause problems when they are ingested by

---

2 The rate at which water in an estuary is replaced is called the flushing rate.
organisms, and the problems can be magnified when they are passed up the food chain to other organisms, including humans. If inputs of toxic pollutants are frequent or large enough, “hot spots” of contaminated sediments such as those in San Francisco Bay can occur (395).

Estuaries and estuarine organisms can recover from certain impacts if the inputs of pollutants are reduced or terminated. For example, some water quality impacts such as low dissolved oxygen levels or eutrophication can be reversed; similarly, areas where populations or communities have been destroyed by physical burial can be recolonized if individuals of the same species are capable of migrating back into the areas. Other impacts, however, may require more time to be reversed or may in some cases be irreversible. For example, contamination of sediments with metals or persistent organic chemicals or major changes in community structure can be impossible to correct.

**Coastal Waters**

Coastal waters include those waterbodies lying over the inner portion of the continental shelf that are less enclosed and more saline than estuaries; these waters generally, but not always, lie within 3 miles of shore (i.e., within the boundary of the territorial sea) (figure 8). The movement of water and material in coastal waters is heavily influenced by tidal action and wind, as well as oceanic forces such as longshore currents, coastal upwelling of bottom waters, eddies, and riptides (99). Rivers may influence these waters to some degree, but this effect is generally less than in estuaries.

Coastal waters also vary greatly in shape, size, and configuration. They include bays (e.g., Mon-
terey Bay), sounds (e. g., Puget Sound), and open waters along the shoreline (e. g., the Southern California Bight). The New York Bight is considered a coastal water, even though it extends beyond the 3-mile boundary, because it is located on the inner edge of the continental shelf and is heavily influenced by river drainage.

Coastal waters tend to be moderately productive, although less so than estuaries because they receive fewer nutrients; some coastal waters such as Monterey Canyon off of central California are extremely productive. Again, submerged aquatic vegetation provides food and shelter for many organisms. As a result, coastal waters also tend to be ecologically and economically important, and often contain important fishing grounds that can be affected by pollutants from waste disposal activities. Many organisms that normally inhabit coastal waters migrate into estuaries and rivers during portions of their lives (e. g., for spawning). In addition, some endangered birds and mammals migrate through and use coastal waters, primarily to obtain food.

In comparison with estuaries, coastal waters are more directly linked to the open ocean and tend to disperse and dilute pollutants somewhat more readily. Trapping is less important than in estuaries, but it can be significant in small inlets and embayments (e. g., in Puget Sound where several toxic “hot spots” have developed). In addition, coastal currents can transport pollutants toward or along the shoreline instead of out to sea. These pollutants can accumulate in organisms and sometimes be transferred to other organisms in the food chain.

Coastal waters can recover from impacts such as eutrophication and hypoxia if the problem inputs are reduced or terminated. In many cases, the more open and dispersive coastal waters (relative to estuarine waters) restrict buildups of excess nutrients or bring in waters with higher oxygen levels. On the other hand, seasonal pycnoclines and thermoclines are typical of many coastal waters, and these features can contribute to increased eutrophication and hypoxia, at least temporarily. Some impacts, such as contamination of sediments with toxic pollutants, can be difficult or impossible to reverse.

The Open Ocean

The open ocean refers to waters overlying the outer portion of the continental shelf, the continental slope, and beyond (figure 8); together, these waters comprise about 92 percent of the Earth’s surface water. Open ocean waters are deeper, more open, and more saline than coastal waters and estuaries. In comparison with estuaries and coastal waters, the open ocean is influenced less by tidal flow and more by permanent ocean currents. Open ocean processes are more capable of dispersing and diluting wastes and associated pollutants.

The open ocean typically is not as biologically productive as are estuaries and coastal waters, primarily because of a general lack of nutrients. An exception to this occurs in localized areas of upwelling, where nutrients and oxygen are transported up to surface waters, for example in the Georges Bank off the New England coast. This increase in nutrients can result in increased productivity of phytoplankton and corresponding increases in local fish populations. As a result, resources in the open ocean can be commercially important even though they are distributed unevenly (i. e., concentrated in certain areas and relatively absent in others). Many open ocean organisms, particularly some fish and mammals, also migrate to and spend portions of their life cycles in estuaries and coastal waters.

The open ocean is generally less vulnerable than other marine waters to many impacts because of its large volume and free exchange of water; open ocean currents generally have a considerable capacity to transport, disperse, and dilute wastes or pollutants. As a result, problems such as hypoxia and eutrophication (which generally occur only when certain conventional pollutants and nutrients are present in high concentrations) and physical burial of organisms are less likely to occur.

However, some metals, organic chemicals, and pathogens are of concern, even though they also are dispersed, because they can: 1) cause impacts at low concentrations, 2) persist in the environment, 3) accumulate in organisms, and 4) increase in con-
concentration in successive levels of marine food chains. Some of these pollutants have been detected in significant concentrations in the water and in the tissues of fish, seabirds, and marine mammals. The significance of such contamination, and whether organisms and populations can recover from associated effects, is not always clear because of insufficient knowledge in several areas. For instance, questions remain about: how open ocean food chains operate, what concentrations of chemicals cause reproductive failure in marine organisms, how tolerant open ocean organisms are to change, and the likelihood of pollutants being transferred to humans. In addition, detection of such impacts is difficult and the impacts may not be observed until long after the polluting incident is over.

**FATE AND DISTRIBUTION OF WASTES AND ASSOCIATED POLLUTANTS**

The ultimate fate of wastes and associated pollutants depends to a large extent on the many different processes that affect dispersion and deposition. Initially, wastes are diluted immediately after entering the water. Simultaneously, other processes begin to transport wastes and pollutants over longer distances and over time to modify their chemical and biological nature. Besides initial dilution, waste particles and pollutants are affected by: 1) physical transport (e.g., transport as part of a water mass, whether they are suspended or dissolved in the water); 2) biological transport (e.g., extraction by plants and animals and subsequent movement with the organisms or their remains or excretions); and 3) sedimentation (e.g., attachment to clays and organic materials as they settle through the water column and eventual incorporation into bottom sediments) (262). Figures 11 and 12 depict the general fate of dumped sludge and discharged effluent.

### Initial Dilution

When a waste enters marine waters, either via discharge or dumping, it mixes with and entrains seawater; in addition, the wastestream begins to broaden and particles begin to disperse. As a result, the waste is diluted substantially, often by a factor of 5,000 or more. This initial dilution takes place within the first few hours after disposal and lasts until waste particles either cease moving vertically in the water column or reach the bottom (280,385).

Vertical movement of waste particles in the water column depends on the waste's bulk density and the presence of pycnoclines (286). Waste particles that are more dense than the surrounding water will sink, while less dense particles will rise. This vertical movement continues until the waste particles reach a water layer or pycnocline of the same density, or the bottom. Particles that accumulate along pycnoclines eventually are transported by other processes or settle to the bottom.

---

1. These biological transport processes are distinct from the biological processes of bioaccumulation and biomagnification discussed later.

2. Bulk density is the weight of a waste per unit of volume.
This description is simplistic because wastes usually are not homogeneous; instead, they usually are composed of a variety of particles with different densities and are not uniformly diluted (132,286). Lighter, floatable materials (e.g., plastics, oil, or grease) generally rise to the surface, while heavier materials remain at lower depths.

### Physical Transport

Physical transport generally results in the dispersion of particles and pollutants away from the disposal site. Two major physical processes are largely responsible for dispersion: currents that move water or other matter from one place to another and mixing of waters with different characteristics.

There are two general categories of currents: permanent and transient (473). Permanent currents are found in coastal and open ocean waters (e.g., the strong Gulf Stream off the east coast and the weak California Current off the west coast). Portions of these currents (called eddy rings or jets) can meander from the main current and modify the net direction of waste material transport (120). The effects of long-term currents are particularly important when evaluating potential dumping sites.

Transient currents occur over smaller distances and time periods than permanent currents. They are found in all marine environments, including estuaries, and are caused by factors such as winds, tides, and waves. Their effect on the transport of waste material tends to be most important when wastes are discharged or dumped near shore. For example, currents close to shore and at or near the surface can move sediment such as dredged material along the shoreline (210,473).

Mixing occurs when two masses of water with different densities (e.g., two currents, or a current and a relatively stable water mass) intermingle along their common boundary (262). This is generally caused by random motion along density gradients, but it can be enhanced by wave action and tides (48). Its effects vary in different marine environments. For example, mixing of bottom and surface waters in the open ocean can take hundreds of years (48, 120). In estuaries and some coastal waters, mixing can occur immediately after disposal and increase dilution of the waste material.

Currents and mixing can transport and disperse wastes over hundreds of kilometers (120,286). The depth at which such transport occurs depends on the presence of pycnoclines, because particles tend to fall until (and if they reach a layer of water denser than the particles themselves. For example, particulate matter from dumping activities in the New York Bight generally descends to the depth of a seasonal pycnocline and then is transported laterally (426,709).

### Biological Transport

Waste particles and pollutants can be extracted from the water column by plants and animals in various ways, including direct ingestion, passing through gills, or other mechanisms. Once extracted, the wastes can be transported from one location in the water column to another by several processes that are associated with individual organisms.

Migration by Organisms.—Many organisms move relatively long distances as part of their normal living pattern and, as a result, they can carry waste particles and pollutants to new locations. The organisms can move either vertically (i.e., up and Pollutants can also be transported out of the water, for example when predatory birds consume contaminated marine organisms.
down in the water column) or horizontally (e.g., from coastal waters into estuaries). For example, some plankton move vertically in the water column on a daily basis and certain fish exhibit similar movements on a seasonal basis. Tuna and certain marine mammals are well-known for their lengthy horizontal migrations.

Many organisms must move from coastal or open ocean waters into estuarine waters to breed and/or to provide proper nursery habitat for their offspring. Some organisms such as salmon migrate from marine waters to rivers to breed; fish that undertake such migrations are known as anadromous fish. These migratory organisms can be exposed to a variety of pollutants while they migrate.

Movement of Eggs and Body Remains.—Many organisms lay eggs that are carried by currents to other areas or that move vertically depending on their relative buoyancy; for example, some eggs sink to deeper waters while others rise to the microlayer. In some cases, pollutants may have been incorporated into the eggs as they were formed, which occurs frequently in the surface microlayer. In addition, once an organism dies, its remains can be moved to new areas by similar means and these remains also can contain pollutants.

Excretion.—When a marine organism ingests waste materials, they often can eventually be excreted. Since many organisms move substantial distances in the course of their daily activities, excretion can occur in locations far from the point of ingestion. If excreted by organisms inhabiting the water column, excretory products often settle to the seafloor; if excreted by benthic organisms, the products generally remain on the seafloor.

**Sediment Deposition**

Sedimentation is the settling of particulate matter through the water column and onto the bottom. The rate of sedimentation depends on particle size and density, water density, mixing, and flocculation. For example, larger particles tend to be heavier and they settle faster than smaller particles. The presence of pycnoclines can alter the rate of movement of particles; particles that reach a layer of similar water density generally cease moving and remain at the pycnocline, at least until some other transport processes move them elsewhere.

Flocculation refers to chemical reactions that result in the aggregation of small particles into larger particles, thus increasing particle size, density, and settling rate. Flocculation often occurs at the boundary of freshwater and saltwater, such as when freshwater effluent containing metals encounters more saline estuarine water.

The method of disposal and the concentration of solids in the waste also can affect both sedimentation and flocculation (385,596). For example, wastes dumped from a ship often have a higher concentration of particles (even after initial dilution) than do pipeline effluents and may exhibit higher rates of flocculation and sedimentation. In addition, the settling rate may be increased because dumped materials have a greater downward momentum.

In well-mixed waters that do not exhibit pycnoclines, particles can settle directly to the bottom. If physical transport processes are sufficiently strong to widely disperse the particles, however, the rate of particle accumulation on the bottom in a given area will be relatively low. In contrast, if wastes are disposed of in shallow or quiescent estuarine and coastal waters, or even in some deeper coastal waters at a high and continuous rate, sedimentation and flocculation can be significant and cause an accumulation of particulate material on the bottom. Such accumulations can alter the particle size or chemical composition of bottom sediments, which can in turn affect benthic organisms and the structure of benthic communities.

Even after it settles to the seafloor, particulate matter can be resuspended back into the water column. For example, bottom currents and storms are capable of stirring up sediments and moving settled particles back into the water (139,385). The physical characteristics of the particles influence
resuspension; for example, silt and clay particles are more cohesive than sand particles and are less likely to be resuspended (596). Resuspension can also be caused by chemical and biological processes. For example, when bacteria in the sediments decompose particulate matter with a high organic content, some byproducts of decomposition can be released into the water column. In some cases, this can include pollutants such as metals. Predicting resuspension rates generally is difficult and site-specific (262).

In another biological process that affects sediment deposition, burrowing animals can move particles and associated pollutants toward or away from the boundary between the sediment and the water column, a process known as bioturbation (385). As a result, pollutants such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) can either be brought into contact with the water column, where non-burrowing organisms can be exposed to them (295,385), or buried more deeply in the sediments.

**POLLUTANTS AND THEIR RELATIONSHIP TO IMPACTS**

The wastes and pollutants disposed of in marine waters can have varying impacts on marine environments and organisms. The relationship between different pollutants (i.e., oxygen-demanding substances, nutrients, suspended solids, pathogens, metals, and organic chemicals) and impacts can be complex, depending on what biological, chemical, and physical processes occur to catalyze the impacts.

**Oxygen-Demanding Substances**

Minimum levels of oxygen are critical for the maintenance of most forms of life. Oxygen levels in the water and sediments can decline, however, as a result of several common processes. First, microorganisms use oxygen to decompose or transform organic material, which is contained in most wastes, into compounds such as carbon dioxide, water, and nitrates. The amount of oxygen used during this process is termed the biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) (132,418). Second, waste material is also broken down by chemical processes (independent of organisms) that use oxygen; the total amount of oxygen that can be used in biological and chemical processes is termed chemical oxygen demand (498). Oxygen levels also can decline as a consequence of nutrient enrichment, which is discussed below.

When the amount of dissolved oxygen in water falls below a critical level, often around 2 parts per million, the water is said to be hypoxic. Water that is completely depleted of dissolved oxygen is called anoxic. Hypoxic and anoxic conditions can cause massive fish kills; if oxygen levels are reduced only slightly (but not enough for conditions to be considered hypoxic), organisms can still be stressed and chemical reactions in the water column can be modified. These problems are more common in estuaries and coastal waters than in the open ocean, where waters are generally more dispersed and mixed.

**Nutrients**

Nutrients are essential for the proper growth and reproduction of individual organisms and, consequently, for the general productivity of marine environments. Eutrophication refers to an increase in nutrient levels in a body of water. This can occur naturally (e.g., in the open ocean through the upwelling of nutrients from deep waters) or as a result of human activities (e.g., runoff from fertilized farmlands or discharges from sewage outfalls). In either case, the addition of nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphorus can lead to increases in the productivity of marine organisms, particularly some algae. Up to a certain limit, such increases in productivity can be beneficial, for example, by leading to corresponding increases in fish populations in areas where nutrients are relatively lacking. However, if nutrient levels are too high, several adverse impacts can occur:

- increased turbidity or cloudiness of the water, which can keep light from reaching submerged vegetation;
- changes in the distribution, abundance, and diversity of species (e.g., the replacement of typically abundant species with less common species);
. subsequent changes in food chain relationships (165); and
- depletion of oxygen levels when large numbers of algae die and are decomposed by microorganisms; oxygen depletion in turn can cause other changes including fish kills.

Increased nutrient levels are more common in estuaries and coastal waters than in the open ocean. Large quantities of nutrients enter estuaries and coastal waters from rivers, runoff, and disposal, as well as from coastal upwelling. In addition, processes that dilute and disperse nutrients are weaker in these waters.

**Suspended Solids**

Marine plants generally grow best in relatively clear water where sunlight, which is critical for photosynthesis, can penetrate to and be used by the plants. Since the introduction of suspended solids into shallow waters can increase turbidity and block out sunlight, it can reduce the rate of photosynthesis significantly and harm submerged vegetation. In addition, solid particles can settle out of the water column and accumulate on the bottom, sometimes changing the nature of the sediments and associated benthic community. In addition to solids suspended in the water column, the solid material in a waste can bury and kill benthic organisms (e.g., if large amounts of dredged material are disposed of in a small area).

**Pathogens**

Many pathogens—including viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites—that can cause human disease are found in marine environments. The viability of pathogens depends primarily on their survival after they enter a particular marine environment. While many pathogens die quickly after exposure to various environmental factors (e.g., light), some can persist, especially if adsorbed onto particulate matter that provides protection from the surrounding environment (183,205). In addition, some pathogens can be ingested by and survive in marine organisms without harming the organisms, but they can cause serious human health effects if a person consumes an organism that has ingested but not yet excreted the pathogens. For example, shellfish “filter” water to obtain food and, in the process, can ingest pathogens; the concentration of pathogens in the gut of a shellfish can be quite high. Detecting pathogens that survive in marine waters is often difficult, as is predicting the impacts they can cause.

**Organic Chemicals and Metals**

Whether toxic pollutants such as metals and organic chemicals cause adverse effects depends on the interaction of many chemical and biological factors. Only some toxic pollutants are bioavailable to organisms, that is, present in a form to which organisms can actually be exposed. Many metals, for example, are attached to particulate material and buried deep in sediments where they are exposed to few organisms. If a pollutant is bioavailable, the effects of exposure will vary depending on its concentration and the length of exposure (270), as well as the stage in the organism’s life cycle (figure 13).

Not all metals and organic chemicals cause adverse effects, even if an organism is exposed to and takes up a pollutant. In fact, organisms require small amounts of some metals that occur naturally in marine waters for important physiological functions. Other pollutants may be present in forms
Persistent, lipid-soluble pollutants such as DDT can be taken up from the water column or sediments by many organisms. This diagram depicts the many pathways by which a pollutant such as DDT can be transferred up the food chain and eventually accumulate in high concentrations in the tissues of fish-eating vertebrates.

**Figure 14.**—The Transfer of DDT Through a Portion of a Food Web in the Long Island Estuary

Persistent, lipid-soluble pollutants such as DDT can be taken up from the water column or sediments by many organisms. This diagram depicts the many pathways by which a pollutant such as DDT can be transferred up the food chain and eventually accumulate in high concentrations in the tissues of fish-eating vertebrates.


are not toxic to organisms; they may stay in the gut for varying periods and then be excreted without causing harm (262,385).

Two important processes determine the ability of many metals and organic chemicals to cause adverse impacts on marine organisms or humans: bioaccumulation and biomagnification. **Bioaccumulation** is the process whereby a substance enters an aquatic organism, either from the water or from consumed food, and is stored within the organism’s tissues. **Biomagnification** refers to increases in the concentrations of bioaccumulated substances in the tissues of consumers and predators occupying successive levels of a food chain (58,260). The likelihood of adverse impacts on organisms such as invertebrates, fish, or humans is increased if toxic pollutants biomagnify in a food chain (figure 14). The effects might show immediately after exposure or take long periods to appear, and correlating them with degree and duration of exposure is difficult.

Bioaccumulation can occur at any level of the food chain. For example, phytoplankton can be contaminated by pollutants present in the water column, while benthic zooplankton and shellfish...
Photo credit: US. Fish and Wildlife Service

Healthy striped bass have long supported a valuable commercial and recreational fishery along the Atlantic Coast. The fishery has declined significantly during the last 15 years, and many individual fish are severely contaminated with PCBs.

that filter bottom sediments in search of food can ingest pollutants that are adsorbed onto sediment particles. These organisms can then contaminate organisms in higher trophic levels that ingest them as food (41 O). However, bioaccumulation does not always cause adverse impacts. Some organisms can internally degrade or regulate the levels of certain toxic pollutants in their systems.

It is also possible for some toxic pollutants to cause problems even if they do not bioaccumulate. For example, some pollutants can be concentrated in the gut of an organism (but never bioaccumulate in the organism’s tissues); these pollutants, however, can often cause adverse effects on predatory organisms higher in the food chain. In addi-
tion, some behavioral effects can occur even if a pollutant is not ingested. For example, herring have avoided waters they typically use for spawning because of pulp mill effluents discharged into a river (398).

Organic Chemicals

Organic chemicals, whether dissolved in the water column or adsorbed onto sediment particles, can be taken up by an organism in several ways, such as through filtering water or sediment or ingesting other organisms. Whether bioaccumulation occurs depends primarily on a chemical’s ratio of lipid volubility to water volubility (165,195,262, 385). Some organic chemicals are more soluble in
Wastes in Marine Environments

Water and can pass through an organism (or be metabolized by the organism), while others are more soluble in lipids and will bioaccumulate in fatty tissues. For example, PCBs are soluble in lipids and are only slowly metabolized by marine animals, so they tend to bioaccumulate in an animal’s fatty tissues (139). Birds (such as bald eagles and pelicans) and mammals (such as seals and sea lions) that occupy higher levels of marine food chains usually have large amounts of fatty tissues and are particularly likely to bioaccumulate organic chemicals.

Bioaccumulated organic chemicals can affect organisms at all levels of food chains. Halogenated organic chemicals (including pesticides such as DDT) are the most likely organic chemicals to be biomagnified because they are persistent and highly soluble in fatty tissues. PCBs cause decreases in plantlife and changes in community structure, and they have been implicated in fish mortality and physiological abnormalities (132, 133, 139).

Some organisms have the ability to degrade some organic chemicals into other forms. For example, microorganisms can degrade some highly persistent and toxic chlorinated compounds under certain conditions (40, 41, 450). Some invertebrates, fishes, and mammals can partially degrade polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and PCB, but the byproducts can sometimes be more toxic than the parent compound. The bioavailability and toxicity of organic chemicals can also be modified prior to ingestion by processes such as bioturbation or degradation by light (385, 710).

Metals

The ability of a metal to affect marine organisms depends primarily on its form (e.g., dissolved or particulate, bound to another substance or free), and this is greatly affected by site-specific conditions. In their particulate form, most metals tend to adsorb onto other particles that eventually settle from the water column and are deposited as sediment (139, 165). Once deposited in typical oxygen-poor sediments, the chemical form of these metals is generally stable.

Metals present in the water column as dissolved ions often bind with other molecules to form soluble complexes that can affect bioavailability and toxicity to organisms (385). For example, the toxicities of lead and zinc are reduced when they are in complexes, while the bioavailability and toxicity of methyl mercury is greatly enhanced (75, 247).

Marine organisms can ingest metals that are dissolved in the water or they can ingest particulate matter onto which metals are adsorbed (46, 232, 260). Once ingested, some metals can pass through the gut and be excreted, while others cross the gut membrane and bioaccumulate in organismal tissue (410). Of the four metals of primary concern to humans (ch. 6), cadmium and mercury tend to bioaccumulate in marine organisms, while neither arsenic nor lead have been shown to bioaccumulate significantly in seafood (lead, however, can be present in high concentrations in the guts of some shellfish). Mercury in its methylated form, however, is the only metal known to biomagnify in successive levels of aquatic food chains.

Some organisms can regulate the internal availability or level of certain metals (133, 139). In some fish, for example, metals that are toxic as free-floating ions (e.g., cadmium, copper, mercury, and zinc) can be bound to the protein metallothionein and the bound metals are generally not toxic (250, 410). Proteins with similar capabilities occur in crustaceans and mollusks (74). Arsenic is largely converted to nontoxic forms by marine organisms. Some metals also may be deposited in skeletal material and intracellular spaces, or removed from an organism via excretion, diffusion, molting, or egg production.
CAN MARINE ENVIRONMENTS ASSIMILATE WASTES OR RECOVER FROM IMPACTS?

Two concepts are often used in discussions about the role of marine environments in waste disposal: assimilative capacity and recovery. Assimilative capacity has been defined as the amount of material that could be contained within a body of water without producing an unacceptable biological effect (188). Recovery refers to the degree to which a condition that existed prior to an impact is restored. In essence, the assimilative capacity concept asks how much waste can be added to a marine environment before an impact occurs, while the recovery concept asks what happens after inputs of wastes and pollutants cease.

Both concepts have an intuitive appeal, and even some utility as concepts that can illuminate general discussions, but applying them in actual practice is difficult. This difficulty stems primarily from the inability to develop quantitative criteria for assessing questions such as:

- What is an impact and what is an unacceptable level of such an impact?
- At what ecological level should impacts be measured (e.g., on cellular systems, organisms, populations, general habitat qualities)?
- How many impacts must be reversed (and to what degree) before an area is considered to have recovered?
- Over what time scales and sizes of areas should assimilative capacity or recovery be measured (20, 165, 188)?

Both assimilative capacity and recovery depend on many site-specific factors including: the physical and chemical characteristics of the receiving waters (e.g., strength of currents and mixing, sedimentation, adsorption of pollutants); the resiliency of organisms that inhabit the area (e.g., their ability to survive, grow, and reproduce); and the ability of other organisms to migrate into the area. These questions might be answered at a specific site if acceptable quantitative criteria could be developed, but both assimilative capacity and recovery would still vary from site to site and would have to be determined on a case-by-case basis.\(^1\)

Clearly, some wastes can be disposed of under certain conditions without causing severe adverse impacts. Furthermore, some marine environments are not as likely as others to suffer certain impacts and therefore could be considered to have a greater assimilative capacity with respect to those impacts. For example, the open ocean is less likely to exhibit hypoxia and eutrophication and therefore might be able to assimilate oxygen-demanding substances and nutrients to a greater extent than can estuaries and coastal waters.

Marine environments also can recover from some impacts, particularly when inputs of oxygen-demanding substances, suspended solids, and nutrients are reduced. For example, dissolved oxygen levels have increased markedly and anoxic conditions have declined following improvements in municipal sewage treatment plants in the upper Delaware Bay estuary and in Newark Bay (346, 683). In addition, some estuaries and coastal waters are subject to large natural fluctuations in physical conditions (e.g., tides, waves, storms). Organisms in these environments show large natural population fluctuations, as well as rapid growth and migration rates. These organisms may be able to survive catastrophic events or repopulate an area quickly, often in as little as one year (165).

In contrast, marine waters cannot readily assimilate many organic chemicals or recover from their impacts, primarily because of the persistence of many of these pollutants. For example, "hot spots" of DDT still exist in some coastal sediments and some fish species contaminated with DDT are still being caught (e.g., the white croaker off the southern California coast), even though most uses of DDT were prohibited in the United States in 1972. For these persistent organic chemicals, the length of time under consideration greatly influences any assessment of assimilative capacity and recovery potential, and in some cases, even if all pollutant inputs were halted, the environment still

---

\(^1\)Another concept, accommodative capacity, has been proposed as a replacement for assimilative capacity (284). Accommodative capacity has a slightly different focus in that it emphasizes how an environment "adjusts" to overall inputs of pollutants. However, it suffers from similar shortcomings, for example, its dependence on defining the term "adjustment, \(^1\)
may not ever return to its unpolluted state. As an illustration, consider the sediments in portions of Buzzards Bay, Massachusetts, which are contaminated with highly persistent PCBs. As the contaminated sediments are covered (naturally or artificially) with cleaner sediment, the potential for organisms to be exposed to the PCBs could decrease, and this could be considered a reversal of contamination. However, subsequent dredging of the harbor or the effects of severe storms could resuspend the sediment and PCBs and re-expose organisms to these pollutants.

Moreover, most situations are complicated because multiple impacts and pollutants are typically involved. Assimilative capacity or recovery potential might be assessed for one impact, but they are much more difficult to determine for interrelated impacts. For example, it may be possible to determine how much waste can be disposed of before oxygen is depleted (i.e., assimilative capacity) or how quickly adequate oxygen levels will return following disposal (i.e., recovery rate). However, oxygen declines can cause other impacts such as fish kills and it can be difficult to ascertain when populations would recover to ‘‘acceptable’’ levels. When multiple pollutants are involved it can be difficult to determine the effect of removing or reducing one pollutant from the total waste stream.

1 In some situations, however, impacts from organic chemicals clearly have lessened over time. For example, the population of brown pelicans in southern California, which declined because DDT caused egg-shell thinning and subsequent reproductive failure, has steadily increased since the discharge of DDT was sharply curtailed (54).

10 Tests to assess the toxicity of ‘‘whole’’ effluents (i.e., the cumulative toxicity of all pollutants in an effluent) are being developed by EPA.
Chapter 5
Impacts of Waste Disposal on Marine Resources
CONTENTS

Overview ............................... 99
Establishing Links Between Pollutants and Impacts ............................................... 99
Impacts on Water and Sediment Quality ................................................................. 100
   Enrichment With Organic Matter and Nutrients ..................................................... 100
   Elevated Concentrations of Other Contaminants in the Water Column .................... 100
Impacts on Sediments ................................................................................................. 103
Impacts on Organisms ............................................................................................... 104
   Birds and Mammals ................................................................................................. 104
Acute Lethal Effects on Finfish and Shellfish ............................................................. 106
High Levels of Pollutants in Finfish and Shellfish ..................................................... 108
Other Effects on Finfish and Shellfish ........................................................................ 110
Submerged Aquatic Vegetation ................................................................................... 112
Benthic Organisms ..................................................................................................... 113
Geographical Variations in Impacts ......................................................................... 113
   Northern Pacific Coast .............................................................................................. 113
   California and Hawaii ............................................................................................... 114
   Gulf of Mexico ........................................................................................................ 116
   Southern Atlantic Coast .......................................................................................... 118
   Northern Atlantic Coast ......................................................................................... 119

Table

Table No. Page
7. Classification of Shellfish Growing Waters ......................................................... 109

Figures

Figure No. Page
15. Extent of Oxygen Depletion in Bottom Waters of the Louisiana Shelf July 1985 .......................................................... 101
16. Volume of Water in Chesapeake Bay With Levels of Dissolved Oxygen Lower Than 0.7 Milligrams Per Liter, 1950-80 ..................................................... 101
17. Concentration of Nickel and Hydrocarbons in Narragansett Bay, Rhode Island, in Relation to Distance From Discharge Points ........................................... 102
18. Concentration of Cadmium in Sediments Along the Northeast Atlantic Coast During 1984 ........................................................................................................ 103
19. Canvassback Duck Population on the Chesapeake Bay, 1954-85 ............................. 105
20. Concentrations of Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) in the Livers of Fish From Selected Sites ........................................................................................................ 111
21. The Five Coastal Regions of the United States Used in This Report ..................... 114
22. Relationship Between Size of Kelp Beds and Quantity of Solids From Municipal Discharges at a Southern California Site ......................................................... 116
23. Environmental Stress in the Pascagoula Area of the Mississippi Sound ................. 117
Chapter 5

Impacts of Waste Disposal on Marine Resources

OVERVIEW

Marine resources are affected by a wide range of natural and human perturbations, including pollutants from waste disposal. Waste disposal occurs directly in marine waters, but also indirectly as wastes are carried to the sea by rivers. It can be difficult, however, to establish a clear understanding of the precise connections between pollutants from these activities and impacts on marine resources. Nevertheless, sufficient evidence is available to conclude that pollutants from disposal activities have resulted in a wide variety of impacts on water quality, sediment quality, and marine organisms.

Most of the impacts that are attributable to pollutants from waste disposal have been observed in estuaries and coastal waters, often the most productive marine waters. The degree and distribution of these impacts vary widely among different waterbodies and organisms, but no region of the country is immune to serious adverse impacts from pollutants. Even small quantities of certain pollutants can result in chronic, persistent, and serious effects on organisms.

Where trends in impacts over the past 10 to 15 years are discernible, they have been mixed. They have varied among specific pollutants, species, and locations. Some improvements have been observed, while in other cases deterioration is evident. Sometimes no clear trend appears.

ESTABLISHING LINKS BETWEEN POLLUTANTS AND IMPACTS

Determining the causes of impacts on marine resources can be difficult. Changes can result not only from waste disposal activities and runoff, but also from natural perturbations, fishing, or other human-induced changes such as habitat destruction or freshwater diversions. Even when pollutants are correlated with impacts, the ultimate source of the pollutants may be unclear—they may emanate from any combination of surface runoff, various industrial discharges, municipal discharges, dumping activities, and atmospheric deposition, and they may come from sources in or adjacent to marine waters or from far upstream.

Another complicating factor is that impacts caused by pollutants may not be observed for years or decades after the pollutants are released, or they may occur far from the release area. For example, when a pollutant is extremely persistent in the environment or when water flow and circulation are great, pollutants can be transported great distances. In addition, some impacts on organisms may not occur until the affected organism is far from the original point of contamination.

Consequently, establishing the causes of past and present impacts and predicting future long-term impacts on marine communities is a formidable task. These difficulties are frequently aggravated by a lack of information. The picture that emerges from an analysis of the available information looks like a jigsaw puzzle with many pieces missing.

Thus, although waste disposal activities may be fully or partly responsible for many marine impacts, it is often difficult to assess their precise involvement. Despite these problems of documentation, a strong overall case can be established that waste disposal activities are contributing significantly to substantial declines in the quality of marine waters and harming marine organisms, and in some cases having effects on humans.
IMPACTS ON WATER AND SEDIMENT QUALITY

Enrichment With Organic Matter and Nutrients

Perhaps the most conspicuous and widespread impact that pollutants have on marine environment is eutrophication, a process associated with the introduction of nutrients. Eutrophication is evident in every region of the country. The impacts of eutrophication range from stress on individual organisms (which in turn may increase the incidence of disease or abnormalities) to major ecological changes. Nutrient enrichment sometimes contributes to massive blooms of tiny photosynthetic organisms, sometimes dubbed ‘green tides,’ ‘brown tides,’ or ‘red tides. These organisms can harm—and even kill—other marine organisms and humans (343,536,545). Under extreme conditions, eutrophic conditions can lead to a severe depletion of dissolved oxygen called hypoxia. The most dramatic consequences of extreme hypoxia are mass kills of organisms.

Eutrophication and hypoxia often have been linked to human activities, including waste disposal. Waste disposal activities (particularly municipal discharges) contribute large quantities of nutrients to marine environments, and hypoxia can be caused or aggravated by the introduction of oxygen-demanding pollutants (e.g., organic matter) from these same sources. Other pollutant sources, such as runoff, also contribute to eutrophic and hypoxic conditions, and natural factors such as seasonal stratification of the water column can also cause hypoxia.

Eutrophication and hypoxia are serious and regularly recurring problems in many major waterbodies (695). Hypoxic areas vary widely in magnitude, from a fraction of a square mile to thousands of square miles. Examples of large and regularly occurring hypoxic waters are an area (up to 8,000 square kilometers (km²)) off the Louisiana coast (Rabalais (465) and a portion (up to 3,000 km²) of the Chesapeake Bay (419).

Trends in the occurrence of hypoxia around the country are mixed. In some areas, the problems have been alleviated because discharges of organic matter and nutrients have been reduced (395,463, 554,703). In other instances, the problems have grown in severity, either because quantities of nutrient and organic matter have increased or because other changes have reduced the natural system's capacity to accommodate the discharges without major ecological impacts (31 5,419,486).

Hypoxia is least extensive along the Pacific coast; conversely, the Atlantic coast and particularly the Gulf of Mexico are greatly affected by hypoxia. Extensive hypoxia has been found along the southern coast of Louisiana (figure 15), and it is common in the Chesapeake Bay (figure 16) and the New York Bight. Its causes are multiple and include natural factors as well as pollutant inputs from raw sewage, sewage sludge, and other waste materials.

Elevated Concentrations of Other Pollutants in the Water Column

In addition to organic matter and nutrients, many other pollutants are discharged into marine waters in large quantities. Among these are pathogens, metals, and organic chemicals such as chlorinated and aromatic hydrocarbons. Contamination can vary from levels scarcely above the threshold of detectability to extremely high levels. Contamination tends to be greatest in the vicinity of estuaries flanked by heavy urban or industrial development, or near estuaries that receive pollutants from developed areas upstream. Contamination also tends to be most serious near municipal and industrial outfalls, and in the vicinity of major dumpsites for sewage sludge or other contaminated materials (figure 17).

Even at a given location and time, contamination may vary considerably according to its vertical position in the water column. Some pollutants concentrate at the very surface of the water-column.
Figure 15.—Extent of Oxygen Depletion in Bottom Waters of the Louisiana Shelf, July 1985

Shaded area depicts bottom waters with dissolved oxygen concentrations less than 2 milligrams per liter (a condition known as hypoxia). Most animal life cannot survive for long in water with such low oxygen concentrations.


Figure 16.—Volume of Water in Chesapeake Bay With Levels of Dissolved Oxygen Lower Than 0.7 Milligrams Per Liter, 1950-80

NOTE: Years lacking bars, no data are available.

As in many other locations in the United States, concentrations of pollutants in Narragansett Bay tend to be greatest near discharge points, especially where many such discharges are concentrated in a highly industrialized or urbanized area. Note that one microgram equals one-millionth of a gram.

**SOURCE:** Save The Bay, Inc., *Down the Drain: Toxic Pollution and the Status of Premierships in Rhode Island* (Providence, RI: September 1986).

---

The presence of pollutants in the water column is important in three respects. First, marine organisms may be affected by the direct exposure to contaminated water. In Puget Sound, for example, some samples of contaminated bottom water were found to cause sublethal toxic effects in some organisms (89). Evidence from the Chowan River in North Carolina suggests that herring have detected and avoided pulp mill effluent in the river, to the detriment of some of the river’s fishermen (398). These direct impacts can also give rise to additional ecological repercussions.

Second, the pollutants may be transported to other locations and transferred to sediments or to the atmosphere, thereby increasing the chances of exposure to living organisms and further ecological impacts. Third, in addition to impacts on marine organisms, elevated levels of these pollutants may reach a point where human health is directly threatened.

**Human Pathogens**

Pathogens often are discharged from combined sewage overflows, municipal treatment plants, runoff, raw-sewage outfalls, and boats in marinas and elsewhere. As a result, high levels of fecal coliform bacteria in the water frequently create the need for government authorities around the country to restrict shellfish harvesting. High coliform levels also result in temporary or permanent beach closures, particularly along the north Atlantic coast (486). Beach contamination appears to be less common in other regions of the country, but complete information on the nationwide extent of beach closures is not readily available and trends are not clearly discernible.

In some areas—such as parts of Chesapeake Bay (205,335)—fecal coliform contamination is not as serious as it was 10 or 15 years ago. The improvements are usually the result of greater levels of sewage treatment. Conversely, such contamination has not declined and has actually worsened in other areas, particularly those experiencing high population growth and rapid development (221). In coastal Louisiana, for example, municipal sewage treatment capacity has failed to keep pace with growth and is unable to adequately treat wastes (315). Growing numbers of residences with septic systems and increasing numbers of small boats also pose problems in many coastal areas. These water quality threats are expected to increase in some areas over the next decade.
Metals and Organic Chemicals

The contamination of waters with metals and organic chemicals also is common. Concentrations of some metals and organic chemicals (e.g., DDT) in the water column have declined in many areas over the past 15 to 20 years. This is often because emissions of these pollutants have been reduced substantially from specific point sources, usually because of curtailed production of the wastes or because of greater waste treatment by industrial and municipal entities. For example, discharges of most key metals and organic chemicals into New York Harbor declined during the 1970s and early 1980s (11).

But there also are areas where improvements have not occurred and where concentrations of specific pollutants have increased (220,394). This has been especially true where rapid residential, agricultural, and industrial growth has resulted in greater emissions from both point and nonpoint sources. For example, monitoring data from the lower St. Johns River, Florida, indicate that concentrations of waterborne toxic metals increased from 1970 through 1980 (164).

Impacts on Sediments

Sediments may be physically, chemically, or biologically altered by waste disposal activities and runoff. Physical alterations can occur when solids from pipeline discharges or dumping accumulate on the bottom. If this material differs substantially from the original sediment, then the substrate available to bottom-dwelling organisms can change significantly. In southern California, for example, the accumulation of solids discharged by ocean outfalls, in combination with other environmental changes associated with the discharges, has affected the distribution and abundance of benthic organisms over an area of approximately 170 km² (52,354).

Contamination of sediments with metals, organic chemicals (e.g., PCBs, other chlorinated hydrocarbons, and polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons), and pathogens poses a particular problem. Contaminated sediments have been found around the country, and they are generally adjacent to industrial and urban areas where large volumes of contaminated material such as industrial wastes or municipal effluent have been discharged or dumped, or in estuaries that receive substantial pollutant loads from upstream. Sediment contamination is most prevalent and severe in the estuaries and coastal areas of the Northeastern United States (figures 17 and 18). The character of sediment contamination varies widely, as do its origins and consequences.

In some cases, the consequences of such contamination are relatively apparent and serious, especially where there are extremely high concentrations of particularly toxic pollutants. Among such areas are portions of Puget Sound like Commencement Bay and Everett Harbor, the Southern California Bight, and several areas along the northern Atlantic coast like Buzzards Bay. Some of these areas have been classified as Superfund sites. Many other areas exhibit various mixes and concentra-

Figure 18.—Concentration of Cadmium in Sediments Along the Northeast Atlantic Coast During 1984

tions of pollutants with specific subsequent effects on the biota.

The restrictions imposed on point sources over the past 15 to 20 years have reduced discharges of some metals, organic chemicals, and human pathogens, and helped limit sediment contamination. Once sediments are contaminated, however, the duration and consequences of contamination vary. For example, in time, the pollutants may break down into less harmful byproducts. Or subsequent sediment deposition may bury the pollutants and prevent further exposure to living organisms (unless the sediments are subsequently disturbed).

**IMPACTS ON**

Pollutants from waste disposal activities and other sources have affected marine organisms and ecosystems in many different ways. The impacts vary widely, from acute and lethal to minor, from extremely adverse to relatively beneficial. The geographic scale also varies, ranging from very small areas to many thousands of square miles (417).

Some organisms are especially vulnerable to waste disposal activities and pollutants. Among these are bottom-dwelling (benthic) organisms and those which spend all or part of their lives in coastal waters or estuaries. Organisms that inhabit polluted waters during sensitive life-stages are particularly susceptible to environmental perturbations.

Striped bass, for example, spend their early life-stages in or near estuaries and during that time are very sensitive to substances (e.g., copper, cadmium, and aluminum) contained in waste discharges. High mortality rates during these stages appear to be related to the presence of pollutants and other factors. The precipitous declines in striped bass stocks in recent years are thought to result in part from low survival rates during the first 60 days of life (218, 219, 625).

**Birds and Mammals**

Birds and mammals are affected by pollutants in several ways. For instance, they can be affected indirectly when pollutants alter their habitat or food supplies, as is the case with canvasesucks ducks in the Chesapeake Bay. Pollutants caused drastic declines in the Bay’s seagrasses, including the ducks’ preferred food—wild celery. This has contributed to a precipitous decline in the Bay’s population of canvasesucks ducks (624) (figure 19).

The strongest evidence linking pollutants to impacts on birds and mammals occur when organisms ingest a pollutant or a metabolize of a pollutant. The most important pollutants are those—e.g., chlorinated hydrocarbons—that persist and tend to increase in concentration as they are transferred through the food web (i.e., “biomagnify”) (ch. 4). Marine birds and mammals often feed at relatively high trophic levels and thus are particularly susceptible to biomagnification.

Some evidence exists to directly link pollutants discharged from point sources to elevated concentrations of pollutants (or body burdens) and adverse effects in birds and mammals (65, 421, 698). Although the full consequences of such contamination in birds and mammals are not always known, impacts such as reproductive impairments have been observed. A well-known example involved discharges of DDT into southern California waters, where elevated concentrations of organochlorine chemicals and subsequent population declines in brown pelicans and several other bird species were linked to DDT-contaminated fish (92, 422, 423, 485).

Despite some progress, serious problems from contaminated sediments will continue to persist. Although releases of some pollutants have been curtailed or reduced in some areas, in other instances a growing variety and quantity of pollutants continue to be released to the water column and make their way to the sediments. The sediments often act as a repository for such pollutants, holding them for days, years, decades, or even centuries. As long as the pollutants persist in a toxic form, contaminated sediments can continue to affect organisms.

**ORGANISMS**

The body-burden of a contaminant is its concentration in an organism’s body.
Reproductive problems in sea lions breeding in southern California have been associated with DDT, large quantities of which were dumped offshore or discharged from marine pipelines prior to the early 1970s. Pictured here is a female sea lion attempting to carry her prematurely delivered pup.
Reproductive problems in sea lions also have been associated with organochlorine pollutants (126, 187). Other less dramatic, yet nevertheless significant, examples exist elsewhere in the country. For example, three waterbird species nesting in Galveston Bay, Texas, were found to contain elevated levels of several metals (including selenium), in some cases at levels associated with impaired reproduction (268).

Reduced emissions of some pollutants have led to noticeable improvements. In particular, the banning of DDT production and disposal helped reverse the decline in brown pelicans (5). Nevertheless, impacts related to pollutants continue to be documented in birds and mammals (162).

**Acute Lethal Effects on Fin fish and Shellfish**

Given large enough quantities, some pollutants or combinations of pollutants will quickly kill finfish and shellfish. The mechanisms by which this occurs can vary from the depletion of oxygen (associated with discharges of nutrients and organic mat-
Fish kills are frequent and severe in the Gulf of Mexico and along the southern Atlantic Coast. They result from low oxygen levels (hypoxia) that are caused by various factors, including waste disposal and natural processes.

One type of uniquely compelling evidence which does arise in the field occurs when large numbers of organisms are killed at once by pollutants. The occurrence of mass mortalities varies around the country. They are least frequent along the Pacific coast, but are more common and serious in the Northeast. However, the greatest problems exist in the Gulf of Mexico and along the southern Atlantic coast, where hypoxic conditions cause frequent fish kills (315,359,554).

The magnitude of the kills varies widely. The largest incidents can involve millions of fish. The species reported as killed are often commercially, valued species. For example, 109 fish kills were reported in the State of Maryland in 1985; 97 percent of the estimated 4.6 million fish killed were menhaden, a very abundant and important commercial species. The majority of the kills investigated in Maryland—some involving hundreds of thousands of fish—occurred in estuarine waters in the Chesapeake Bay (452).

While the causes of fish kills are not always clear, understood, evidence suggests that waste disposal activities in many instances are often significant contributors. Most kills occur in estuaries and are caused by low levels of dissolved oxygen (hypoxia). Municipal sewage treatment plants appear to be important contributors to the hypoxic conditions that cause fish kills because the discharge nutrients or oxygen-demanding materials that lead to...
Oxygen depletion. Industrial dischargers too are important, although to a lesser extent. In the Chesapeake Bay, discharges contribute large quantities of nutrients but the precise magnitude of their contribution to the fish kills is unknown (452). The extent and severity of fish kills have been reduced in many areas over the last 10 to 15 years, but information is not available to accurately judge the reduction (N. Harllee, U.S. EPA, pers. comm., March 1986).

**High Levels of Pollutants in Fin fish and Shellfish**

**Shellfish Contamination**

The concentrations of coliform bacteria and natural marine biotoxins in shellfish have been periodically surveyed for many years. This information is now supplemented with information from “biomonitoring” surveys, which measure the concentrations of toxic chemicals (e.g., metals and organic chemicals) in shellfish.

Since 1966, the National Shellfish Register (ch. 7) has provided an important indicator of the extent to which shellfish in U.S. waters are contaminated with coliform bacteria. In 1985, the register showed that 58 percent of the “productive” shellfish areas in the United States were approved for harvest, while the rest were subject to some level of restriction (603) (table 7). Commercial shellfish harvests from roughly one-third (27 to 42 percent) of the productive areas are limited because of actual or potential contamination. Over 80 percent of the harvest-limited productive shellfish areas in the Nation are in the Gulf of Mexico and along the southern Atlantic coast (603).

Although the register does not show a clear, overall national trend in shellfish contamination, it does, in combination with other evidence, indicate that bacterial contamination is a significant problem nationwide. Trends vary from one body of water to the next. In some areas, such as in the vicinity of Savannah, Georgia (9) or San Francisco Bay (69), shellfish contamination by fecal coliform has fallen to the point where shellfishing areas have been reopened for the first time in decades.

However, in other regions—particularly in rapidly developing areas such as the coastal portions of the Gulf of Mexico and southern Atlantic States—the problem is growing (221, 356, 394). The contributing causes include both point sources (primarily municipal sewage treatment plants and combined sewage overflows, and growing numbers of recreational boats) and nonpoint sources (including runoff and groundwater seepage from increasingly developed and often unsewered coastal areas).

Shellfish contamination with metals and organic chemicals also has been surveyed by State and Federal authorities (71, 512, 597, 621). These efforts have varied widely among programs and from year to year. In some areas—usually in marine waters adjacent to or downstream from urban, industrial,
### Table 7.—Classification of Shellfish Growing Waters (thousands of acres)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region and State</th>
<th>Approved for harvest</th>
<th>Harvest limited areas</th>
<th>Percent of total productive waters approved</th>
<th>Nonshellfish/nonproductive</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prohibited</td>
<td>Conditionally approved</td>
<td>Restricted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Northern Atlantic:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maine</td>
<td>936</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Hampshire</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massachusetts</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhode Island</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecticut</td>
<td>309</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>828</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Jersey</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennsylvania</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maryland</td>
<td>1,369</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virginia</td>
<td>1,295</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>5,537</td>
<td>799</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Southern Atlantic:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Carolina</td>
<td>1,755</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Carolina</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>2,056</td>
<td>622</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gulf of Mexico:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>306</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alabama</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louisiana</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>3,462</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texas</td>
<td>1,310</td>
<td>358</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,773</td>
<td>848</td>
<td>4,134</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>West coast:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>263</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oregon</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washington</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>163</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>U.S. total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>9,529</td>
<td>2,595</td>
<td>4,326</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DEFINITIONS**

**Productive:** Any areas which are not classified “nonshellfish/nonproductive.” At one time this category only contained areas which did or could produce shellfish (either naturally or aquaculturally) in quantities sufficient to justify commercial harvesting. As a result of changes in the classification system, however, there is an effort underway nationwide to classify all coastal waters within subcategories of this category, consequently, it includes areas which formerly were termed “nonshellfish/nonproductive.”

**Approved for harvest:** Area surveyed and found free of hazardous concentrations of pathogenic organisms and/or pollution. Molluscan shellfish may be commercially harvested at any time.

**Harvest limited:**

a) **Conditionally approved:** Area surveyed and shellfish are found to meet “approved” area requirements for only part of the year. Molluscan shellfish may be harvested only during periods when pollutant levels are deemed acceptable. The area may be closed for the balance of the year because of high pollutant levels or because the shellfish control authorities have failed to establish that “approved” area standards are being met during that period; such failure may result from various factors, including cutbacks in funding of classification activities.

b) **Restricted:** Area surveyed and shellfish are found to be contaminated. Shellfish may be harvested but only can be marketed if they first are purified in a depuration facility or “relayed” to an approved area. In either case, the shellfish may be marketed once they are depurated (cleansed of pollutants).

c) **Prohibited:** Area surveyed and closed due to hazardous levels of contamination; or area has not been surveyed at all. Molluscan shellfish may not be commercially harvested at any time.

**Nonshellfish/nonproductive:** At one time, if areas were determined to be inaccessible, or did not or could not produce shellfish (either naturally or aquaculturally) in quantities sufficient to justify commercial harvesting, waters were classified into this category. As a result of changes in the classification system, however, acreage in this category is now being transferred into subcategories of the “Productive” category. At present the “Nonshellfish/nonproductive” category accounts for less than 20 percent of total classified acreage.

or agricultural areas—elevated levels of metals and organic chemicals are frequently present in shellfish. These concentrations sometimes are high enough to adversely affect the shellfish and to threaten consuming organisms, including humans. In some cases this has prompted government warnings or restrictions on fishing or consumption (see ch. 6). The full national extent of contamination by metals and organic chemicals, and its consequences and trends, are not known.

**Finfish Contamination**

Only a limited number and variety of fish have been analyzed for specific pollutants. These data reveal that the level of measured contamination varies widely—geographically, among species, among individuals, and even in different tissues of a single contaminated specimen. Likewise, the origins of the contamination and its significance to the health of both humans and marine organisms varies. Finally, there are wide differences in trends; some contaminants are increasing in importance while others are declining (340).

Generally, contamination by metals and organic chemicals from point sources is most severe near urban and industrial centers and in estuaries downstream from such areas (figure 20). Contamination also has been detected at distant points in the open ocean, but little information is available on the level of contamination and its consequences (198).

Bottom-dwelling fish that spend a substantial portion of their lives in close proximity to contaminated sediments are the most seriously exposed and contaminated, as are other fish in the same food webs. Sole and other bottom-dwelling fish have been contaminated with metals and organic chemicals in many areas of the country, including Boston Harbor; Commencement Bay, Washington; Santa Monica Bay, California; and others. In most cases, contaminant levels do not pose a clear threat to the well-being of the fish or to consumers of such fish (other organisms or humans). The concentrations found thus far usually have been below the levels set by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), which has set some standards to restrict consumption of contaminated fish by humans (1 78, 593).

There are, however, instances around the country where contamination levels have been sufficient to move officials to warn the public or restrict or prohibit the capture or sale of the fish. Many of the most serious and widely publicized problems have resulted from point source discharges that contain long-lasting toxic chemicals (e.g., DDT and PCBs) that accumulate in the tissues of fish (337, 463). For example, the capture and sale of striped bass in New York has been banned because of PCB contamination and signs have been posted warning against the eating of fish caught in Santa Monica Bay in southern California (194, 340, 577).

**Other Effects on Finfish and Shellfish**

In addition to acute lethality and elevated body burdens of pollutants, individual finfish and shellfish also exhibit behavioral and physiological effects, and populations of these organisms exhibit changes in abundance and distribution. These effects may be negative, positive, or inconsequential from the human standpoint. Although many effects are difficult to document, a growing body of evidence links these effects to exposure to pollutants that sometimes are present at very low concentrations or to environmental changes induced by pollutants (127). The effects are concentrated in estuaries and coastal waters, but detectable effects also have been found in fish far from shore in the open ocean (198, 535).

The effects of pollutants on behavior are diverse. Some fish and shellfish will, if they can, avoid hypoxic bottom waters or waters containing various contaminants. Likewise, organisms living on or in sediments may avoid sediments that have been altered physically or chemically. Other aspects of their behavior may also change: for example, they may eat fewer or different organisms, be less active, or grow more slowly.

Pollution also has been linked with physiological and biochemical changes and diseases in fish.

---

*Positive impacts can result from a decline in pollutant inputs, or even from increases in the volumes of wastes. Pipeline discharges of dumping of organic matter and nutrients, for example, may increase productivity of marine waters. Some observers argue that this increased productivity has in some cases been beneficial (509, 526).*
The PCB concentrations found in the sampled areas generally are lower than those found to biologically affect freshwater or saltwater organisms. In some situations, however, biological effects have been detected at the PCB concentrations found at these sites. PCBs may cause reproductive failures, birth defects, tumors, liver disorders, and skin lesions, and they may suppress the immune system.

Pollutants have been linked with physiological and biochemical changes and diseases in fish, ranging from minor effects to conspicuous pathological abnormalities. Pictured here are two Dover Sole from the coastal waters near Los Angeles; the top fish exhibits severe "fin erosion," while the lower one is normal.

These range from subtle and relatively minor responses to physically visible and conspicuous pathological abnormalities. Most noticeable are effects such as fin erosion (or fin rot), ulcers, shell disease or erosion, tumors, and skeletal anomalies. Affected organisms may be less resistant to infection, or suffer impaired growth or reproduction. Some of these effects, although not immediately lethal, may eventually precipitate an organism’s death.

These kinds of effects have been documented in polluted marine waters around the country. In Boston Harbor, for example, pollution has been linked to fin erosion and cancerous lesions in winter flounder, a major commercial and recreational fish (373). In San Francisco Bay, evidence links pollutants and pathological problems—including impaired reproduction—in striped bass and starry flounder. In Puget Sound, various pathological conditions, most notably liver tumors, found in English sole and other fish are correlated with exposure to pollutants. Numerous other examples have been documented, as well (for example, see refs. 307,516, 544,621).

In some instances, especially in small areas or for limited periods of time, evidence links the disposal of wastes to changes in the abundance, distribution, or diversity of some fish and shellfish. These changes most frequently result from pollution-induced changes in various closely interrelated ecological parameters such as food supplies, water quality, and habitat. For example, pulp mill effluents discharged into the Fennewawky River estuary, located along Florida’s Gulf coast, have been significant contributors to the decline in the extent and productivity of the area’s seagrasses and some types of algae. Because those photosynthetic organisms are of central importance in the coastal ecosystem, their decline has had major repercussions on other populations and on community structure (307).

On longer time-scales and over larger areas, however, evidence is rarely sufficient to conclusively establish cause-and-effect relationships between changes in fish populations and waste disposal activities. Nor is evidence usually adequate to detect trends. Despite this, considerable circumstantial evidence indicates that pollutants from waste disposal activities have contributed to declines of major fish populations in the United States (529,610,640,691). For example, officials in eight Southeastern States along both the Gulf and Atlantic coasts believe that widespread declines of anadromous species in those States have been caused in part by pollutant discharges (492).

**Submerged Aquatic Vegetation**

Waste disposal activities have had substantial impacts on submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV). This is particularly important in view of the significance of SAV in marine ecosystems; it provides vital shelter and food sources and performs other important ecological functions such as stabilizing sediments. During the past century, the general trend has been toward decreases in the extent of SAV, although some increases have occurred during the last 10 or 15 years. A major cause for the declines has been increased turbidity resulting from discharges of suspended solids and from growing populations of plankton fostered by releases of nutrients.

Examples of vegetation loss exist around the country (17). In Florida, for example, seagrass meadows have suffered significant losses; indeed, seagrasses in some areas have been virtually wiped out since 1940 and the outlook for remaining seagrass beds in Florida is bleak (221,309). Perhaps the best known example in the United States is the
Chesapeake Bay, where the SAV has declined precipitously over the last 15 to 20 years (427,640).

**Benthic Organisms**

Changes in sediment or water quality induced by waste disposal often affect the benthic plants and animals that live on or near the bottom (including many fish, shellfish, and plants). Benthic communities have been affected by waste disposal in every region of the country. The impacts are most severe in and near estuaries that receive high inputs of pollutants from rivers, near developed coastal areas, and near dredged material disposal areas—particularly in the estuaries and coastal areas of the Northeast.

Problems related to waste disposal arise from sediment contamination, hypoxic bottom waters, increased turbidity, and physical changes in the sediment resulting from the settling of solids (e.g., from dredged material). The effects on benthic organisms vary from relatively rapid death to subtle effects on species diversity and numbers; the effects range from long term and permanent to short term and transitory. For example, a study of the disposal of fine-grained dredged material at a site in the Chesapeake Bay found that while many organisms were buried and consequently killed, the area apparently had recovered completely within 15 months (Harrison, 1976, cited in ref. 701). Conversely, far more serious impacts have been observed in the New York Bight. Among the effects caused at least in part by waste disposal have been mass mortalities of benthic organisms, large-scale and long-term contamination, diseases and abnormalities, changes in abundance and distribution of particular species, and changes in community structure (21,234,546,621).

As is the case with other organisms, trends pertaining to impacts of waste disposal on benthic communities vary from place to place. Some areas have improved since the early 1970s. For example, one study of the coastal shelf of Pales Verdes, California, between 1971 and 1981 showed that reduced emissions of pollutants (e.g., suspended solids, DDT, and PCBs) resulted in a reduction in the extent of observed benthic impacts (539). On the other hand, continued deterioration is being observed in other waters; for example, this is the case in the areas where shellfish contamination is increasingly prevalent.

**GEOGRAPHICAL VARIATIONS IN IMPACTS**

The extent of impacts on marine resources that are caused by waste disposal activities and nonpoint sources varies considerably among different waterbodies. Limited space precludes a detailed discussion of site-specific impacts, but generalizations can be made about the physical characteristics, degree of development, and types and extent of impacts that are exhibited in different regions of the country (figure 21).

**Northern Pacific Coast**

The Northern Pacific region includes the marine resources off the coasts of Alaska, Washington, and Oregon. This region contains more coastline and more stretches of relatively enclosed bodies of water (e.g., estuaries, bays, and sounds) than any other region, largely because of the size and shape of Alaska's coast. Much of the region, with some notable exceptions, is relatively free of conspicuous and serious marine impacts induced by waste disposal activities.

The region does have some major industrial development, including the forest products, seafood processing, petroleum refining, and chemical industries. The municipal and industrial effluent discharged into the region's coastal waters originates primarily from two areas: coastal areas around Puget Sound and inland areas along the rivers, particularly the Columbia River. The region's most severe impacts have occurred in Puget Sound.

The impacts of pollutants have been manifold in Puget Sound (313,463,483). The most severe problems occur in urban embayments. Many commercial shellfish beds have been closed because of fecal coliform contamination. In Commencement Bay, levels of toxic pollutants are high enough to
Figure 21.—The Five Coastal Regions of the United States Used in This Report

make it one of the most contaminated areas in the country and a "Superfund" site. Diseases and abnormalities, most notably liver tumors, have been detected in bottom-dwelling fish. These pathological conditions and other impacts have been linked with exposure to chemicals found in sediments, the water column, and food particles (89,326,351,376). The health of humans who consume large amounts of contaminated fish also may be endangered (293).

Outside of Puget Sound, waste disposal activities and pollutant inputs generally tend to be less intense and appear to cause less severe problems. Impacts are generally localized and poorly documented (425). They include contamination of shellfish with fecal coliform bacteria, decreased levels of oxygen near outfalls from mills and seafood processing plants, and effects from dumping of dredged material offshore of the Columbia River estuary.

California and Hawaii

The region that includes California and Hawaii differs from other regions in that relatively more of its coast are open, rather than enclosed in areas such as bays. In addition, its continental shelf is relatively narrow.

Relatively few impacts have been documented in Hawaii. Some problems, however, have been associated with the discharge of nutrients. These problems were alleviated during the 1970s and early 1980s as sewage treatment plants were built and upgraded, and as outfalls were extended into deeper, open waters. In Kaneohe Bay, for example, sewage discharges prior to the late 1970s had seriously degraded marine communities. In the late 1970s, the discharges were diverted to a deep-ocean outfall and conditions in the Bay improved con-
The marine waters of southern California support a wealth of marine resources that are of considerable value, including extensive commercial and recreational fisheries, numerous beaches, refuges, and sanctuaries. The great beds of giant kelp present along the open coast provide habitat for many valuable fish and shellfish and support a substantial kelp harvesting industry. Marine mammals and birds also are present and many breed in the area.

Juxtaposed to the waters and their resources is one of the continents great urban concentrations. These urban areas discharge large volumes of wastes (mostly municipal) to marine waters, which exhibit elevated concentrations of many pollutants. Fecal coliform bacteria reach high concentrations near many ocean outfalls, but serious problems are confined primarily to an area near the Mexican border where high concentrations originating from Mexico have compelled the closure of U.S. beaches and restrictions on shellfishing (356). Elevated concentrations of chlorinated hydrocarbons and metals have been detected in various organisms (194, 423, 499).

Shellfish, finfish, birds, mammals, and aquatic vegetation have all been affected (17, 126, 187, 485). Fish, for instance, suffer liver abnormalities, fin erosion disease, and reproductive problems linked to pollutants (18, 52, 92, 119, 350, 539). Kelp beds have undergone dramatic changes during the last 50 years (figure 22). In 1984, 108 km² of the benthic community around three of the area’s major outfalls was changed or degraded. Although a substantial area, this is an improvement over the 163 km² that were changed or degraded in 1977 (53).

One issue of particular importance is the human consumption of fish and shellfish contaminated with toxic pollutants. Although DDT concentrations in fish and shellfish have fallen since discharges of DDT were curtailed in the early 1970s (340), residues are still high in some areas and some organ-

---

*The problem of bacterial contamination in U.S. waters closest to the border should be greatly alleviated by a new sewage treatment plant in Tijuana, Mexico, which began operating in January 1987. Furthermore, under an international agreement, Tijuana will divert its sewage to treatment plants in San Diego when pollutants in discharges from the Tijuana plant would otherwise be moved by marine currents into U.S. waters.*
Figure 22.—Relationship Between Size of Kelp Beds and Quantity of Solids From Municipal Discharges at a Southern California Site

These kelp beds are located near Pales Verdes, California; discharges are from the Joint Water Pollution Control Plant, operated by the Los Angeles County Sanitation Districts. SOURCE After J C Meister and D E Montagne, “Waste Disposal in Southern California and Its Effects on the Rocky Subtidal Habitat,” The Effects of Waste Disposal on Ecosystems, W Bascom (ed.), La Jolla, CA University of California Institute of Marine Resources, 1985

isms. High concentrations of DDT and its metabolites, as well as PCBs, have been found in fish caught by southern California fishermen and sold in the area’s fish markets; in shellfish sampled as part of California’s Mussel Watch monitoring program (see ch. 7); and in the blood of recreational fishermen (577).

Because of apprehension over human exposure to these pollutants, especially DDT and its metabolites, commercial fishing has been prohibited around some outfalls. The State has established guidelines to reduce ingestion of contaminated fish and posted signs warning against consumption of fish caught in Santa Monica Bay.

Gulf of Mexico

The Gulf of Mexico, with its extremely productive habitats and wealth of sea life, is one of the most important marine environments in the United States (23). It also receives large amounts of pollutants. By far the largest volume of many pollutants is carried to the Gulf by the region’s rivers, especially the Mississippi River. Many pollutants are generated from both point and nonpoint sources in areas beyond the immediate coastal area. The Mississippi River, for example, carries wastes from the heavily developed Baton Rouge and New Orleans area, and from urban and rural areas deep in the Nation’s interior (607).

Although small relative to the quantities of riverborne pollutants, considerable waste is discharged from municipal and industrial sources along the coast. Large amounts of dredged material also are dumped in the region’s marine waters. The major industrial discharges along the coast are associated with refineries and the petrochemical industry, especially in Louisiana and Texas. The forest products and seafood processing industries are major contributors all along the Gulf coast. Despite the overall dominance of riverborne pollutants, in many areas these local sources substantially affect the quality of the marine environment.

Wastes from permitted discharges have been linked to a variety of ecological impacts (2,220,221, 315,359,554). The first problem is the depression of dissolved oxygen levels and accelerated eutrophication in areas close to shore (156,181,454,465,466,703). Extensive hypoxia also has been documented in the waters further offshore, south of Louisiana, but the degree to which waste disposal contributes to the phenomenon has not been ascertained.

The second major problem is the contamination of waters with human fecal coliform. This happens in virtually every coastal State in the Gulf and appears to result primarily from nonpoint sources (e.g., contaminants from septic tanks are washed into estuaries and coastal waters by runoff). However, point sources, including municipal sewage plants, also contribute to the problem in some areas.

Other problems, often less evident, result from releases of metals, chlorinated hydrocarbons, and other chemicals. The impacts usually are localized, but they can be quite serious in highly developed areas and in waters where circulation is relatively poor—for example, in the Mississippi Sound (figure 23) and in Galveston Bay. Other affected areas occur throughout the Gulf (185,268,309,333,428).

Marine resources have been harmed by these types of pollutant discharges. Many of the region’s shellfish beds are contaminated with fecal coliform. Vital beds of seagrasses are declining throughout the region (309). Fish and shellfish populations have
The Environmental Stress Index indicates the ecological risks associated with sediment contamination; a high value represents a higher risk of serious environmental stress. The index is a mathematical product of numerical ratings in four categories:

1. toxicity of sediments to selected organisms under laboratory conditions;
2. how readily sediment settles to the bottom after disturbance;
3. likelihood of sediment disturbance (e.g., from boat traffic or dredging); and
4. vulnerability of organisms to toxic substances (including factors such as ecological importance of indigenous species, life stages present, species diversity, mobility, and others).

SOURCE Adapted from T F Lytle and J S Lytle, *Pollutant Transport in Mississippi Sound* (Ocean Springs, MS: Mississippi-Alabama Sea Grant Consortium, 1985)
been declining in some areas (476,492), and birds have been found with elevated levels of contaminants—sometimes at levels that may impair reproduction (268).

Since the late 1960s and early 1970s, some locations along the Gulf have significantly reduced the release of nutrients and oxygen-demanding substances from municipal and industrial discharges. Reflecting this change, problems associated with low dissolved oxygen concentrations—e.g., major fish kills—have been alleviated in some instances. Likewise, point source discharges of fecal coliform and some metals and organic chemicals have been reduced in some areas (137,364).

These and other pollutants nevertheless still pose severe and sometimes worsening problems in parts of the region, largely because of rapid population growth. Some observers are concerned that these problems may become still more serious as rapid urban and industrial development proceeds (137, 308). There is also concern that dredging and impacts associated with disposal of dredged material may increase dramatically as several deep-water ports are created (314).

Southern Atlantic Coast

The Southern Atlantic region bordering the Southeastern U.S. coast has an irregular shoreline, with many bays, drowned river valleys, wetlands, and islands (25). Municipal waste discharges are concentrated along the relatively small portion of the coast that is densely populated, largely in Florida. Industrial effluent in the region is dominated by the forest products industry, which is scattered along the coast. Nonpoint sources are important and are sometimes the predominant sources of pollution. They contribute significant amounts of pollutants directly to marine waters and indirectly through rivers and streams.

Waste discharges have been linked to various impacts in the region (182,220,221,276,399), including increased levels of nutrients and fecal coliform and reduced concentrations of dissolved oxygen (13,534,703). The resultant hypoxic and eutrophic conditions have been associated with fish kills, depressed populations of benthic organisms, fish diseases, and the decline of commercial and recreational fisheries, including those based on anadromous fish (42,397,398,552).

Although some localized reductions in releases of fecal coliform in some instances have occurred (9), in general growing amounts of fecal coliform bacteria are being released to many of the region’s coastal waters. Poor sewage treatment and increasingly serious contamination from a variety of non-point sources, aggravated by extremely rapid development, contribute to the problem. As a result, more restrictions on shellfishing have been instituted. In North Carolina, between 1980 and 1985, “approved” shellfishing areas declined by 1 percent, while the “prohibited” acreage increased by 4 percent (603).

In selected areas, problems associated with point source releases of nutrients and fecal coliform have been alleviated over the past 15 years as a result of Federal and State pollution control legislation. These gains have been offset to varying degrees elsewhere, however, by development that has resulted in increasing releases of these same pollutants from both point and nonpoint sources (13,552).

Elevated concentrations of metals and organic chemicals occur in the waters and sediments of some coastal areas, in particular those with substantial urban or industrial development. Both point and nonpoint sources contribute to the contamination. Where documentation exists, trends in emissions and impacts are mixed. Some areas show considerable reductions in the concentrations of metals and synthetic organic chemicals, while elsewhere increases are evident.

Pollutants may be linked to several important changes in fish populations, particularly anadromous fish populations in many of the region’s river systems (492). In North Carolina over the last decade, for example, pollutants from point sources may be partly responsible for the decline of commercial fisheries relying on striped bass and herring. Generally, however, it is difficult to link specific pollutants and declines in fish populations. The relatively high incidence of ‘ulcerative mycosis’ in some fish, a disease characterized by skin ulcers, may be linked to pollutants but a clear explana-

---

*These are talleys that cut through coastal lands when one shoreline extended further out than it does today. These river valleys have since been ‘drowned’ by higher marine waters.
tion for the disorder has yet to be found (36, 135,396).

**Northern Atlantic Coast**

The Northern Atlantic coast, running from the North Carolina/Virginia border to Canada, contains many major bays, estuaries, and shallow coastal areas, and is graced with remarkably rich marine resources. It also is the location of extensive agricultural, urban, and industrial development which has occurred for several centuries. Consequently, marine ecosystems in many parts of the region are polluted and degraded, sometimes severely (62 1).

The problems in these estuaries and coastal waters (e.g., Chesapeake Bay, New York Bight, Long Island Sound, Narragansett Bay, Boston Harbor, and Buzzard’s Bay) have been extensively studied (7,343,373,5 12,640,688). Impacts in the Chesapeake Bay, New York Bight, and Deepwater Disposal Sites are described in chapter 1, and details of impacts in other waterbodies are available from the U.S. Congress (588). This section describes the nature and extent of impacts in these waters in more general terms.

Municipal and industrial discharges, plus dumped sewage sludge and dredged material, are important sources of pollutants in this region; their quantity and composition vary from place to place. Pollutants from these waste disposal activities have been associated with various impacts. Some improvements have occurred since the late 1960s and early 1970s, but deterioration has occurred in other cases (108,335,336,347,394,480,486,597,609,681).

Eutrophication and hypoxia appear to be the most pervasive and serious consequences of pollution in the region. These problems occur in many estuaries and bays, and over wide, shallow areas of the continental shelf that are often quite distant from the original sources of the nutrients and organic material. Such impacts are most severe south of Connecticut. Natural changes in water quality along with inputs of nutrients and organic material from numerous sources (e.g., municipal and industrial effluents, runoff, raw sewage, dredged material, combined sewer overflows) all contribute to the problems (302,347,419,694).

Contaminated water and sediments are common throughout the region. Bacterial contamination of the water, particularly from raw sewage in combined sewer overflows, has sometimes closed beaches, in most cases temporarily but sometimes permanently (77,199,302). Sediments in many areas contain elevated concentrations of pathogens, metals, and organic chemicals (5,12). Among the most seriously contaminated sediments are those in the James River estuary, the Patapsco River around Baltimore, the Hudson River estuary, Raritan Bay and the New York Bight, New Bedford Harbor, and Boston Harbor (57,239,640,687).

Many impacts on marine organisms have been linked, with varying degrees of certainty, to waste discharges. These include major kills of fish and benthic organisms (452), increased incidence of disease and abnormalities, declines in major fisheries, and changes in community structure (407,495,7 11, 7,13). For example, in Boston Harbor, fin erosion and cancerous lesions have been found in winter flounder, a major commercial and recreational species.

Commercial harvesting is limited in 14 percent of productive shellfish areas, mostly because the shellfish contain high concentrations of bacteria. Over one-half of the shellfish beds in Boston Harbor are closed, at an estimated annual loss of $4 million. The size of the areas in the region in which harvesting is limited has been slowly increasing over the past 5 years, although there are localized exceptions to the trend (277,603).

In addition to being contaminated with pathogens, many fish and shellfish also contain elevated concentrations of other pollutants, especially metals and hydrocarbons. As with pathogens, these concentrations have sometimes been high enough to prompt officials to restrict fishing or harvesting.

Some of the most extensive and serious instances of contamination are associated with large releases of PCBs by industrial manufacturers into the Hudson River between 1950 and 1976 and into New Bedford Harbor (in Buzzard’s Bay, Massachusetts) from 1947 to 1977 (271,339). This has caused widespread contamination of some fish and shellfish, and diseases and abnormalities in some organisms (76,475). Fishing and the sale of contaminated organisms is restricted over wide areas. For instance, in
New Bedford Harbor, a total of 18,000 acres were closed to lobstering.

Impacts to submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV) and birds also have been severe in some cases. The most important impact to aquatic vegetation in the region apparently results from the large-scale introduction of nutrients in coastal estuaries. This has had major repercussions on aquatic organisms of all kinds, including valuable fish and waterfowl (427)640. Some birds have exhibited elevated concentrations of pollutants as a result of ingesting contaminated organisms (162). In some cases these high concentrations led to reproductive failures and population declines—most notably, in the fish-eating osprey that once was common throughout the region (698). Since restrictions on the production and use of DDT were imposed in the early 1970s, many parts of the region have witnessed a dramatic increase in osprey populations.
Chapter 6

Impacts of Waste Pollutants on Human Health
CONTENTS

Introduction .................................................................123
Limitations of Human Health Effects Data. .............................124
Toxic Metals .....................................................................124
  General Characteristics. ...............................................124
  Pathways to Humans ...................................................125
  Potential and Actual Human Health Impacts .......................125
Toxic Organic Chemicals ..................................................127
  General Considerations ..............................................127
  Pathways to Humans ...................................................129
  Potential and Actual Human Health Impacts .......................129
Classes of Organic Chemicals ...........................................131
Human Pathogens .........................................................133
  General Considerations ..............................................133
  Pathways to Humans ...................................................135
  Potential and Actual Human Health Impacts .......................135
Shortcomings of Current Microbiological Standards ...............138
The Effect of Treatment on Pathogenic Microorganisms ..........139
Land Application of Sewage Sludge ....................................139
Deputation of Shellfish ..................................................139

Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Properties and Effects of Metals of Primary Concern in the Marine Environment | 126 |
| Properties and Effects of Major Classes of Organic Chemicals in Wastes Disposed of in Marine Environments | 130 |
| FDA’s Criteria for Initiating Enforcement Actions Against Seafood | 136 |

Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Ability To Conduct Health-Hazard Assessment of Substances in Seven Categories of Chemicals in Use | 128 |
| New York Bay-Newark Bay Fishing Sites and Advisory Areas | 132 |

Boxes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Public Health Advisories | 131 |
| Classes of Human Pathogens | 134 |
| Exposure to Toxic Chemicals and Pathogens Through Seafood | 136 |
Chapter 6
Impacts of Waste Pollutants on Human Health

INTRODUCTION

Many substances found in wastes disposed of in marine environments have the potential to produce a variety of acute and chronic human health effects. The likelihood of human exposure to these pollutants depends on their physical, chemical, and biological form; concentration; and persistence or survival. The character of the disposal environment, method of disposal, and nature of environmental pathways leading to human exposure are also important variables.

There are two major contaminant pathways to humans. Contaminants can pass directly from contaminated media (water or air) to humans, typically by uptake through the skin or lungs, or through ingestion (e.g., swallowing water). Alternatively, they can reach humans indirectly by ingestion of plants or animals that have taken up these substances directly or indirectly from contaminated environments. The relative significance of these two kinds of pathways varies for different pollutants.

Indirect exposure from water can be a significant route of exposure to toxic organic chemicals and metals because many of these substances have a capacity to persist in the environment, to concentrate in particular parts of the environment, and to bioaccumulate in certain plants and animals. Direct human exposure to toxic organic chemicals and metals from water is generally less significant because these substances are typically present in water at relatively low concentrations. For pathogens, both direct and indirect exposure can be significant because only small numbers of microorganisms are required to induce disease, and because microorganisms can reproduce in the environment or in infected animals.

Another general distinction can be made between different types of pollutants based on the extent to which they persist or are degraded in the environment. “Conservative” and “persistent” pollutants (e.g., toxic metals, PCBs) are broken down slowly or not at all, while “nonconservative” and “labile” pollutants (e.g., biodegradable or volatile organic chemicals) are rapidly rendered harmless or are removed from the system by environmental processes. Most of the problem substances in marine environments are in the former categories: their environmental persistence enhances their potential to reach and affect humans. Microbial contaminants of both types exist as well; some microbes are killed or inactivated by environmental processes, while others can actually proliferate.

Human health impacts can be associated with three major categories of pollutants that are present in wastes disposed of in marine environments, and that have the potential to reach and cause adverse impacts in humans. These categories are:

1. toxic metals: arsenic, cadmium, lead, and mercury;
2. synthetic organic chemicals: polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), chlorinated hydrocarbons, and “specialized” chemicals (polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), pesticides, dioxins); and
3. human pathogens: viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites.

---

1 Much of the information presented in this chapter is derived from extensive analyses contained in two contract reports prepared for OTA (205, 409).
2 Where high concentrations are present, direct exposure of humans to toxic substances in water can cause significant impacts. Such exposure might be experienced, for example, by bathers swimming at a beach in the immediate vicinity of an industrial discharge or by divers working in highly polluted waters.
LIMITATIONS OF HUMAN HEALTH EFFECTS DATA

Major impediments exist that limit a thorough evaluation of the human health impacts caused by waste-borne pollutants. Information is lacking on most of the individual substances detected in wastes and there is often uncertainty or controversy surrounding those for which there are data. In addition, it is difficult to accurately predict the behavior of a substance based only on data for chemically similar substances. An accurate assessment is also hindered by the complexity of most wastes, which are typically contaminated by a mixture of potentially harmful substances. Existing data typically allow at most an assessment of acute, short-term impacts associated with a particular waste; it is rarely possible to adequately assess chronic, long-term effects.

Moreover, studies of the environmental or ecological impacts of individual chemicals introduced into the environment through waste disposal rarely measure or sufficiently consider the potential human health effects. In fact, the human health risks associated with exposures to the vast majority—90 percent or more—of all chemicals found in different wastes are unknown (386). Knowledge about the human health effects of environmental pollutants generally comes from studies of only a few toxic compounds, such as mercury, cadmium, and PCBs (409); and these effects are often recognized only after large-scale occupational exposure, industrial accidents, or massive discharges of waste into the environment.

The accumulated knowledge in the field of toxicology is based primarily on experimental work with laboratory mammals. Thus, estimating human health risks from the disposal of chemical compounds in marine environments is generally based on extrapolating information on the toxicity of specific chemicals to laboratory mammals to the concentrations observed in marine organisms or humans. The estimates must also attempt to account for the persistence of such substances in the environment and their tendency to bioaccumulate or to biomagnify in marine organisms that might be consumed by humans. Public health information on human pathogens is largely derived from investigations of past incidents and, more rarely, on prospective epidemiological or clinical efforts.

TOXIC METALS

General Characteristics

Metals are chemical elements and as such cannot be destroyed or broken down through treatment or environmental degradation. However, a number of environmental processes—both chemical and biological—can alter the mobility and bioavailability of metals.

In general, toxic metals (including arsenic, beryllium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, copper, lead, mercury, molybdenum, nickel, selenium, and zinc) are of potential concern whether they are found in wastes that will be disposed of on land or in the ocean. With respect to human health impacts arising from disposal of wastes in the marine environment, four metals are of primary concern: arsenic, cadmium, lead, and mercury. These are particularly important because of their known toxicity to humans and their presence in relatively high concentrations in wastes disposed of in estuaries and coastal waters. Metals of secondary concern include chromium, copper, and selenium. Other toxic metals are present in much lower concentrations both in wastes and in regions of the marine environment that are likely to lead to human exposure (409).

In marine environments, most dissolved metals are rapidly adsorbed and remain bound to particulate material that eventually settles out of the water column and is incorporated into sediments. However, some metals (e.g., cadmium, copper, nickel, and zinc) can be slowly—over a period of months or years—released from the sediment’s oxidized surface layer and sublayers (124). In addition, metals can be released through other chemical and biological changes or processes, for example, by changes in salinity that commonly occur in estuarine waters. The action of microorganisms can also mobilize metals: for example, bacteria in sediments...
can convert slightly toxic inorganic mercury to the highly toxic and volatile methyl mercury (26). Finally, the burrowing of animals into sediments (bioturbation) and physical processes such as storms can release metals from sediments through oxidation and direct physical resuspension (709).

Pathways to Humans

Indirect pathways to humans vary with the particular environment and method used for disposal. In marine environments, consumption of contaminated seafood is generally the major route of human exposure to metals. Direct human exposure to metals is usually less important because they generally attain very low concentrations in the water column (409). However direct exposure resulting from volatization of certain metals (e.g., mercury, arsenic, and lead) due to their methylation by microorganisms, or direct exposure to marine waters with high concentrations of metals, would be a concern.

Bioaccumulation and biomagnification are important processes that largely determine the potential for indirect human exposure to toxic metals and organic chemicals that result from marine waste disposal. Marine organisms, especially benthic organisms, can bioaccumulate metals by filtering water during feeding or swimming, ingesting particulate matter onto which such substances are adsorbed, or ingesting other contaminated organisms (46,232,260). Bioaccumulation generally increases as the degree of water or sediment contamination increases, but it varies considerably among metal, species of marine organisms, and types of sediment.

Biomagnification of a metal can result in the stepwise increase in an organism tissue concentration of several orders of magnitude or more, and hence represents a major potential pathway for human exposure. According to available evidence, most toxic metals do not biomagnify into higher trophic levels of the marine food chain (33,260). However, methyl mercury, and perhaps selenium and zinc, are important exceptions to this rule.

Of the metals of primary concern, cadmium and mercury have significant potential for transport to humans through consumption of contaminated seafood (table 8). Arsenic is largely converted to non-toxic forms by marine organisms (129), and neither arsenic nor lead have been shown to accumulate significantly in seafood (409).

Even when bioaccumulation is not a factor, significant quantities of metals can concentrate in the gut or gills of marine organisms without actual absorption into the tissues. This is especially true for shellfish that filter large quantities of seawater and ingest solid matter during feeding (e.g., oysters, clams, mussels). Because people generally eat these organisms in their entirety, toxic substances can be passed to humans even in the absence of any actual bioaccumulation. This mechanism probably accounts for most instances of shellfish contamination involving metals that do not bioaccumulate.

Potential and Actual Human Health Impacts

Toxic metals are capable of inducing a variety of human health effects—lethal and sublethal, acute and chronic. Some of the known properties and effects of exposure to the metals of primary concern in marine environments are summarized in table 8.

Acute environmental effects attributable to toxic metals may occur if concentrations are sufficiently high. Although documentation of human poisoning from consuming seafood contaminated with toxic metals is uncommon, there have been several well-known, catastrophic events. In Minamata, Japan, for example, over 100 people died and 700 others suffered severe, permanent neurological damage after consuming shellfish contaminated by industrial discharges of methyl mercury into Minamata Bay (128). A similar, though less severe, event occurred in Niigata, Japan in 1965 (550).

---

1. Bioaccumulation refers to the process where toxic substances enter an aquatic organism, either directly from the water through gills or epidermal tissue, or indirectly through consumption of other organisms. Biomagnification refers to the resultant process where tissues of bioaccumulated substances increase as the material passes through more than one trophic level in the food chain.

2. High levels of selenium have been detected in the tissues of at least two species of marine birds, Texas laughing gulls in Galveston Bay (268), and California scoters in San Francisco Bay (424).

3. This phenomenon applies equally to organic chemicals and pathogens, as discussed below.
### Table 8.—Properties and Effects of Metals of Primary Concern in Marine Environments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Arsenic</th>
<th>Cadmium</th>
<th>Lead</th>
<th>Mercury</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bioaccumulation</strong></td>
<td>Low except in some fish species</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Low or none</td>
<td>Significant (methylated form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Biomagnification</strong></td>
<td>Low or none</td>
<td>Low or none</td>
<td>Low or none</td>
<td>Significant (methylated form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Properties</strong></td>
<td>Metallic form: insoluble</td>
<td>Metallic form: relatively soluble</td>
<td>Generally insoluble</td>
<td>Metallic form: relatively insoluble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Readily methylated by sediment bacteria to</td>
<td>Not subject to biomethylation</td>
<td>Adsorption rate age-dependent, 4 to 5</td>
<td>Readily methylated by sediment bacteria to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>become highly soluble, but low in toxicity</td>
<td>Less bioavailable in marine than in fresh</td>
<td>times higher in children than adults</td>
<td>become more soluble, bioavailable,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>water</td>
<td></td>
<td>persistent, and highly toxic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Long biological residence time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Synergistic effects with lead</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major environmental sink</strong></td>
<td>Sediments</td>
<td>Sediments</td>
<td>Sediments</td>
<td>Sediments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major routes of human exposure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marine environments</strong></td>
<td>Seafood: very minor route, except for some fish species</td>
<td>Seafood comparable to other food sources</td>
<td>Seafood is primary source of human exposure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other environments</strong></td>
<td>Inhalation: the major route</td>
<td>Diet and drinking water</td>
<td>Terrestrial pathways are minor sources in comparison</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Health effects</strong></td>
<td>Acute: gastrointestinal hemorrhage; loss of blood pressure; coma and death in extreme cases</td>
<td>Emphysema and other lung damage; anemia; kidney, pancreatic, and liver impairment; bone damage; animal (and suspected human) carcinogen and mutagen</td>
<td>Acute: gastrointestinal disorders; Chronic: anemia; neurological and blood disorders; kidney dysfunction; joint impairments; male/female reproductive effects; teratogenic</td>
<td>Kidney dysfunction; neurological disease; skin lesions; respiratory impairement; eye damage; animal teratogen and carcinogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic: liver and peripheral nerve damage; possibly skin and lung cancer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**References**

- Doull, et al., 1980
- Barrington, et al., 1978
- O'Connor and Kneip, 1986
- Woolson, 1983
- Chapman, et al., 1968
- Nriagu, 1981
- O'Connor and Kneip, 1986
- Wiedow, et al., 1982
- Callahan, et al., 1979
- Heltz, et al., 1975
- Nriagu, 1979
- NAS, 1980
- Wiedow, et al., 1982
- O'Connor and Rachlin, 1982
- Grieg, et al., 1979
- Kay, 1984
- Nriagu, 1979
- Windom and Kendall, 1979

**SOURCE:** Office of Technology Assessment, 1987

---

Other events involving metal contamination of food sources (though not seafood) have occurred. These include dietary transport of lead and cadmium from the application of sewage sludge to agricultural lands (470,471); and the pollution of Japanese rice paddies by industrial cadmium discharges, which resulted in 60 deaths (404).

Substantial laboratory evidence documents the potential for lethal and sublethal chronic effects to result from exposure to metals contributed by waste disposal activities. However, our capacity to detect chronic impacts in the field is limited, and this is in part responsible for the paucity of data documenting such human health effects.

Mercury is of special concern because it is easily taken up by humans through a diversity of exposure routes, including inhalation, ingestion, and through the skin. The source of mercury responsible for contamination of marine organisms differs among the various marine waters. In the open ocean, natural sources of mercury predominate, whereas in some estuaries and coastal waters, inputs from land-based sources are commonly the major source of contamination. In fact, marine
organisms from polluted estuaries typically contain five or more times as much mercury as marine organisms from relatively clean estuaries (702).

Ingestion of contaminated shellfish and finfish, especially long-lived predatory fish such as tuna, is the primary route of human exposure to mercury (202,702). Again, however, in open-ocean fish mercury is generally attributable to natural sources, while shellfish contamination is typically more closely correlated with waste disposal.

Cadmium is used extensively in metal electroplating and found in a wide variety of wastes. It is more mobile than most other toxic metals. Large-scale cadmium contamination of estuarine waters by industrial and municipal wastewater discharges has occurred in some urban areas, for instance in the Hudson River estuary, and this has caused significant contamination of marine food chains (272,409). For example, studies show that shellfish harvested near an industrial outfall formerly used to discharge cadmium wastes contained levels high enough to induce acute cadmium poisoning in an unwary consumer or urban fisherman (refs. 229,696; also see box N later in this chapter). Other studies of the entire Hudson estuary found that moderate consumption of shellfish could lead to exposure exceeding recommended safe levels (411).

The actual mechanism by which cadmium is transported through the marine food chain is controversial. Some investigators have found that cadmium present in sediments of some urban embayments is readily taken up by organisms, and that contaminated sediments represent the most likely source of human exposure (229). However, others suggest that sediments are not a significant contributor of cadmium even to contaminated organisms harvested from marine waters near urban-industrial areas (491).

**TOXIC ORGANIC CHEMICALS**

General Considerations

Some 65,000 chemical compounds are used in industry worldwide (386). Of these, approximately 10,000 are used regularly in one or more industrial processes; about 1,000 new chemicals are introduced into commerce each year (231). Clearly, individual evaluation of the health effects of each of these compounds is a hopeless enterprise. For several broad categories of industrial chemicals, figure 24 shows the paucity of data available on which to base health hazard evaluations.

Organic chemicals vary considerably with respect to their behavior in natural environments. Some chemicals accumulate in organisms; others do not. Some decompose rapidly if exposed to light, heat, or water; others are highly persistent. Some compounds may be metabolized by organisms into other compounds that may be more or less toxic than the original compound; others resist biodegradation. Toxicities may vary from one organism to another, and toxic levels may also be affected by the presence of other compounds, producing synergistic or antagonistic effects.

Given this complexity, it is essential to invoke some system to simplify classification if a health hazard evaluation is to become manageable. One approach is to classify compounds according to how they behave in the environment, that is, on the basis of environmental fate. This approach can be used to reduce the size of the chemical universe down to those substances that have a potential to reach humans; information on human health effects would then only need to be developed for this subset.

Several relatively well-understood relationships exist between chemical properties of organic compounds and their fate in natural environments:

- **Chemical Property:** Solubility in water
  - Related to: Adsorption, route of absorption, mobility
- **Chemical Property:** Vapor pressure
  - Related to: Atmospheric mobility, environmental persistence
- **Chemical Property:** Solubility in animal tissue
  - Related to: Bioaccumulation potential, adsorption by organic matter or sediments, persistence in organisms

*Organic chemicals possess a molecular skeleton made of carbon and hydrogen and generally contain relatively few other elements, such as oxygen, nitrogen, or chlorine. Chlorine-containing organic compounds are referred to as 'chlorinated.' Metals or metal-containing substances are usually termed "inorganic, although in some cases metals can be chemically bound to organic compounds (e.g., methyl mercury)."
Figure 24.—Ability To Conduct Health-Hazard Assessment of Substances in Seven Categories of Chemicals in Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number of chemicals in category</th>
<th>Estimated mean percent of each category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pesticides and inert ingredients of pesticide formulations</td>
<td>3,350</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cosmetic ingredients</td>
<td>3,410</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs and excipients used in drug formulations</td>
<td>1,815</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food additives</td>
<td>8,627</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemicals in commerce: at least 1 million pounds/year</td>
<td>12,860</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemicals in commerce: less than 1 million pounds/year</td>
<td>13,911</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemicals in commerce: production level unknown or inaccessible</td>
<td>21,752</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complete Partial Minimal Some No health hazard assessment possible    hazard assessment available information available toxicity information available
available

Using a scheme based on determinants of environmental fate such as these, it is possible to identify, for example, a class of compounds with low water volubility and high tissue volubility (e.g., PCBs, dioxins) that is likely to persist for long periods in the environment and bioaccumulate in organisms. Another class, with the characteristics of high volatility and high volubility (e.g., chloroform, toluene), is likely to have low potential for accumulation in the food chain, but may pose a hazard to humans from inhalation or ingestion in drinking water. These considerations form the basis of the classification of organic chemicals used in this section (table 9).

**Pathways to Humans**

The most serious risks to human health are generally posed by those organic chemicals that are toxic, persistent, and have some means of reaching humans (i.e., present in significant concentrations in what has been termed the human exposure zone). As was the case for metals, humans can be exposed to organic chemicals either directly from the water (by absorption through the skin, by drinking contaminated water, or by inhaling contaminated air), or indirectly through ingestion of contaminated plants or animals.

In marine environments, many organic chemicals partition into sediments or onto the water’s upper surface (the surface microlayer), where they are potentially available to marine plants and animals; this can provide an indirect pathway to humans through ingestion of contaminated seafood. Direct human exposure to organic chemicals is less common because these substances generally can be present in the water at only very low concentrations, although in some cases they may be of substantial concern.

As was the case for metals, the consumption of contaminated seafood is the primary pathway for human exposure to most organic chemicals in wastes disposed of in marine environments. Indeed, compounds such as PCBs and DDT have been shown to accumulate in humans through consumption of contaminated seafood (249,409).

Not surprisingly, the importance of bioaccumulation and biomagnification varies greatly for different organic chemicals and for different organisms. Several classes of organic chemicals, particularly those that are relatively insoluble in water, have a high bioaccumulation potential because of their volubility in animal tissue. Some of these organic compounds, including PCBs, benz[a]pyrene, naphthalenes, and chlorinated pesticides (e.g., kepone, mirex, and possibly DDT), also appear to have a potential for biomagnification by marine organisms.

Other compounds that bioaccumulate but probably do not biomagnify include chlorinated phenols and benzenes, and most PAHs. However, there is relatively little information on the long-term fate and behavior of most organic compounds in aquatic environments (260).

**Potential and Actual Human Health Impacts**

Few documented cases of human health impacts from waste-derived organic chemicals in marine environments exist. However, the potential for such exposure and effects clearly exists in the United States. Numerous estuarine and coastal areas—e.g., New Bedford Harbor, New York Harbor, and portions of Puget Sound—are sufficiently contaminated with toxic chemicals to preclude the harvest of fish and/or shellfish (box L; refs. 211, 507). Commercial and recreational fishing for striped bass, bluefish, tautog, and eels has been curtailed in large portions of the New York Bight’s apex due to high concentrations of PCBs and other organic compounds (28,30,237).

PCBs and PAHs are widely distributed in inland and coastal sediments and have been found in deep ocean sediments as well (62,325,484). PCBs and several other highly persistent and toxic chemicals (e.g., DDT) have been banned from further production or use in commerce in the United States. It can be expected, therefore, that the sediment concentrations and body burdens of these toxic compounds will probably decrease gradually over time.

---

7 Several cases involving land-based food sources have been reported. The most infamous is a disease outbreak in Japan, known as the Yusho incident, that was caused by the leakage of PCBs (in combination with dibenzofurans) from an industrial heat exchanger into a rice oil manufacturing process. Yusho symptoms included reduced birthweights and skin disorders such as chloracne and hyperpigmentation (287).
# Table 9.—Properties and Effects of Major Classes of Organic Chemicals in Wastes Disposed of in Marine Environments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical class</th>
<th>Major examples</th>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Primary routes to humans</th>
<th>Health effects</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low molecular weight hydrocarbons</td>
<td>Benzene</td>
<td>Volatile</td>
<td>Inhalation</td>
<td>Benzene: central nervous system (CNS) effects, blood disease, leukemia</td>
<td>Callahan, et al., 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td>Biodegradable</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Toluene: possible CNS effects, low toxicity</td>
<td>Doull, et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Xylene</td>
<td>Low bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xylene: irritant; teratogen</td>
<td>O’Connor and Kneip, 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CTET and chloroform</td>
<td>Low bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td>CTET and chloroform: liver, kidney, blood, and gastrointestinal disorders; liver and kidney cancer</td>
<td>Snyder, et al., 1984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Methylene chloride</td>
<td>Low bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td>Methylene chloride: possible CNS effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low molecular weight chlorinated hydrocarbons</td>
<td>Chloromethanes: carbon tetrachloride (CTET)</td>
<td>Volatile</td>
<td>Inhalation</td>
<td>All: CNS effects, liver toxicity</td>
<td>Callahan, et al., 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chloroform</td>
<td>Lipid-insoluble</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td>Tri- and tetrachloroethylene: liver cancer</td>
<td>Doull, et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>methylene chloride</td>
<td>Low bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stittg, 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trichloroethylene, tetrachloroethylene,</td>
<td>Volatile</td>
<td>Inhalation</td>
<td>Animal and human carcinogen; liver toxicity</td>
<td>Doull, et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tetrachloroethane</td>
<td>Lipid-insoluble</td>
<td>Drinking water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vinyl chloride</td>
<td>Low bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorobenzenes</td>
<td>Range of volatilities</td>
<td>Food (including seafood)</td>
<td>Hexachlorobenzene: carcinogen</td>
<td>Doull, et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lipid-soluble</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O’Connor and Kneip, 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Significant bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated pesticides</td>
<td>Cyclodiene pesticides: aldrin, dieldrin, heptachlor,</td>
<td>Nonvolatile</td>
<td>Food (including seafood)</td>
<td>Known or suspected human carcinogens; neurotoxic effects; chloracne and other skin diseases</td>
<td>Doull, et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chlor dane</td>
<td>High bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mrak, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DDt and metabolizes</td>
<td>Moderate to high toxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NAS, 1977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorinated phenoxyacetic compounds (2,4,5-T; 2,4-D)</td>
<td>Moderate to high toxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sittig, 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hexachlorocyclohexanes: lindane, BHC</td>
<td>Most are highly persistent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Walker, et al., 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High molecular weight chlorinated hydrocarbons</td>
<td>Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)</td>
<td>Nonvolatile</td>
<td>Food (including seafood)</td>
<td>All: neurological, liver, and skin disorders</td>
<td>Kimbrough, et al., 1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorinated dioxins (TCDD)</td>
<td>High bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td>PCBs: tumor promoters or carcinogens</td>
<td>Koibye and Carr, 1984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorinated dibenzofurans</td>
<td>Moderate to high toxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td>TCDD: highly carcinogenic</td>
<td>Murai and Juroiwa, 1971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic hydrocarbons</td>
<td>Phthalate esters (e.g., DEHP)</td>
<td>Nonvolatile</td>
<td>Food (including seafood)</td>
<td>Phthalates: many are teratogens</td>
<td>FDA, 1974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs)</td>
<td>High bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td>DEHP: possible carcinogen</td>
<td>Giam, et al., 1978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Highly insoluble</td>
<td></td>
<td>PAHs: many (e.g., benzo[a]pyrene) are carcinogens; some are teratoaens</td>
<td>MacLeod, et al., 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Range of bioaccumulation potential</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NAS, 1977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Low to moderate toxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See list of references at end of report.

Indeed, recent evidence shows such a decline along the west coast of the United States (340).

Direct exposure of humans to organic chemicals present in marine waters is possible in places where industrial discharges are located near bathing beaches. For example, a wastewater discharge from a New Jersey pharmaceutical firm, which enters marine waters about 2,500 feet from shore, has been identified in bioassays as the most mutagenic (57,519)." Indeed, recent evidence shows such a decline along the west coast of the United States (340).

Classes of Organic Chemicals

To simplify the evaluation of organic compounds, they can be classified on the basis of similarities in their chemical structure, physicochemical properties, or other characteristics. Some of these characteristics include:

- **Boiling point**: The temperature at which a compound changes from liquid to gas under standard atmospheric pressure.
- **Melting point**: The temperature at which a compound changes from solid to liquid under standard atmospheric pressure.
- **Density**: The mass of a substance per unit volume.
- **pH**: A measure of the acidity or basicity of a solution.
- **Molecular weight**: The mass of a molecule or chemical compound expressed in Daltons.

These characteristics can be used to group organic compounds into classes based on their physical and chemical properties. For example, hydrocarbons, alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, esters, and amides are all organic compounds that can be classified based on their chemical structure.
The PCB advisory for limited consumption of striped bass and bluefish applies to the coast and all the rivers and tributaries shown. Sale for human consumption of striped bass and American eel from most of these rivers is also prohibited.


Table 9 lists the primary classes of organic chemicals that have some potential for reaching humans and inducing adverse health effects. Chlorobenzenes, chlorinated pesticides, high molecular weight chlorinated organic compounds, and aromatic hydrocarbons are of major concern in marine environments due to their ability to bioaccumulate in organisms. While wastestreams containing many of these compounds are specifically prohibited from ocean dumping, the major pathway by which they enter marine environments is as trace contaminants in industrial wastewater effluents, sewage sludge and effluent, and dredging spoils.

Chlorobenzenes exhibit a range of volatilities and tissue solubilities (and therefore bioaccumulation potential), dependent primarily on the degree of chlorination. Of all the low molecular weight chlorinated hydrocarbons, chlorobenzenes pose the greatest risk of transport to humans through marine or terrestrial food chains.

Chlorinated pesticides are significant because of the high risk of human exposure through consumption of contaminated seafood. They strongly associate with organic matter and sediments, where they are readily available to marine organisms. Their high molecular weight and complex, chlorine-containing structures make these compounds very resistant to degradation by bacteria or the metabolic systems of higher organisms. This class of substances exhibits a range of toxicities, from several cyclodiene pesticides that show adverse effects at the lowest doses tested (682) to DDT and related compounds that have moderate toxicity to humans and laboratory animals. Most of these compounds are known or suspected carcinogens.

Chlorinated organic compounds include PCBs, dioxins, and dibenzofurans. These compounds generally share the same properties described for the chlorinated pesticides: low volatility, generally high bioaccumulation potential, strong ability to bind to organic matter and sediments, and high resistance to degradation by bacteria or the metabolic systems of higher organisms.

PCBs are actually a group of over 200 individual compounds possessing unique chemical and toxicological properties (494). PCBs are accumulated by marine organisms with very high efficiency. For example, one study found 85 to 95 percent assimilation of PCBs across the gut of striped bass (447). The ubiquity of PCBs in the environment and their extreme persistence and toxicity to marine and terrestrial organisms, led to a ban on their production in the United States in 1979.

Dioxins and dibenzofurans (the most well-studied of which are 2,3,7,8-tetrachlordioxin (TCDD) and 2,3,7,8-tetrachlordibenzo furan (TCDF)) are found as contaminants of numerous chemical preparations (467). Both sets of compounds are quite tissue-soluble, and are therefore easily bioaccumu-
lated to high levels. TCDD and TCDF are among the most toxic compounds known and can produce lethal effects at low doses in aquatic organisms and birds (191,365).

Aromatic hydrocarbons include phthalate esters, which are common contaminants in water, sediment, and marine organisms (72) as well as in various types of wastes, especially sewage (73). The most common are diethylhexyl phthalate (DEHP) and dibutyl phthalate (DBP). Phthalate esters have low water solubilities, tightly adsorb to sediment particles, and are not readily degraded through biological activity (72,541). Chronic effects from exposure to phthalate esters include reduced weight gain, enlarged livers and kidneys (381), and an increased incidence of liver cell cancers (274).

Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) are derived from petroleum and other chemical processes and constitute most of the ‘oil and grease regulated as a conventional pollutant under the Clean Water Act. Major sources to marine environments include spills and routine releases from ships, natural seepage, and municipal wastewater. Sewage sludge, dredged material, and runoff from urban areas (409). PAHs are readily adsorbed by suspended particulate and bottom sediments, where they persist and can accumulate to levels as high as 1 percent (10,000 parts per million) in highly industrialized areas such as New York Harbor (325).

Marine organisms, particularly mollusks, have a high potential for bioaccumulating PAHs, and they can achieve tissue levels far in excess of water concentrations and roughly comparable to sediment concentrations (409). Certain PAHs (e.g., benzo[a]pyrene and naphthalenes) can also biomagnify in higher level predators of the marine food chain (260). Disposal of wastes at sea is considered the most likely source of PAHs to marine waters; subsequent transport of PAHs to humans can then occur through the food chain (409). How seafood consumption compares to other sources of PAH exposure is not well-understood, however, so the significance of PAH contamination of seafood as a source of exposure to humans is uncertain.

HUMAN PATHOGENS

General Considerations

Essentially all wastes that are disposed of in the marine environment either contain microorganisms or have the potential to modify the microbial community at the disposal site. Among the microorganisms entering the marine environment through waste disposal, or induced to proliferate as a result of such activity, are a variety of human pathogens, microorganisms that are capable of inducing human disease (box M).

Human pathogens in the marine environment come primarily from discharges of raw sewage and from sewage sludge and wastewater effluent from sewage treatment plants. For example, it is estimated that about 40 million gallons of raw sewage are discharged daily into the Hudson and East Rivers of New York City. Pathogens are also found in domestic and commercial food wastes, animal wastes, and biological wastes from hospitals and laboratories, many of which are discharged to surface waters or sewage treatment plants. Where combined sewer systems are employed, overflows during times of heavy precipitation can also be a significant source of pathogens. In rural areas, most bacterial contamination comes from non-urban runoff, animal wastes, poor septic systems, and poorly treated sewage discharges. Finally, the marine environment itself is a source of pathogens, because some pathogens naturally occur and propagate in marine waters.

In the United States, the most important waste-borne agents of human disease are viruses and bacteria, with respect to both their concentrations in wastes and the environment, and the incidence of disease attributable to them. 10 Enteric

\[ \text{This discharge is scheduled to be halted in 1987 when a new secondary treatment plant is completed. (G.Lutz, New York City Department of Environmental Protection, pers. comm., 1.986)} \]

However, some part of the pathogens from other classes can be very important. The World Health Organization has indicated that the parasitic helminth Schistosoma is second only to malaria in causing disease and death in the tropics (2.32)
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
viruses are especially significant with respect to disposal of wastes in water, since they are ideally suited to be spread by contact with contaminated water (205).

**Pathways to Humans**

Both direct and indirect exposure pathways can be significant for pathogens because only a small number of organisms are required to induce disease, and because they can reproduce in wastes, contaminated media, or infected organisms. Several properties of pathogens are important in determining their potential to pose risks to human health.

**Survival**

A growing body of evidence indicates that some bacteria, including a number of known human pathogens, may persist in the marine environment for periods of many months or longer in a nonculturable, but virulent form (205, 366). For example, the agent responsible for an outbreak of cholera along the Gulf coast of Texas appears to have persisted for at least 5 years in coastal waters (35). In addition, many viruses and parasites are extremely resistant to environmental inactivation or destruction. Viruses and bacteria strongly adhere to particulate matter, which provides a degree of protection and increases their survival in sediments (183). Concentrations of enteroviruses may be 10 to 10,000 times greater in coastal sediments than in the overlying water; most pathogens are concentrated in the surface layers of bottom sediments (197). Subsequent dredging of these sediments may increase the concentrations and availability of human pathogens in the areas where dredging or disposal of dredged materials takes place (203, 204). 1

A number of human pathogens appear to survive better in estuarine and other coastal environments than in the open ocean (253). However, in some cases, the colder temperature of the open ocean, especially bottom waters beyond the continental shelf, can actually enhance the survival of some pathogens, although it also retards growth (16).

**Propagation**

Different classes of pathogens have different requirements for propagation. In the absence of an appropriate host, viral or parasitic propagation generally cannot occur, so there are no mechanisms available for increasing the number of viruses in sewage material or the marine environment; they can, however, become concentrated in sludge or sediment. Bacteria introduced through wastes have the potential to replicate and increase their numbers, but this potential has not been well-studied for most organisms. Some pathogenic bacteria that naturally occur in the marine environment are fully capable of propagation (e.g., certain species of *Vibrio*).

**Exposure and Infection**

For viruses and microorganisms present in the marine environment to exert an impact on human health, they must both reach and infect humans. The ability of microorganisms to infect humans depends on numerous factors, including the minimum infective dose. As few as 10 to 100 bacteria, or a single virus, are capable of inducing infection and disease under the appropriate conditions (205). Moreover, the tendency for viruses and bacteria to adhere to particulate matter increases the risk of exposure and infection in two ways: 1) survival is enhanced through the protection the particles provide; and 2) because particles literally serve to ‘collect’ viruses and bacteria on their surfaces, a single ingested particle can contain a large dose of microorganisms. The concentration of viruses and bacteria in sediments also increases the potential for their uptake by shellfish.

**Potential and Actual Human Health Impacts**

**Shellfish-Borne Disease**

Large areas of estuarine and coastal waters have been closed to shellfishing and/or finishing because they are contaminated with sewage-derived microorganisms in excess of Federal standards (see box N). While such closures have largely eliminated...
outbreaks of serious shellfish-borne, bacterial disease, including epidemics of typhoid and paratyphoid fever, they cause major economic impacts. In Washington, 21 percent of the shellfish-growing areas are closed and another 11 percent are only provisionally open because of bacterial contamination. Moreover, contamination appears to be increasing: six previously pristine areas in Puget Sound have been closed in the last 3 years (463). Fishing in many other areas has been restricted periodically due to sewage contamination (e. g., Boston Harbor, New York Harbor, and portions of Narragansett Bay, the Delaware River estuary, Chesapeake Bay, Mobile Bay, and San Francisco Bay).

Overall, the incidence of shellfish-borne disease is not decreasing in the United States and may be increasing (197). This trend largely involves increases in the number of outbreaks of viral disease...
Contamination of shellfish is a significant problem nationwide. The problem is growing, particularly in rapidly developing areas such as coastal portions of the Gulf of Mexico and southern Atlantic States.

(e.g., 80,367). For example, in the State of New York in 1982 alone, consumption of contaminated shellfish was identified as the cause of 103 different reported outbreaks of viral gastroenteritis involving over 1,000 people (367). Smaller outbreaks of more serious bacterial diseases also have been reported. In a series of apparently related cases stretching back over the last 14 years, several dozen people contracted cholera after consuming shellfish harvested from coastal marshlands in southwestern Louisiana (81,82). These represent the first indigenous outbreaks of cholera in the United States since 1911 (78).*2

Water-Borne Disease

While the implementation of water quality guidelines and sewage treatment requirements has substantially reduced the outbreaks of serious human diseases attributable to direct contact with polluted waters, bathing in sewage-impacted waters is responsible for relatively high rates of gastrointestinal illness in the United States. In fact, the number of outbreaks of water-borne disease, particularly nonbacterial diseases such as viral gastroenteritis and hepatitis, has been steadily increasing in recent decades (79, 197).*3 Recent epidemiologic evidence has shown that the incidence of gastrointestinal illness is significantly elevated in people

---

*2 The bacteria responsible for cholera are natural constituents of marine waters, their survival in these cases thought to be enhanced through cycles of 1) sewage contamination of marsh water, 2) shellfish contamination, 3) human infection from consumption of shellfish (in some cases inadequately cooked), and 4) human fecal excretion into sewage (35). The presence of the infective organism in marsh water, shellfish, and sewage from several downriver areas has been documented repeatedly (35, 82).

*3 Much of this type of illness goes unreported because outbreaks usually are not recognized as such and the underreporting significantly hinder accurate measurement of true incidence. Data on the incidence of water-borne diseases in general are distinguished between freshwater and marine waters.
swimming at several heavily used New York City beaches (63,641) and in Lake Pontchartrain in New Orleans, Louisiana (285). 14

Epidemics of serious bacterial disease, while rare, have been caused by swimming in sewage-contaminated water. For example, in 1974 an outbreak of shigellosis was traced to swimming in a stretch of the Mississippi River downstream of a secondary treatment plant. Fecal coliform counts in the river were almost 90 times higher than the Federal standard (489). Similarly, outbreaks of typhoid fever in Australia and Egypt have been caused by swimming in sewage-contaminated marine waters (205).

Scuba diving in contaminated marine waters can also lead to increased incidence of waterborne disease (1 13,192,205,435). These diseases include dermatitis, wound infections, and other skin-related ailments, as well as enteric illness. Under-reporting of such diseases is judged to be considerable (205).

**Shortcomings of Current Microbiological Standards**

Many observers have raised concerns about the adequacy of current efforts to control and monitor microbiological contamination of marine waters and resources. Three major shortcomings need to be addressed:

1. current standards designed to protect humans against microbiological agents in marine waters or seafood may be too lenient,
2. monitoring protocols are inadequate to detect periodic violation of the standards, and
3. standards based on use of fecal coliform indicators do not adequately measure pathogen survival.

Current techniques used to measure marine water quality are probably significantly underestimating the true number of viable pathogens that are entering the marine environment, for at least four reasons (205). First, coliform bacteria, which have been used to indicate sewage contamination of water for 75 years, generally are not pathogenic, and do not survive as well as other pathogenic bacteria or viruses (481). In fact, studies show that gastroenteritis associated with swimming (at least in marine waters) is better correlated with enterococcal bacteria than with coliforms (63,285,641). In addition, outbreaks of gastroenteritis have been associated with shellfish harvested from waters that were deemed acceptable using traditional indicators (451 ,700).

Second, existing standards use bacteria as indicators of contamination, while viruses appear to be the major cause of diseases resulting from exposure through both direct (swimming, diving) and indirect (seafood consumption) pathways (197). Third, current standards are based solely on water quality, while levels in sediments and shellfish are neither regulated nor routinely monitored. Yet sediments are probably an equal or more likely source of pathogens in shellfish (197).

Finally, increasing evidence suggests that bacteria (including certain human pathogens) introduced into the marine environment do not die off as rapidly as once believed, but remain viable for extended periods of time (e.g., months to years). These pathogens cannot be cultured in the laboratory and their presence cannot be detected using traditional tests, but they can be reactivated within a host organism (106,206). Thus, the apparent lack of human pathogens in the open ocean, especially at or near past sewage sludge disposal sites, may simply reflect our inability to detect these apparently viable, non-culturable pathogens (205).

The public health significance of the viable-but-not-culturable phenomenon is far from clear, however, and remains controversial. No definitive link has been established between the survival of bacterial pathogens through this mechanism and the occurrence of human disease. Moreover, because most disease related to exposure to marine waters or fish is caused by viruses rather than bacteria, the role that pathogenic bacteria in marine envi-

---

14These studies are significant because they demonstrate that not only can the presence of sewage-derived material in the marine environment result in human disease, but also that disease rates that are significant from a public health perspective can be difficult or impossible to discern in the absence of carefully performed, thorough (and expensive), epidemiologic studies.

15EPA has recently adopted enterococci as an indicator of microbiological water quality for marine recreational waters (664). It is not yet clear what influence adoption of the new standard and indicator will have on consideration of alternative indicators and standards for monitoring of the quality of shellfish and shellfish-harvesting waters (205).
environments play in human disease is probably of secondary importance.

The Effect of Treatment on Pathogenic Microorganisms

Sewage Treatment

Wastewater treatment results in the partitioning of waste constituents into sewage effluent and sludge. Wastewater treatment and subsequent sludge treatment processes can in many cases significantly reduce the numbers of some types of sewage microorganisms. However, the actual extent of reduction varies considerably from operation to operation, and among classes of microorganisms. A full discussion of this topic is included in chapter 9.

Chemical Disinfection of Wastewater Effluents

In most instances, bacteriological water quality standards for recreational and shellfish-growing waters are met by chemically disinfecting sewage effluent prior to discharge. Chlorination traditionally has been viewed as an effective and economical means to reduce levels of microorganisms in effluent. However, concerns have been raised that chlorinated hydrocarbons (e.g., chloroform) formed as byproducts of chlorination pose significant risks to organisms in the immediate vicinity of treatment plant discharges. One alternative to chlorination is the use of long deep-ocean outfalls such as those employed in southern California. These achieve water quality standards through dilution.

The effectiveness of either approach in reducing pathogen exposure risks is questionable, however, given the traditional use of coliforms as the standard indicator species and the growing evidence that bacteria discharged in sewage effluent may persist in marine waters in a viable but nonculturable form. Substantial data indicate that:

1. chlorination is more effective against coliforms than against pathogenic viruses or even numerous pathogenic bacteria;

2. pathogenic viruses and bacteria can survive significantly longer in the marine environment than can coliforms; and

3. chlorination may only temporarily inactivate, rather than destroy, microorganisms present in effluent (205,297).

These findings suggest that the routine discharge of sewage effluent and the dumping of sewage sludge into estuaries, coastal waters, and the open ocean may be introducing large numbers of viable microorganisms, including pathogens, and that their densities in both the water and sediments may be increasing. Further study of the public health consequences of these practices is needed, particularly in light of the increasing incidence of shellfish- and water-borne disease.

Land Application of Sewage Sludge

Because sewage sludge is applied to land as fertilizer and for reclamation purposes, the survival and availability of pathogens in the sludge is of considerable public health significance. Viruses, bacteria, and parasites can survive in soil for many days or months depending on soil temperature, pH, clay content, cation exchange capacity, surface area, moisture content, and organic content. Viable pathogens have been found, for example, in surface runoff from sludge-amended fields. However, there are no documented cases of human disease resulting from land application of treated sewage sludge, although untreated sewage-derived wastes have often been implicated in disease outbreaks (60,205,379). Land application and landfilling of treated sewage sludge appear to pose less potential health risks to humans than disposal in freshwater or estuarine environments.

Depuration of Shellfish

Some countries (e.g., Japan) allow or even encourage the culturing and harvesting of shellfish in sewage-contaminated water to take advantage of the nutritive content of such wastes. Prior to marketing, these shellfish are depurated (i.e., placed
in clean water for several days) to allow the shellfish to purge themselves of pathogens. This practice is controversial, however, because evidence indicates that deputation does not eliminate all pathogens, especially small bacteria or viruses such as the Hepatitis A virus (186,209,298,368,523).

These and other studies suggest that further systematic study of the health risks associated with various forms of deputation should be conducted prior to its use as an accepted means of decontaminating shellfish (205).
Chapter 7

Statutes and Programs Relating To
Marine Waste Disposal
CONTENTS

Introduction .................................................................143
Overview of the Existing Legislative and Regulatory Framework ..........143
   The Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act ......................146
   The Federal Water Pollution Control Act ..................................151
Key Issues Affecting Marine Waste Disposal Programs .....................156
   Industrial Effluents and Current Water Pollution Control Programs .....156
   Waterbody Management Programs .......................................157
   Information Programs ..................................................165
Appendix 1: Existing Waterbody Management Programs ....................169
Appendix 2: Federal Information and Monitoring Programs ................171

Tables

Table No. Page
11. Major Legislative Provisions Affecting Waste Disposal in Marine Waters 144
12. Selected Waterbody Management Programs ..........................160

Figures

Figure No. Page
26. Number of Archived Samples Per Year of Chlorinated Pesticides and Polychlorinated Biphenyls in Fish and Invertebrates From U.S. Marine Waters, 1945-85 ..............................168
27. Number of Waterbody Segments in Florida for Which Water Quality Monitoring Data Are Available, 1970-85 ..............................168
28. Total Federal Funding for the National Marine Pollution Program, Fiscal Years 1981-87 ................................................172
29. Federal Funding of Selected Activities Within the National Marine Pollution Program in Fiscal Year 1984 ................................173

Boxes

Box Page
O. Additional Federal Laws Affecting Marine Waste Disposal ............145
P. The Importance of the 1984 RCRA Amendments ..........................147
Q. Relevant International Conventions ......................................149
R. Comparison of Factors To Be Considered Before Issuing Permits Under MPRSA Section 102 and CWA Section 403 .........................150
S. Selected International Perspectives on Marine Waste Disposal .......158
Chapter 7
Statutes and Programs Relating To Marine Waste Disposal

INTRODUCTION

Federal efforts to control and manage marine waste disposal are relatively recent in origin, with most programs being less than two decades old. In 1970, three major government reports recommended that a national policy for controlling ocean waste disposal be developed (11,538,623). In response to these and to the general environmental concerns of the 1960s and early 1970s, Congress passed a suite of major statutes that provide the general legal structure currently used to regulate all waste disposal activities. One of the reports, the Council on Environmental Quality’s “Ocean Dumping—A National Policy” (115), became the primary basis for the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972 and for much of the policy developed throughout the decade for regulating marine disposal (377,420).

MPRSA and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (commonly referred to as the Clean Water Act, or CWA) are the two major statutes controlling waste disposal in marine environments. In general, the open ocean is reasonably well-protected as a result of MPRSA, but other areas of the marine environment remain more vulnerable. In particular, estuaries and other coastal waters, primarily regulated under CWA, have received less protection. In fact, a 1981 study by the National Advisory Committee on Oceans and Atmosphere (NACOA) concluded that the Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) report was responsible for the near total restriction of open ocean waste disposal (377). The NACOA report disagreed with this approach, and proposed that some wastes could be disposed of in marine waters under certain conditions. It recommended that a more comprehensive waste management strategy include greater use of the open ocean. This recommendation influenced an important 1981 court decision, City of New York v. United States Environmental Protection Agency (543 F. Supp. 1084) (155). The NACOA report and the court decision signaled a changing attitude toward the ocean, from relatively strict protection to carefully managed use (12,291,531).

OVERVIEW OF THE EXISTING LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

The major provisions of the two major statutes, MPRSA and CWA, are summarized in table 11. (A number of other statutes that also have some affect on marine waters are described briefly in box O.) MPRSA regulates the dumping of any material in the territorial sea (0 to 3 nautical miles), the contiguous zone (3 to 12 nautical miles), and beyond in the open ocean. It applies to dumping of U.S.-origin materials from all U.S. vessels, but it only applies to foreign vessels dumping foreign-origin materials within 12 miles of the U.S. coast. CWA regulates discharges from all point sources into all U.S. waters, including the territorial sea, the contiguous zone, and beyond. Although both laws establish procedures to administer regulatory permit programs, there are basic differences in their regulatory approaches to marine waste disposal. MPRSA requires the balancing of all relevant factors (e.g., socioeconomic factors, land-based alternatives, etc.), while CWA primarily relies on technological considerations, giving some attention to economic feasibility.

---

*Except discharges from vessels beyond the 3-mile boundary.
### Table 11 - Major Legislative Provisions Affecting Waste Disposal in Marine Waters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statute and section</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marine Protection Research, and Sanctuaries Act:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 101</td>
<td>Prohibits, unless authorized by permit, the transportation of wastes for dumping and/or the dumping of wastes into the territorial seas or the contiguous zones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 102</td>
<td>Authorizes EPA to issue permits for dumping of nondredged materials into the contiguous zone and beyond as long as the materials will not &quot;unreasonably degrade&quot; public health or the marine environment. Following criteria specified in statute or established by the Administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 103</td>
<td>Authorizes Corps of Engineers to issue permits for dumping dredged material, applying EPA's environmental impact criteria to ensure action will not unreasonably degrade human health or the marine environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 104</td>
<td>Specifies permit conditions for waste transported for dumping or to be dumped, issued by EPA or the Coast Guard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 107</td>
<td>Authorizes EPA and Corps of Engineers to use the resources of other agencies, and instructs the Coast Guard to conduct surveillance and other appropriate enforcement activities as necessary to prevent unlawful transportation of material for dumping or unlawful dumping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C/Can Water Act</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 104(n)</td>
<td>Directs EPA to establish national estuaries programs to prevent and control pollution; to conduct and promote studies of health effects of estuarine pollution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 104(q)</td>
<td>Establishes a national clearinghouse for the collection and dissemination of information developed on small sewage flows and alternative treatment technologies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 201, 202, 204</td>
<td>Specifies sewage treatment construction grants program eligibility and Federal share of cost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 208</td>
<td>Authorizes a process for States and regional agencies to establish comprehensive planning for point and nonpoint source pollution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 301</td>
<td>Directs States to establish and periodically revise water quality standards for all navigable waters; effluent limitations for point sources requiring BAT should be achieved by July 1, 1977; timetable for achievement of BAT and other standards set. Compliance deadlines for publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) to achieve secondary treatment also set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 301(h)</td>
<td>Authorizes waivers for POTWs in coastal municipalities from secondary treatment for effluent discharged into marine waters if criteria to protect the marine ecosystem can be met.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 301(k)</td>
<td>Allows industrial dischargers to receive a compliance extension from BAT requirements until July 1, 1987, for installation of an innovative technology, if it will achieve the same or greater effluent reduction than BAT at a significantly lower cost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 302</td>
<td>Allows EPA to establish additional water quality-based limitations once BAT is established, if necessary to attain or maintain fishable/swimmable water quality (for toxics, the NRDC v. EPA consent degree sets terms).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 303</td>
<td>Requires States to adopt and periodically revise water quality standards; if they determine that technology-based standards are not sufficient to meet water quality standards, they must establish total maximum daily loads and waste load allocations, and incorporate more stringent effluent limitations into Sec. 402 permits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 303(e)</td>
<td>Requires States to establish water quality management plans for watershed basins, to provide for adequate implementation of water quality standards by basin to control nonpoint pollution; Section 208 areawide plans must be consistent with these plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 304</td>
<td>Requires EPA to establish and periodically revise water quality criteria to reflect the most recent scientific knowledge about the effects and fate of pollutants, and to maintain the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of navigable waters, groundwater, and ocean waters and establish guidelines for effluent limitations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 304(b)</td>
<td>Outlines factors to be considered when assessing BPT and BAT to set effluent limitation guidelines, including accounting for &quot;non-water quality impact,&quot; age of equipment, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 305(b)</td>
<td>Sets State water quality reporting requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: 307</td>
<td>Sets new source performance standards for a list of categories of sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 307</td>
<td>Requires EPA to issue categorical pretreatment standards for new and existing indirect sources; POTWs required to adopt and implement local pretreatment programs; toxic effluent limitation standards must be set according to the best available technology economically achievable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 308</td>
<td>Requires owners or operators of point sources to maintain records and monitoring equipment, do sampling, and provide such information or any additional information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 309</td>
<td>Gives enforcement powers primarily to State authorities. Civil penalties, however, and misdemeanor sanctions can be issued by EPA in U.S. district courts for violation of the act, including permit conditions or limitations; EPA also is authorized to issue criminal penalties for violations of Sections 301, 302, 306, 307, and 308. EPA may take enforcement action for violations of Section 307(d) which introduce toxic pollutants into POTWs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 402</td>
<td>Establishes National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), authorizing EPA Administrator to issue a permit for the discharge of any pollutant(s) to navigable waters that will meet requirements of Sections 301, 302, 306, 307 and other relevant sections; States can assume administrative responsibility of the permit program.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.—Major Legislative Provisions Affecting Waste Disposal in Marine Waters—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statute and section</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 403</td>
<td>Directs EPA to establish Ocean Discharge Criteria as guidelines for permit issuance for discharge into territorial zone, the contiguous zone, and open ocean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 404</td>
<td>Directs Secretary of the Army to issue permits for dredged or fill material; EPA must establish criteria comparable to Section 403(c) criteria for dredged and fill material discharges into navigable waters at specified disposal sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 405</td>
<td>Requires EPA to issue sludge use and disposal regulations for POTWs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 504</td>
<td>Grants emergency powers to Administrator to assist in abating pollutant releases; establishes a contingency fund, and requires Administrator to prepare and publish a contingency plan to respond to such emergencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 505</td>
<td>Citizen suit provision allows citizens to bring civil action in district court against any person in violation of an effluent standard or limitation of an order by the Administrator for failing to perform a nondiscretionary act.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unless otherwise noted, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) is responsible for implementing Provision(s). Relevant Provisions of the recently enacted Water Quality Act of 1987, which reauthorized and amended the Clean Water Act, are discussed in box C and corresponding text.

Water quality standards are ambient standards designed to achieve certain uses of water; these now play a secondary role. Technology-based effluent standards are given the primary role and are designed to reduce pollutants so that ultimately all water is “fishable, swimmable.” Effluent standards are performance standards and specify the maximum permissible discharge of a pollutant from a type of source and usually specify the degree of technology to be used (“best available,” “best practical,” “reasonably available,” etc.), but not the particular method needed to comply. Effluent limitation guidelines, on the other hand, apply to individual sources and specify their particular performance levels. Water quality standards (Sec. 303) are now benchmarks by which to measure the success of the effluent standards in meeting clean water goals.

SOURCE: Office of Technology Assessment, 1987

**Box O.—Additional Laws Affecting Waste Disposal**

Although MPRSA and CWA are the statutes with profound effects on marine waste disposal, a number of other laws are also relevant, the amount of waste needing disposal or by regulating certain uses. The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) provide for the disposal of hazardous wastes generated by the air pollution control equipment. Other laws are discussed in box P, while other statutes are briefly described here.

The Clean Air Act Amendments (CAA) of 1977 (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) have indirectly resulted in the generation of large amounts of air pollution control sludges which have been marine wastes generated by the air pollution equipment. Effluent standards and air quality standards for stationary sources of air pollution are discussed in box P, while other statutes are briefly described here.

The Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA) of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.) provides Federal grants to States to develop coastal zone management plans for economic development and the protection of environmental and human uses of coastal areas. The CZMA of 1980 state that management policies should protect coastal natural resources. Amendments to CZMA in 1980 state that management policies should protect coastal natural resources (estuaries, beaches, and fish and wildlife habitat) and encourage area management plans for estuaries, bays, and harbors.

The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA) of 1980 (42 U.S.C. 9601 et seq.), better known as Superfund, was enacted to provide emergency response and cleanup capabilities for chemical spills and releases from hazardous waste treatment, storage, and disposal facilities. Its primary impact on marine waste disposal involves: 1) the identification of large numbers of hazardous waste sites in the coastal zone, with potential for movement of waste pollutants into marine waters; 2) the suggestion that some wastes created by remedial action at Superfund sites in dispersed ocean; and 3) provisions regarding the liability of ocean, incineration vessels (586).

The Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973 (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.) requires all Federal agencies and their permittees and licensees to ensure that their actions are not likely to jeopardize the existence of an endangered or threatened species or result in the destruction or adverse modification of critical habitats of such spe-
The Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act

Introduction

When passed in 1972, MPRSA became the first comprehensive legislation to regulate ocean dumping of all types of material that may adversely affect human health, the marine environment, or the economic potential of the ocean. MPRSA (33 U.S.C. 1401 et seq.) is the only pollution law exclusively devoted to the ocean and is the only law that explicitly requires consideration of alternative land-based disposal methods (Sec. 102(a)). In contrast, other statutes such as the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) typically regulate disposal in one environment without explicitly considering the consequences in other environments.  

1One major finding in the City of New York v. United States Environmental Protection Agency decision (543 F. Supp. 1084) was the court's interpretation that the Act requires EPA to balance the need for ocean dumping with potential environmental, social, and economic impacts of land-based disposal options.

2Under certain conditions, RCRA precludes land disposal without requiring that alternative disposal methods first be evaluated (box P).
Box P—The Importance of the 1984 RCRA Amendments

The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 (42 U.S.C. 6901 et seq.) defines and lists “hazardous” wastes and their control, transportation, storage, and disposal. Some hazardous wastes currently enter marine waters from disposal sites located on land but near estuaries or coastal waters, or as part of “indirect” industrial discharges into municipal treatment plants that subsequently discharge into these waters. EPA determines these “wastes” must be banned from land-based disposal unless they are designated as highly hazardous wastes. The California wastes include liquid hazardous wastes and sludges containing specified levels of metals, arsenic halogenated chemicals, PCBs, or highly acidic liquids. Underground injection of dioxins, solvents, and California wastes would stop by 1988, unless EPA finds that they can be safely disposed of in this way. For all other hazardous wastes, EPA is given deadlines of 44, 55, and 66 months to review and set standards for the most hazardous and highest volume wastes. If the first two deadlines are missed, the wastes are automatically banned from land-based disposal if adequate alternative disposal facilities exist.

These “hammer provisions” are intended to force the phasing out of land-based disposal for hazardous wastes. In many cases, EPA probably will find it difficult to meet the deadlines or to determine that land-based disposal is safe, so the provisions may effectively encourage alternatives such as physical and chemical treatment methods. These provisions also could lead to the consideration of marine disposal of hazardous wastes. For example, EPA’s preliminary study estimated that it might cause annual shortfalls in land-based treatment and disposal capacity of over 50 million gallons of certain solvents, dioxins, and California list wastes; based on the ocean dumping regulations, however, none of these would be legally acceptable for ocean dumping.

Under the first two titles of MPRSA, commonly referred to as the Ocean Dumping Act, four federal agencies have responsibilities: the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Corps of Engineers (COE), the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), and the Coast Guard. Title I of the Act authorizes EPA to designate specific ocean disposal sites, establishes a permit system for the use of such sites, and directs EPA to establish ocean dumping criteria based on specified factors. The permit system is administered under CWA through National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permits.
by EPA for all materials except for dredged material, which is under the jurisdiction of the Corps of Engineers, although EPA does retain review authority.

Title II requires EPA and NOAA to conduct research and monitoring on ocean dumping and to study alternative disposal methods. The Coast Guard is charged with maintaining surveillance of ocean dumping. Section 203 was amended in 1986 (as part of the Title 11 reauthorization of MPRSA included in the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, Public Law 99-272, Apr. 7, 1986) to direct EPA to cooperate with other appropriate government agencies to assess the feasibility of regional management plans for waste disposal in coastal areas. The plans would integrate all the waste disposal activities in an area into a comprehensive regional disposal strategy.

Title III of MPRSA gives the Secretary of Commerce authority to establish marine sanctuaries. Through the National Marine Sanctuary Program, marine areas as far seaward as the outer edge of the continental shelf, including inland waters, can be designated if this is determined necessary to preserve or restore an area for conservation, recreational, ecological, or esthetic purposes (Sec. 302). The designation of certain sanctuary sites has created controversy when it entailed prohibiting oil and gas development activities or conflicted with other economic interests (e.g., the creation of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary in California). Although this is an important program, it is not directly concerned with the control of disposal activities and thus is not discussed further in this report.

In 1974, MPRSA was amended so that all U.S. criteria covering the dumping of wastes in marine waters would be consistent with and contain all the basic constraints set forth in the London Dumping Convention (LDC) (box Q. In practice, however, a number of administrative and court actions have not always taken full account of the Convention's requirements (12,214,712).

Permitting — Sections 102 and 103

Section 102 of MPRSA authorizes the EPA Administrator to issue permits, following notice and opportunity for public hearings, for the transportation and dumping of nondredged material in ocean waters provided that it:

- will not unreasonably degrade or endanger human health, welfare, or amenities, or the marine environment, ecological systems, or economic potentialities.

The Administrator is further directed to establish Ocean Dumping Criteria, based on nine factors specified in the statute (box R), and use these to review permit applications for both dredged and nondredged material. The factors include the need for the proposed dumping; its effect on human health, the environment, and economic and recreational values; and alternative disposal options and their potential impacts.

In 1973, EPA issued final regulations that established these Ocean Dumping Criteria (40 CFR 227). The criteria reflected EPA's policy at that time of terminating all ocean dumping, even if the dumping could be shown not to "unreasonably degrade" the marine environment. EPA also established, however, "interim" and "special" permit procedures to allow the dumping of some materials prohibited by MPRSA. Emergency and research permits were also allowed. The criteria were not entirely consistent with LDC constraints when the United States became a signatory in 1974, which led to later revisions of the regulations and the Act. In 1977, EPA again revised the Ocean Dumping Criteria (42 FR 2462, Jan. 11, 1977), in part as a response to a case brought by an environmental group challenging the dumping regulations and permit criteria already promulgated by EPA (National Wildlife Federation v. Costle, often referred to as Costle I; 14 E. R.C. 1680 (D. C. Cir. 1980)) (420).

Section 103 of MPRSA authorizes the Secretary of the U.S. Army, acting through the Chief of Engineers of COE, to issue permits for the dumping of dredged material. Federal responsibilities under this section are bifurcated. COE applies criteria developed by EPA pursuant to the Section 102 environmental impact criteria. EPA has the authority to review the application before COE issues a permit and also has the authority to approve site designation. EPA initially exempted COE from several of the more stringent criteria and site designation and evaluation procedures generally applied to nondredged material permits. However,
Several international conventions affect marine waste disposal activities (165). The two most significant are the London Dumping Convention and the Oslo Convention. Some conventions (e.g., the Barcelona and Kuwait Conventions) were developed under the United Nations Regional Seas Programme, while other conventions and agreements (e.g., the Helsinki Convention, the Bonn Agreement, and MARPOL) were developed under other auspices.

The London Dumping Convention (LDC) of 1972, called “The Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter,” is the primary international agreement dealing with marine waste disposal and is binding on the United States. As a signatory nation, all U.S. criteria covering marine disposal must, at a minimum, be equivalent to and contain the basic constraints in the LDC. The LDC has been ratified by 61 countries, and the International Maritime Organization serves as the administrative mechanism for cooperation. The LDC’s jurisdiction includes all waters seaward of the inner boundary of the territorial sea.

The LDC prohibits dumping of “blacklist” substances defined in its Annex I (e.g., organohalogenics, mercury and mercury compounds, cadmium compounds, plastic oils and oily mixtures, radioactive materials, and agents of biological and chemical warfare) and allows dumping of “grey-list” substances defined in its Annex II only by specially approved dumping from either the flag State or the loading State.

The Oslo Convention of 1974, titled “The Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping from Ships and Airmail,” was the first international agreement to regulate the dumping and incineration of wastes at sea by most European countries. Discharges from rivers, estuaries, pipelines, and outfalls are not included. The jurisdiction of the Oslo Convention includes a portion of the Arctic Ocean, the northeastern Atlantic Ocean, and the North Sea. The Oslo Convention has black and grey lists for different pollutants, although the lists vary slightly from those of the LDC. The major difference between the two conventions is that the Oslo Convention has stricter limits for incineration at sea.

The Paris Convention was developed in 1978 by the signatory nations of the Oslo Convention to prevent marine pollution from land-based sources. Also, the contracting parties can adopt discharge standards and environmental quality standards regulating the composition and use of waste substances and products.

The Barcelona Convention for the Protection of the Mediterranean Sea Against Pollution (1978) was developed as part of the Regional Seas Programme of the United Nations Environment Programme. It addresses only dumping from aircraft, ships, and platforms, and pollution from land-based sources.

The Kuwait Convention entered into force in 1979 under the title “Kuwait Regional Conference on Plenipotentiaries on the Protection and Development of the Marine Environment of the Coastal Areas.” It is part of UNEP’s Regional Seas Programme and focuses on oil pollution from tankers, refineries, and petrochemical industries.

The Helsinki Convention, titled “The Convention on the Protection of the Marine Environment of the Baltic Sea Area,” was adopted in 1974 by the seven Baltic Sea States and came into force in 1980. It is the first international marine protection convention that encompasses all pollution sources, including nonpoint agricultural runoff, and it has resulted in some reduction in ocean dumping.

The Bonn Agreement, the 1969 “Agreement for Cooperation in Dealing with Pollution of the North Sea by Oil,” is the first regional agreement to promote the development of contingency plans for responding to oil spills and other similar types of accidents.

The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (1973 and Protocols of 1978), often referred to as MARPOL 73/78, attempts to reduce pollution by prohibiting discharges from ships; currently, additional annexes control substances such as nondegradable plastics, noxious liquids in bulk, and sewage are being considered for adoption.

The Regional Seas Programme of the United Nations Environment Programme encourages international cooperation to abate marine pollution and protect living marine resources. More than 120 coastal nations are part of the Programme, grouped into 10 regions. Each region develops “action plans” that delineate areas of cooperation and adopts conventions which provide legal frameworks for activities in the region. Note that the United Nation’s Law of the Sea Convention, of which the United States is not a signatory, is potentially relevant to ocean dumping practices but is not yet in force.
the different treatment of dredged and nondredged material was successfully challenged in court in National Wildlife Federation v. Costle (often referred to as Costle 11; 629 F.2d 118 (D.C. Cir. 1980)). The court held that EPA must consider all Section 102(a) criteria in developing regulations, but that it is not bound to apply all criteria to every permit decision or to every type of waste material.\footnote{Prior to 1974, under Sec. 103(d), COE could apply to EPA for a waiver of the environmental impact criteria. Only one waiver was ever applied for and it was not granted; the 1974 amendments to MPRSA prohibited EPA from issuing such waivers.}

The Continuance of Ocean Dumping and the City of New York Decision

Throughout most of the 1970s, EPA invoked a policy of phasing out all ocean dumping and encouraging municipal and private dumpers to seek land-based alternatives. In 1977, Congress statutorily mandated phasing out all “harmful” sewage dumping by December 1981 and later imposed a similar deadline for terminating the dumping of industrial wastes. These stringent deadlines were set primarily because several severe marine pollution incidents in the mid-1970s had heightened pub-
lic awareness of actual and potential adverse health and environmental impacts from marine disposal.

The 1981 deadlines for phasing out dumping of harmful sewage sludge and industrial waste initially seemed a way to bring an end to ocean dumping. In fact, since 1973 about 319 permits or permit applications have been withdrawn, phased out, or denied. Some large municipalities (e.g., Philadelphia) ceased dumping sewage sludge in the ocean.

In 1981, New York City brought suit against the EPA to stop implementation of the regulations. In City of New York v. United States Environmental Protection Agency, the Federal District Court in New York ruled that dumping of municipal sewage sludge in the New York Bight could not be banned without full consideration of the costs and environmental consequences of alternative disposal methods. According to the court, EPA’s conclusive presumption that many materials which fail ocean environmental impact criteria will unreasonably degrade the environment was arbitrary and capricious. Many factors, including the environmental and socioeconomic impacts of alternative disposal options, also needed to be considered when analyzing the acceptability of a given disposal alternative. The decision granted New York City and several other sewerage authorities in New York and New Jersey permission to continue dumping sludge on an interim basis, even though MPRSA did not allow interim permits to be granted after December 31, 1981. Thus, the court decision effectively postponed the December 1981 deadline.

The interim permit procedure under Section 102 has been considered by some observers to be a ‘substantial loophole’ which allows the dumping of materials that do not meet ocean disposal criteria (12,2 14), even though the justification for interim permits was to provide time for research and the development of alternative, land-based options. Twenty-two interim permits had been granted by 1980. After 1981, fewer than 10 such permits remained in effect, but the terms of these permits were extended (291). The amount of sewage sludge dumped in marine waters steadily increased during this time, while the disposal of industrial wastes declined dramatically (531). A number of cities, including Philadelphia, Boston, Washington, D.C., Seattle, and San Francisco have indicated that they would consider ocean dumping as a potential disposal option in the future if it was permitted.

EPA did not appeal the 1981 court decision. In light of the decision and various arguments that a total ban on marine waste disposal was unnecessary and perhaps counterproductive (377), EPA began to focus on developing a more comprehensive management strategy. EPA is still in the process of promulgating new regulations based on the decision. Major questions remain, however, about how much analysis will be required when the economic and technical feasibility and environmental soundness of alternative options are considered. It is also unclear how decisions will be made when alternatives to marine disposal of sludge are not environmentally superior or readily implemented (291,502). The philosophical shift from ocean protection to management is not yet incorporated into MPRSA, but amendments passed by the House of Representatives in 1985 showed some movement in that direction (H. R. 1985).

The Federal Water Pollution Control Act

The Federal Government has played a role in the abatement of water pollution since the turn of the century. Initially, the Federal role was limited to offering assistance to the States in cases that involved interstate waters. This role has gradually increased over the last several decades: today’s Federal Water Pollution Control Act, the Clean Water Act (CWA) (33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.), has jurisdiction over all U.S. waters, establishes standards for industries and municipalities, and contributes billions of dollars to the construction of municipal waste treatment plants.

When enacted in 1972, CWA was the most comprehensive and expensive environmental legislation to date. It set the ambitious goal of eliminating all discharges of water pollutants by 1985, and had an interim objective, where possible, of making the Nation’s waters “fishable and swimmable” by 1983. Major revisions were made in 1977 and 1981, which among other things modified these deadlines. The Water Quality Act of 1987 further amended the act (see box C in ch. 1).
The primary purpose of CWA is to restore and maintain the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of U.S. water resources. To accomplish this, Congress established a combined Federal and State system of controls to implement water programs. CWA consists of two major parts: the Federal grant program to help municipalities build sewage treatment plants (Title II); and the pollution control programs, which consist of regulatory requirements that apply to industrial and municipal dischargers. Responsibility for implementing and administering CWA programs is delegated to States that can demonstrate that they have the legal authority and resources to do so.

NPDES and the National Pretreatment Program—Sections 402 and 307

Under Section 402, all facilities—industrial and municipal-discharging directly into the navigable waters of the United States are required to obtain a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit. “‘Direct’ discharges regulated under NPDES must:

1. comply with applicable effluent limitations;
2. not result in violation of applicable water quality standards; and
3. for marine discharges, comply with the Ocean Discharge Criteria (Sec. 403).

Industrial effluent limitations are based on national guidelines developed by EPA for major industrial categories. Municipal effluent limitations are based primarily on requirements to provide “secondary” levels of treatment (ch. 9).

Section 307 established the National Pretreatment Program (40 CFR 403.5), which authorizes and mandates municipalities operating publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) to develop a pretreatment program capable of regulating industrial discharges into municipal sewers (“indirect” discharges). General pretreatment standards prohibit the discharge of pollutants that can create a fire or explosion, or damage or interfere with POTW operations. Categorical pretreatment standards have also been developed for major industrial categories; these are intended to remove pollutants that might otherwise pass through POTWs into U.S. waters.

Implementing the NPDES and pretreatment programs has affected marine waste disposal in at least two major ways. First, it has resulted in the generation of large quantities of treatment sludges, some of which have been considered for marine disposal—particularly municipal sludges. Second, it provides direct control over the discharge of pollutants from point sources to marine environments, or to other bodies of water that eventually reach marine waters.

Types of Pollutants Regulated.—When first adopted, CWA focused primarily on the control of highly visible conventional pollutants such as suspended solids and, as added later, oil and grease. There was, however, increasing recognition of the serious impacts associated with the discharge of non-conventional and toxic pollutants. The development of a list of so-called toxic “priority pollutants, resulting from settlement of a suit (commonly known as the ‘Flannery Decree’) brought against EPA by the Natural Resources Defense Council (NRDC), reflected this growing concern.

This list was incorporated into CWA in the 1977 amendments. Pollutants listed were to be the first toxic pollutants for which EPA would develop pollution control standards.

Types of Standards Governing Pollutant Discharges.—Each NPDES permit contains effluent limitations on specific pollutants that are present...
the different treatment of dredged and nondredged material was successfully challenged in court in National Wildlife Federation v. Cosde (often referred to as Costle I; 629 F.2d 118 (D.C. Cir. 1980)). The court held that EPA must consider all Section 102(a) criteria in developing regulations, but that it is not bound to apply all criteria to every permit decision or to every type of waste material.4

4 Prior to 1974, under Sec. 103(d), COE could apply to EPA for a waiver of the environmental impact criteria. Only one waiver was ever applied for and it was not granted; the 1974 amendments to MPRSA prohibited EPA from issuing such waivers.

The Continuance of Ocean Dumping and the City of New York Decision

Throughout most of the 1970s, EPA invoked a policy of phasing out all ocean dumping and encouraging municipal and private dumpers to seek land-based alternatives. In 1977, Congress statutorily mandated phasing out all “harmful” sewage dumping by December 1981 and later imposed a similar deadline for terminating the dumping of industrial wastes. These stringent deadlines were set primarily because several severe marine pollution incidents in the mid-1970s had heightened pub-
in the discharge. These effluent limitation standards are either technology-based, as set forth in Sections 301 and 304, or water quality-based, as set forth in Section 302. Technology-based standards are derived from estimates of the removal of pollutants that could be achieved through application of best practicable technology (BPT), best available technology (BAT), or best conventional technology (BCT). EPA or a State with an approved NPDES program is responsible for translating the applicable standards into specific effluent limitations on a permit-by-permit basis.

The 1972 CWA (Sec. 307(a)(2)) mandated that EPA establish toxic effluent standards based on health and environmental considerations such as water quality (567). For a variety of reasons, including lack of needed scientific information, only six toxic effluent standards of this type were ever developed (177). The 1977 amendments, largely through the incorporation of the Flannery Decree, further directed EPA’s efforts toward the development of technology-based standards. These standards are derived by estimating the extent of pollutant removal accomplished through use of a particular level of control technology.

The legislation required the use of increasingly stringent control technology. For existing sources discharging directly to U.S. waters, BPT primarily designed to control conventional pollutants was to be employed initially; later, BAT was to be introduced for toxic and non-conventional pollutants and BCT for further reduction of conventional pollutants (Secs. 301 and 304). For new sources, compliance with new source performance standards (NSPS) equivalent to BAT/BCT was mandated (Sec. 306). Indirect dischargers using municipal sewers were required to comply with pretreatment standards for existing sources (PSES) and pretreatment standards for new sources (PSNS), which were analogous to BAT and NSPS, respectively.

Since the 1977 CWA Amendments, EPA has promulgated BPT, BAT, BCT, NSPS, and pretreatment standards for most of the primary industries. Industrial sources were originally to have achieved BPT by July 1, 1977 and BAT/BCT by July 1, 1984. However, final compliance dates for many of these standards have yet to be reached (ch. 8).

CWA retained provisions to allow the development of water quality-based standards. Section 303 requires States to set water quality-based standards for their waters. If a permitted discharge is likely to violate these standards, Section 302 requires that water quality-based effluent limitations be incorporated into the discharge permit to ensure achievement of the standards. Several States with approved NPDES programs have instituted a number of innovative approaches to water quality-based permitting (130).

Dredged Material Disposal—Section 404

The disposal of dredged material in U.S. waters is regulated by several statutes (582). Under the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899, COE has authority to regulate any activity in rivers and coastal waters which could directly interfere with their navigability. Although much of the law has been superseded by CWA and other laws, COE still uses this authority, for example, to regulate dredge and fill activities beyond the 3-mile limit. As noted above, Section 103 of MPRSA controls the dumping of dredged material in coastal waters and the open ocean. The discharge of dredged or fill material is regulated under Section 404 of CWA.

The 404 program is complicated and somewhat controversial (572,582). COE evaluates permit applications using guidelines developed jointly with EPA, and in light of review comments by EPA, the Fish and Wildlife Service, the National Marine Fisheries Service, and the States. EPA can veto any proposed sites for dredged or fill material disposal. Where COE’s jurisdictions under Section 103 of MPRSA and Section 404 of CWA overlap in the territorial sea, COE typically issues an ocean dumping permit.

Provisions Specific to Marine Waters

The Ocean Discharge Criteria.—Section 403 of CWA requires that all NPDES-permitted discharges from point sources into certain marine environments—the territorial seas, the contiguous zone, or the open oceans—must not “unreasona-
bly degrade the marine environment” (225). Under this delineation, marine waters shoreward of the baseline are excluded, and thus the criteria do not apply to discharges into estuaries and coastal waters such as Chesapeake Bay, New York Harbor, and Puget Sound (45 FR 65944, Oct. 3, 1980). Section 403 only began receiving dedicated funding in fiscal year 1987. EPA, however, is considering applying the criteria to estuaries and other waters inside the baseline of the territorial sea. Given that the criteria are considered relatively stringent, this could provide an additional level of protection for these waters.

The ocean dumping and ocean discharge regulations (40 CFR 227 and 40 CFR 125, respectively) rely on similar data and require similar decisions, but for different activities. This has led some observers to argue that the criteria should at least be consistent (377). The main differences between the two sets of criteria is that MPRSA has additional requirements to consider the need for the proposed dumping and to use locations, when possible, beyond the edge of the continental shelf (see box R).

Waivers from Secondary Treatment.—Section 301(h) of CWA exempts qualified POTWS that discharge into marine waters from the requirement to achieve secondary treatment; yet, it still requires monitoring, implementation of existing pretreatment requirements, and compliance with existing water quality standards. EPA adopted final amended rules in 1982 (47 FR 53666, Nov. 26, 1982), and a total of 208 applications were received by the administering EPA regional offices. By January 1987, EPA had approved 46 applications; another 125 applications were withdrawn or denied, and no final action had been taken on the remain-

Provisions Addressing Comprehensive Waste Management in Estuaries and Coastal Waters

A number of statutory provisions potentially bear on estuaries and coastal waters. Currently, 21 programs—under 8 different statutes administered by 11 different Federal agencies—affect these waters in some way (670). Clearly, efficient management of estuaries and coastal waters requires careful integration and coordination of these various programs. Several provisions of CWA address or could address long-term planning and management efforts in estuaries and coastal waters:

- estuarine programs (Sec. 104),
- estuarine management conferences, and
- area-wide planning (Sees. 208 and 303).

National Estuary Program—Section 104.—CWA is the primary statute governing pollution in estuarine and coastal marine environments. Section 104(n) directs EPA—through appropriate coordination of interagency, intergovernmental, and public and private sectors—to conduct comprehensive studies on the effects of pollution on estuaries and estuarine zones. EPA was directed to coordinate interstate pollution abatement and management in the waterbodies and to transfer funds to NOAA to develop a comprehensive water quality sampling program. To carry out these responsibilities, EPA created the Office of Marine and Estuarine Protection (OMEP) and NOAA created the National Estuarine Program.

Appropriations were first made in fiscal year 1985, when $4 million was designated as part of Public Law 99-160 for water quality research, monitoring, and assessments in four waterbodies: Long Island Sound, Narragansett Bay, Buzzards Bay, and Puget Sound. This initiative has since been known as the National Estuary Program (NEP). Additional waterbodies—San Francisco Bay and the Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds in North Carolina—were added to NEP in April 1986. The 1986 budget was $5.6 million. The Water Quality Act of 1987 authorized additional funding and provided more direction for NEP (ch. 1).
A Comprehensive Master Environmental Plan is being developed for each waterbody. Ideally, each plan will address the control of point and nonpoint sources of pollution, implementation of environmentally sound land-use practices, the control of freshwater input and removal, and the protection of living resources and pristine areas. In addition, the plans are supposed to delineate public participation and monitoring programs, and identify personnel and funding needs. The focus of the Federal effort is on planning and management; given statutory limits, implementation of the plans will generally be left to local or State authorities. In most cases, this means that EPA supports the efforts of a particular local or State planning or management agency, rather than serving as the lead agency for an area.

In some areas, however, the coordination between Federal and State efforts has not been entirely smooth. In the Puget Sound region, for example, programs of the State of Washington and of EPA Region 10 currently are separate, but loosely coordinated. One source of contention is that EPA has kept control of the $1.4 million received by the area from the Federal Government and restricted the participation of all other agencies to “review and comment.” The Puget Sound Water Quality Authority contends that greater Federal-State coordination in deciding on the priorities for spending these moneys will be needed to avoid having the two programs operate in different directions (K. Skinnarland, Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, pers. comm., 1986).

Drawing on experience with the Chesapeake Bay and Great Lakes Programs, EPA has developed a draft manual that will provide guidance on the development of comprehensive management plans for current and future sites. In a related effort, EPA’s Near-Coastal Waters Strategic Planning Initiative is identifying implementation options that EPA could pursue to better control point and nonpoint sources, protect living resources, and manage land use in and around estuaries and coastal waters (670).

Estuarine Management Conferences.—The Water Quality Act of 1987 authorized EPA to convene management conferences to solve pollution problems in estuaries. The conferences would be authorized to:
1. collect data on toxics and other pollutants within an estuary,
2. develop comprehensive conservation and management plans that recommend priority corrective actions and compliance schedules to control point and nonpoint sources of pollution,
3. monitor for program effectiveness, and
4. develop plans for intergovernmental coordination for implementation.

Arealwide Planning—Section 208 and 303.—Two existing sections of CWA address regional or areawide planning and can be applied to estuary management. The intent of Section 208 is to link various water pollution control requirements on the basis of watersheds, primarily to control nonpoint source pollution. Section 303(e) provides for a Continuing Planning Process by States and is another regional approach to water quality management. This provides for coordination with Section 208 and emphasizes better implementation of water quality standards.

Under Section 208, an agency of local governments is selected by the governor(s) of the State(s) to coordinate regional planning. The emphasis has frequently been on controlling nonpoint sources and linking their control with controls on wastewater and storm discharges. This involves coordinating State and local efforts, with at least partial guidance and funding by the Federal Government. However, the program encountered numerous problems resulting from disagreements among State and local officials over authority for implementation, discontinuity in funding levels, inadequate technical information on nonpoint pollution, and delays by EPA in issuing rules and guidelines (88, 557, 570, 699). Section 208 funding was terminated in 1981, although some funds for areawide planning continue to be distributed under Section 203(j) of CWA.

1 The Water Quality Act of 1987 included a provision that would require the inclusion of proposed treatment works in areawide Sec. 208 and Sec. 303(e) plans. The act also included a provision that would establish a program for management of nonpoint sources of pollution. The program would provide $400 million for 4 years to States to develop nonpoint source management programs.
Section 208 plans have been developed for some coastal areas. In San Francisco Bay, for example, a regional body (the Association of Bay Area Governments) received Section 208 funding and produced a comprehensive Environmental Management Plan in the late 1970s. The plan covered air, water, and solid waste management for the Bay, and called for, among other things, establishing a research program to improve monitoring and understanding of pollutant impacts in the Bay. As a result, in 1982 the San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board adopted the Aquatic Habitats Program Plan to assess pollutant effects in the San Francisco Bay/Delta estuary (R. H. Whitsel, California Regional Water Quality Control Board, pers. comm., November 1986; also see app. 1). In the Puget Sound area, the Washington Department of Ecology used Section 208 funding to develop a dairy waste management plan. In the Chesapeake Bay watershed, both Sections 208 and 303(e) were used to prepare and adopt a number of river basin plans to help alleviate water quality problems; these programs, however, have achieved only limited success (168).

KEY ISSUES AFFECTING MARINE WASTE DISPOSAL PROGRAMS

The most important findings and policy options discussed in this report relate to the need to improve current water pollution control programs, the need for and desirability of more comprehensive management in estuaries and coastal waters, and the great need for information in these areas (ch. 1). Three sets of issues are critical to understanding these findings and options and to the development of sound marine waste disposal management:

1. issues associated with the management of industrial effluents under current water pollution control programs,
2. issues related to the effectiveness of existing comprehensive waterbody management programs, and
3. issues related to the status and needs of relevant information programs.

Industrial Effluents and Current Water Pollution Control Programs

OTA's analysis of current water pollution control programs discovered several key problems related to the adequacy of the regulatory framework for controlling point source pollution. These issues are briefly summarized here and discussed in detail in chapter 8.

Delays in Program Implementation. — Federal regulations for some significant industrial categories have yet to be promulgated or have compliance dates that have not yet been reached, and enforcement actions cannot be taken until compliance dates have been reached. Incomplete and inconsistent identification and permitting of dischargers is also a widespread problem. Finally, some POTWs have been slow to develop pretreatment programs and have them approved by States or EPA, and thus many indirect industrial dischargers remain essentially unregulated.

Gaps and Deficiencies in Program Coverage. — For a variety of reasons, several significant industrial categories and many toxic pollutants—both priority and nonpriority—remain unregulated under the current framework. Moreover, the incorporation of new or upgraded effluent limits even for regulated pollutants and regulated industries has been sporadic and slow. Finally, only marginal development and use of water quality-based standards for toxic pollutants has occurred.

Inadequacy of Regulatory Compliance and Enforcement. — Problems in three major areas exist:

1. the quality and completeness of data submitted by dischargers;
2. the extent of noncompliance with effluent standards or other permit requirements; and
3. the extent, timeliness, and effectiveness of enforcement actions taken in response to violations.

Additional Issues Facing the Pretreatment Program. — Other issues that must be addressed include the potential for conflict between the need for local control and national consistency; the lack of incentives for full implementation and enforce-
ment of pretreatment programs; and the adequacy of controls over the legal discharge of hazardous waste into sewers.

**Waterbody Management Programs**

One key finding of this report is that estuaries and coastal waters are in need of further protection if even the current level of water quality is to be maintained. Several recently established programs are attempting to provide more comprehensive and coordinated management of estuaries and coastal waterbodies. This section briefly illustrates the general approaches, capabilities, and deficiencies of several of these "waterbody management" programs, including some non-Federal programs.\(^1\)

A variety of local, State, and national programs exist to manage estuaries and coastal waterbodies (table 12 and app. 1). Some programs address only one waterbody, while others address multiple areas. The Chesapeake Bay Program, for example, focuses on a single estuary, while the National Estuary Program currently is conducting activities in six areas. Programs are also initiated at various levels of government. For example, some programs are initiated primarily by the Federal Government (e.g., the Chesapeake Bay Program), while others are initiated by the States (e.g., Puget Sound Water Quality Authority), or by local authorities (e.g., the Southern California Coastal Waters Research Project).

Regardless of the level at which a program is initiated, a number of agencies from different levels of government are likely to be involved in implementation. The Federal EPA and State environmental protection departments generally are involved in various aspects of a program. In addition, other Federal agencies (e.g., COE, NOAA, Fish and Wildlife Service), their counterparts at the State level, and various municipal and county authorities (e.g., port districts, sewage authorities) can have specific responsibilities or interests in managing the water quality of estuarine or coastal waters. The Puget Sound Water Quality Authority (PSWQA), for example, involves the coordination of many State, regional, and local government agencies (464,5 13).

Waterbody management programs are designed to serve a variety of functions and their structures vary accordingly (table 12). The wide variety of programs is understandable. Some programs are designed primarily to share information about research needs or findings; some are given decision-making authority only for distributing research funds; others have clear goals for improving water quality and have authority for planning and/or coordination.

For example, the Southern California Coastal Waters Research Project (SCCWRP) focuses its research on the environmental effects of marine disposal of municipal wastes; in contrast, the Aquatic Habitat Institute (for San Francisco Bay) directs its research to facilitate coordination of the efforts of other regional, State, and Federal agencies in the area. For the Chesapeake Bay, all these functions—research, planning, and program coordination—are the responsibility of one management body, the Chesapeake Bay Program.

At least two broad needs must be met by any program designed for the management of waterbodies: 1) it must possess sufficient statutory and regulatory authority to carry out its assigned functions, and 2) it must have the ability to coordinate other agencies and programs already involved in some aspect of managing the waterbody. Since numerous Federal, State, and local programs and agencies are typically involved in the management of individual waste types and/or sources for a given waterbody, it is essential that the various programs be informed of each other's actions and that lines of authority and jurisdiction be clearly defined.

Within these two general areas of need, a number of specific functions can be performed by a program, including:

- **Planning:** Includes setting priorities among pollution sources, waste types, or pollutants; setting goals and target dates for their achievement; scheduling research and other programmatic activities; and planning the allocation of resources.
- **Initiating research and establishing data requirements:** Includes identification of research needs, and initiation and coordination of re-

\(^1\) It does not attempt to evaluate the successes and failures of the selected programs, to identify all existing programs, or to identify geographic areas in great need of such programs. Box S describes some selected international perspectives on waterbody management.
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted. If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.

Brazil also has attempted to tackle some specific marine pollution problems, for example in the Santos Estuary, one of the most polluted estuaries in the world. Santos is a major port and tourism area, located downstream from Sao Paulo (a city of 15 million people) and Cubatao, major industrial area. The Santos Estuary receives raw sewage from Sao Paulo and industrial and hydroelectric powerplant discharges from Cubatao. High levels of oxygen-demanding substances, phenols, metals (e.g., copper and zinc), and pesticides have been detected in the water, and metals and pesticides have been found in sediments. Some observers suggest that the chronic pollution of the estuary could cause a total collapse of its ecosystem.

In 1983, the Brazilian environmental agency (CETESB) established the Program for Environmental Pollution Control to survey pollution sources, inventory emissions to the estuary, and develop environmental control plans for each industrial source in Cubatao. Public participation has been encouraged throughout the process; for example, CETESB held quarterly public meetings to discuss progress of the plans. Thus far, measurable emission reductions of different pollutants (as well as improved air quality) have been recorded. The program is particularly noteworthy for its development and use of epidemiological studies, biological methods and criteria for assessing toxicity, and models for evaluating environmental risks (196).

search to support the management program; conducting ambient monitoring and establishing databases.
- Obtaining and allocating funding: Includes obtaining and allocating financial resources for research, planning, and other program activities.
- Implementation: Includes integrating and coordinating basinwide cleanup efforts, for both water quality and resource management (e.g., through the use of management committees).
- Establishing public participation: Includes developing and implementing effective mechanisms for public education and participation in decisionmaking.

Critical Function: Planning

One of the central features of most waterbody programs is planning. It can involve research planning or management planning, both of which may include establishing goals for improving water quality and setting priorities for action. Almost all programs are involved in research planning. For example, programs such as SCCWRP and the Aquatic Habitat Institute are oriented primarily towards research. Some programs are involved in both kinds of planning. For example, the Chesapeake Bay Program (CBP) emphasizes comprehensive management for the Bay estuarine system. The Great Lakes Program, which was the first comprehensive waterbody management program, and CBP, which is the oldest estuarine management program, are serving as models for the development of the National Estuary Program (NEP). NEP is attempting to identify conditions and trends in the systems and develop comprehensive plans for selected estuaries and coastal waters. Management committees are established in each selected NEP area to carry out the planning function.

The Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority (GCWDA) is a program that falls somewhere between a research-oriented regional program and a comprehensive management plan. Its focus is on planning and developing regional facilities for treatment of industrial and municipal wastewater, hazardous wastes, municipal solid wastes, and sludge. It also provides technical assistance to area industries (ref. 2 15; L. Goin, GCWDA, pers. comm., 1986).

Despite variation among existing programs, certain planning elements are generally necessary. For example, four factors are associated with the Chesapeake Bay Program’s success thus far:

1. Preliminary research: The effort began by conducting research which was then synthesized and used along with other Bay studies to understand the conditions and trends of the Bay and the sources of pollutants; this scientific information on the Bay’s ecological con-
Table 12.—Selected Waterbody Management Programs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program features</th>
<th>Chesapeake Bay Program</th>
<th>Puget Sound Water Quality Authority</th>
<th>Great Lakes Program</th>
<th>Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority</th>
<th>Southern California Coastal Water Research Project</th>
<th>San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board</th>
<th>Aquatic Habitat Institute</th>
<th>National Estuary Program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January purpose</td>
<td>Overall Federal-State efforts to control point and nonpoint source pollution to the Bay</td>
<td>State agency to study and report on impacts of pollution on marine and human life; and to devise plan for management whose recommendations are binding on other State and local agencies</td>
<td>Federal-State effort to control point and nonpoint pollution of Great Lakes and basin area, emphasis on toxic pollution; primary activity is research and monitoring</td>
<td>Multi-county unit to control point sources by constructing regional treatment plants to abate pollution of Houston Ship Channel and Galveston Bay</td>
<td>Primarily local research program to study and monitor impacts of municipal and other point source discharges on marine life in coastal waters of southern California</td>
<td>State's regional board for water resources control in SF Bay area, oversees programs (e.g., Aquatic Habitat Program) to monitor municipal and other point source discharges</td>
<td>Quasi-public organization, conducts independent research on S.F. Bay resources. Also coordinates other research efforts, conducts public education and enforcement</td>
<td>Federal program to study water quality and pollution effects in selected estuarine waters; coordinates efforts with other Federal, State, and local agencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funding</td>
<td>● EPA ● Maryland ● Virginia ● Pennsylvania ● Other Federal agencies</td>
<td>● State of Washington</td>
<td>● EPA (Federal) ● Counties ● Pollution Control Board ● Fees and service charges from dischargers</td>
<td>● Joint Points Agreement (Commission Members) ● NOAA ● EPA ● Other local authorities</td>
<td>● California Water Resources Control Board</td>
<td>● EPA (Federal–NEP) ● S.F. Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board</td>
<td>● California Water Resources Control Board</td>
<td>● EPA (Federal) ● State and/or local authorities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aThis program evaluates present and future effects of pollutants on Bay resources and encourages integration of all Bay-Delta Water related studies.
bIndividual programs have been established in Puget Sound, San Francisco Bay, Narragansett Bay, Buzzards Bay, Long Island Sound, and Albemarle-Pamlico Sounds, as well as Chesapeake Bay and the Great Lakes.

Indicates lead authority (more than one authority involved).

Sources: Office of Technology Assessment, 1987
Monitoring waste disposal impacts is a critical component of any waterbody management strategy. Here a diver is surveying a coral reef community near a sewage outfall from Oahu, Hawaii.

Additional regulatory enforcement of existing regulations under various pollutant control programs would of course depend on the effectiveness of pollution abatement efforts and the ability of the planning agency to involve other entities in the process.
Currently, the Chesapeake Bay Program is implementing a $100 million cleanup effort directed at nutrient control to improve the dissolved oxygen problem in the central Bay. Additional control efforts underway include: 1) a phosphate ban in Maryland and the District of Columbia; 2) new nonpoint source programs in Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Virginia; 3) major point source reductions from municipal sewage treatment plants basinwide; 4) land use controls in Maryland; 5) a moratorium on harvesting rockfish; and 6) submerged aquatic vegetation restoration efforts (96). These efforts have only recently been initiated, so it is too soon to judge the success of CBP’s transition from planning to implementation.

Two important issues regarding the Chesapeake Bay Executive Council are its ability to: 1) define specific goals for program managers in the various State and local governments, and 2) influence actual practices in these jurisdictions. Some observers have suggested that the Council should recommend water quality standards, establish baywide goals for inputs of CWA priority pollutants and nutrients, and identify point and nonpoint control strategies to achieve them. These observers further suggest that the Council adopt some features of the Great Lakes Water Quality Agreement of 1978 (168,590), which focuses on toxic pollutants and establishes specific goals and standards.

A program is likely to be more effective if it has adequate review procedures so it can adjust to changing conditions and priorities. Yet, neither the CBP nor the Great Lakes Water Quality Board, for example, have specified review periods to update their management plans or agreements. On the other hand, determining the appropriate time periods for reviews can be difficult. In fact, CBP officials have expressed resistance to updating the 1985 plan anytime soon, maintaining that in sufficient time the existing plan will lead to more stringent control efforts (590).

One example of a program that has relatively broad authority is the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority (PSWQA). One of its greatest strengths is its clear statutory authority to be the lead agency for managing and protecting water quality in Puget Sound (K. Skinnarland, PSWQA, pers. comm., September 1986). PSWQA has developed a comprehensive management plan for the Sound and is authorized to produce biennial reports on the state of the Sound. Its recommendations are binding on all other State and local government agencies involved in Puget Sound water quality management. The lines of authority and coordination among the various jurisdictions are specified by PSWQA in the management plan. The authority also can revise its management plan, which should allow for quicker assessments of its success in meeting goals and for changing priorities.

In addition, the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan is more comprehensive and detailed than those for other areas. The emphasis is on preventing pollution by effectively implementing programs, having adequate staff and funding, and developing a nonpoint source pollution program to address problems that cross jurisdictional lines. It proposes specific programs for several critical areas: water quality, fish and shellfish, wetlands, and wildlife habitat. While based on up-to-date scientific information, the plan also recognizes the need (given the uncertainty surrounding many issues) for continued support of research and monitoring in the Sound (464). Clear goals are defined, guidelines for priority-setting are established, standards for development and implementation of the program are specified, and a schedule for completing the planning of programs is set (subject to revision). Although the plan appears to be a promising approach to water quality management, it was adopted in late 1986 and it is too soon to judge its effectiveness.

The Importance of Coordination

Adequate cooperation among multiple jurisdictions and among various agencies is likely to be crucial to successful waterbody management. Difficulties arise because of jurisdictional disputes and because land-use management issues are involved. Such problems can be overcome, however. For instance, CBP has achieved a remarkable degree of cooperation between the multiple jurisdictions of the Bay. Maryland and Virginia each are developing some land-use management programs, but
the amount of resources available varies with a State's level of interest in the Bay; in particular, Pennsylvania's efforts are relatively small. Yet Pennsylvania, which borders the Bay in only one small region, is the Bay's main nonpoint contributor of nutrients (543).

PSWQA has an advantage in achieving coordination because the sound is located within one State. Moreover, most of its funding is from the Washington State legislature. Even so, there has been some difficulty in coordinating the State and Federal efforts (see above). Other areas such as San Francisco Bay are located within one State, but efforts to develop comprehensive water quality management have been frustrated by the lack of a lead agency with clear authority for coordination of various program efforts.17

Two additional factors appear crucial to effective interagency or multiple jurisdiction cooperation: 1) the number of agencies already attempting to manage the waterbody, and 2) the degree of environmental degradation in the waterbody. For example, at the time PSWQA was established there were no well-developed, independent government programs working on comprehensive management plans for the Sound.8 In San Francisco, on the other hand, several agencies—none with any greater lead authority than the others, and each focused only on particular aspects of management of the Bay's resources—exist and compete for funding and greater authority. The San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board could conceivably be the lead agency for San Francisco Bay, but it lacks authority as well as necessary resources (R. H. Whitsel, San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board, pers. comm., September 1986). In addition, the Sound is generally considered to have less severe environmental problems than other areas such as San Francisco Bay or Chesapeake Bay (464).

One purpose of the management committees established by EPA's NEP is to encourage cooperation by bringing together the managers of the various organizations involved. Recently, mediation has been used to help resolve conflicts among various jurisdictions involved in development planning for an estuary (i.e., the Columbia River estuary in Oregon and Washington; (2 16)). This technique could be applied to developing waste management plans for an estuary or coastal area where there are disagreements among the controlling jurisdictions.

Additional Functions—Research, Funding, and Public Participation

Research.—One major objective in most waterbody programs is the study of the existing conditions in a particular waterbody and, in some cases, the coordination of research efforts in the area. For example, EPA's Great Lakes National Program monitors water, sediments, fish tissue, and air deposition to identify critical areas in the lakes that need remedial action. It also prepares plans for phosphorous control and for nonpoint source control of conventional and toxic pollutants (1,663). CBP and PSWQA also play lead roles in coordinating and conducting research for Chesapeake Bay and Puget Sound, respectively, and research is the sole purpose of SCCWRP.

A unique approach is being tested for San Francisco Bay, where numerous agencies are involved in research and management and no one program has the lead authority to coordinate these efforts. Disagreements over the interpretation of research findings led the State and Regional Water Quality Boards to create the Aquatic Habitat Institute. Its purpose is to conduct independent research on the Bay and serve as an unbiased authority on scientific and technical matters related to the Bay (D. Segar, Aquatic Habitat Institute, pers. comm., September 1986).

Funding.—Adequate funding is obviously essential for any waterbody management program. Existing programs obtain funding in several ways, for example, from government agencies and from user fees or other revenue-generating mechanisms.
Strong governmental funding, for example, has been key to CBP’s accomplishments. CBP has obtained more research money from the Federal and State governments than any other program, in part because Chesapeake Bay is the Nation’s largest estuary and has high commercial and recreational value. Initial funding for CBP came from the Federal Government, but recently the States have assumed more responsibility. Currently, States (with Maryland as the main contributor) contribute $47 million and EPA contributes approximately $10 million each year for research and monitoring (334, 543).

Other programs have been funded quite differently. For example, PSWQA is funded by the State of Washington. One of the innovative features of the Aquatic Habitat Institute is its funding: the institute was created by the California legislature and receives about one-third of its funding from the State, one-third from EPA’s National Estuary Program, and the remaining third from sources such as donations from municipal and industrial dischargers. The institute is required, however, to develop its own funding strategies to eventually support itself as an independently funded, nonprofit organization. It is likely to use discharger taxes or user surcharges, rather than line-item appropriations as most waterbody programs do. The Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority (GCWDA) funds its operations with non-public sources of revenue by issuing bonds to build waste treatment facilities that are then repaid by the industries or municipalities involved. GCWDA, although a unit of government, is designed to operate much like a business; any excess funds generated by its pollution control programs are used for other experimental or innovative programs (L. Goin, GCWDA, pers. comm., 1986).

Public Participation.—Public participation is also critical to the success of waterbody management programs. It provides people an opportunity to have a say in decisions that affect them, and it can help ensure that economic and technical issues are not considered in isolation from relevant social and political aspects of environmental problems. In addition, waterbody management is likely to be given higher priority if the public is greatly concerned and well-informed about protecting a particular waterbody. For this reason, public education programs, as well as public participation in citizen advisory panels or through other means, are important aspects of any management program.

Most waterbody management programs make some provision for public participation (e.g., PSWQA, Great Lakes Water Quality Board). CBP has encouraged particularly strong citizen involvement through the Citizen’s Program for the Chesapeake Bay, Inc., an alliance of nonprofit organizations formed in 1971. The public is also involved through the Chesapeake Bay Foundation, a nonprofit organization with an endowment of $3 million and an annual budget of $400,000. The foundation has initiated educational and land acquisition projects, as well as activities in legislative, administrative, and judicial proceedings (21, 543).

Summary of Waterbody Program Functions

Estuaries and other waterbodies do not recognize political boundaries, so programs for their comprehensive management often require the coordination of many political jurisdictions and agencies. This can greatly complicate the functioning of any such programs. Frequently, the implementation of several statutes is also involved.

It is critical that there be a lead agency to coordinate the efforts of everyone involved and establish clear lines of responsibility and authority in any effort to better manage estuaries and coastal waters. The success of establishing such authority often depends on how well-established existing institutions are, because agencies are generally reluctant to surrender authority to other agencies.

Other factors are also critical to the successful functioning of waterbody programs. These include:

1. adequate study and assessment of the waterbody, including peer review of the findings as part of the development of an adequate scientific basis for decisionmaking;
2. setting specific goals and priorities;
3. the ability to evaluate the program on a continuous basis and shift priorities for action accordingly;
4. sufficient funding and staff to support these efforts; and
5. strong public participation programs.

The role of the Federal Government in waterbody management programs varies greatly. The
Federal Government has been very active in initiating and participating in CBP, and has been referred to as "the glue which binds the Bay Program together" (168). Its role in other programs has been more peripheral. Even in the National Estuary Program, which is administered by EPA, the Federal role is primarily one of guidance. In some areas, for example, the Federal Government uses NEP to channel Federal funding to the lead agency of a waterbody management effort. In other cases, Federal money is sprinkled among regional, State, and local agencies, which can reinforce the tendency toward fragmented efforts or lead to duplication of or competition between efforts. Enforcement may be an area where a strong Federal presence is appropriate; it can also be argued, however, that the States should have greater control of enforcement programs because they are in closer proximity to the problems, and that EPA's role should be one of strong oversight.

Information Programs

An assortment of public and private entities generate and disseminate the information that is needed to develop and implement sound waste disposal policies. Much has been done in recent years to improve the Nation's ability to obtain and use such information, but serious gaps still persist in understanding waste disposal and its impacts. These gaps exist partly because some important types of information are not gathered or analyzed, and partly because existing information often is difficult to access and use.

Cutbacks in the funding of information-related activities can further limit our ability to detect and understand trends. Yet, such cutbacks are particularly likely during periods of economic constraints. If current and future efforts (e.g., monitoring, research, analysis) are not maintained at a sufficient level, then the utility of information collected in the past may be seriously compromised and accurate determinations of past trends and future changes may not be possible.

Types of Information Activities

To develop and implement sound waste disposal policies, information is needed about ecosystem characteristics, the status and value of marine resources such as commercial fisheries, the types and quantities of pollutants entering marine waters, and the ecological and human impacts of these pollutants. Several major Federal programs are designed to generate, analyze, and disseminate such information (app. 2).

Ecosystem Characteristics.—The effects of waste disposal activities on marine waters and resources cannot be evaluated unless the basic characteristics of different marine ecosystems are understood. Among the important characteristics are those of the water (e.g., flow patterns, temperature, turbidity, and chemical parameters); sediment (e.g., composition); and biological relationships (e.g., diversity of organisms, food chains). Many of these characteristics are affected by natural and anthropogenic activities that occur over different periods of time and over varying areas.

Many public and private agencies are engaged in efforts to increase our understanding of ecosystems and their basic characteristics. Numerous studies are supported by Federal agencies, such as EPA, the Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS), and NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and National Ocean Service. The National Ocean Service, for example, is developing a National Estuarine Inventory that describes the physical, hydrological, and biological characteristics of many estuaries. When completed, this should provide a sound basis for comparing and assessing conditions in these estuaries. The agency also is generating atlases that include detailed information on the physical and biological characteristics of U.S. coastal regions.

Despite these and other efforts, information about these characteristics often is not sufficient to identify or understand the impacts of waste disposal (226,341). Of necessity, most studies are restricted to small areas, short periods of time, or limited groups of variables. Objectives, methods, and the quality and quantity of results vary considerably among waterbodies or watersheds. More research needs to be conducted on changes over relatively large scales—for long periods of time and for entire ecological communities.

While some marine waters have received adequate attention, other waterbodies have not, includ-
ing some that—while relatively free from waste dis-
posal activities or impacts in the past—are now
threatened with imminent and rapid increases in
waste inputs. These areas include many waterbod-
ies that receive wastes from the rapidly growing re-
gions of the Southeastern United States, such as
parts of North Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana.

Status and Value of Marine Resources.—
Many resources (e. g., commercial fisheries and un-
contaminated swimming beaches) are of obvious
and substantial value. Because commercial fisheries
and shellfisheries are of considerable economic
value, important data about them have been col-
clected and analyzed for many years. Information
tends to be more sparse and widely scattered, how-
ever, about trends in quality, quantity, and value
of other resources.

At the national level, several regular analyses
provide data on the quantity and quality of com-
mercially important fish and shellfish populations.
The National Shellfish Register, for example, pro-
vides information on the degree to which shellfish
waters are contaminated, although its usefulness
in fully characterizing stocks is restricted (app. 2).
Data on the quantities of fish and shellfish landed
commercially are frequently and regularly collected,
analyzed, and disseminated by Federal and State
agencies. However, these data often are inadequate
to evaluate population conditions because, for ex-
ample, they may not reflect fishing effort or natu-
ral population fluctuations. Information on the eco-

##Wastes in Marine Environments##

**Pollutant Inputs and Transport.—** Information
on the levels of pollutants in discharges, dumped
material, or runoff is gathered by multiple
sources—from Federal, State, and local govern-
ments; from dischargers themselves; or from pri-

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA), for example, routinely samples a wide assortment
of fish and analyzes edible tissues for the presence
of specified pollutants. While these sources of in-
formation are useful in specific situations, they of-
fer only a fragmented and incomplete picture of the
nationwide status and value of commercial stocks.

Considerably less information is available on the
value of recreational fishing, although in many
areas it may far exceed the importance of com-
mercial fishing. Two major Federal sources provide in-
formation: surveys conducted every 5 years by the
FWS and Bureau of the Census (628), and annual
surveys conducted by NMFS (605,606). Other pub-
lic and private entities also generate information
on recreational fisheries. For example, some States
require licenses for marine recreational fishing and
thereby generate information on the number of
fishermen in those States. In addition, several gov-
ernment studies address the health risks suffered
by recreational fishermen who consume contami-
nated catches.

Little information is available, on a national
scale, about the value of recreational resources such
as beaches and coastal parks. The primary data
come from a few Federal surveys that summarize
visits to coastal wildlife refuges and National Parks.
The National Ocean Service's Economic Survey
of Outdoor Marine Recreation in the USA will in-
clude a comprehensive inventory of publicly pro-
vided outdoor recreation when completed (348,
611). Additional information on these resources (as
well as on commercial and recreational fisheries)
in more geographically limited areas—at the State
level, for example—comes from studies supported
by the Federal Sea Grant College Program (604,
61 7,706). The Sea Grant program received about
$40 million in fiscal year 1986, but was slated for
elimination in the proposed fiscal year 1987 budget.

Pollutant Inputs and Transport.—** Information
on the levels of pollutants in discharges, dumped
material, or runoff is gathered by multiple
sources—from Federal, State, and local govern-
ments; from dischargers themselves; or from pri-
##continuation##
Information from these sources varies widely in accuracy, completeness, and accessibility.

Related activities can affect the quality and quantity of information on permitted discharges. For example, Federal laws and regulations prescribe what information dischargers must report. Enforcement generally reduces the deviation of discharges from legal levels, which enhances the value of permits as indicators of discharge quality and quantity.

Federal agencies—the primary ones being EPA, the Corps of Engineers (COE), and NOAA—are involved in efforts to generate, analyze, and disseminate information on pollutant inputs. EPA and COE generate a great deal of information on discharges from particular industries or waste disposal activities. Other Federal agencies, such as the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) and Department of Agriculture, generate information on nonpoint runoff. The National Stream-Quality Accounting Network of USGS provides information on pollutants discharged into fresh waters and ultimately transported into estuaries. Compiling this information accurately and comprehensively on a national scale is difficult.

One notable Federal effort is NOAA’s National Coastal Pollutant Discharge Inventory, which pools information from numerous sources on pollutant inputs into U.S. estuaries and coastal waters. When complete, and if updated periodically, it could provide useful overviews of trends in pollutant inputs into these waters. It also could be useful as a tool for evaluating the effects of different pollution control policies (610).

It is not possible to accurately estimate the total Federal expenditures being directed toward information gathering and dissemination because of the number and variety of agencies and programs involved, and the large overlap between program objectives. Given current economic restrictions and past trends in analytical program funding, it is likely that accurate and comprehensive information on discharges will remain difficult to obtain.

Many States also conduct programs to monitor pollutant inputs into marine waters. Since 1977, for example, California’s Mussel Watch has used strategically located ‘sentinel’ organisms—in this case, mussels—to detect pollutants in coastal waters. The Mussel Watch has generated data on the geographic and temporal variations in the concentrations of many pollutants. By 1985, this effort had identified at least eight areas where metals or organic chemicals had contaminated mussels to alarming levels (71).

Impacts on Resources and Human Well-being.—Large amounts of information about actual impacts on marine ecosystems and humans are generated each year by local, State, and Federal agencies, numerous private organizations, and academic groups. At the Federal level, many of the efforts are concentrated within the National Marine Pollution Program (NMPP). Despite these efforts, most experts agree that much more remains unknown and that the assessment of impacts should be more coordinated and integrated than it has been in the past (161, 170, 505, 508).

The level of effort expended to generate information on marine impacts has varied around the country and from year to year. While general trends are difficult to ascertain because of the diversity of individuals and organizations involved and the variety of efforts, some specific trends are apparent. For example, the number of samples of certain toxic pollutants in marine organisms that were archived each year increased dramatically and peaked in the late 1960s and then declined, with large fluctua-
Figures 26.—Number of Archived Samples Per Year of Chlorinated Pesticides and Polychlorinated Biphenyls in Fish and Invertebrates From U.S. Marine Waters, 1945-85

NOTE: Years lacking bars, no data are available.


The decline in the number of segments for which data are available reflects cutbacks in monitoring by Federal and State agencies. Only data entered into STORET (the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's system for storing and retrieving data on water quality) are included. Twenty percent of the 926 segments of water bodies in Florida are estuaries.

SOURCE: J. Hand, et al., Water Quality Inventory For the State of Florida: Technical Appendix (Tallahassee, FL: State of Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, June 1966)

The Need for Integration and Coordination

Information must be accessible and integrated so it can be used by a wide variety of people, including policy makers. Greater integration and coordination of information-related activities, as well as increased financial resources for their implementation, is considered essential by most observers (266,412,413,415,505,506,692,693).

Many suggestions to improve the planning, execution, and usefulness of these activities have been incorporated into the recommendations of NMPP (app. 2). Federal agencies have heeded NMPP recommendations to a degree; for example, NOAA’s Ocean Assessments Division has undertaken several projects to develop more comprehensive databases and disseminate increasingly sophisticated analyses.

In addition, programs that are directed toward specific waterbodies and that are capable of cutting across social, institutional, and scientific boundaries may be of special value. Some cross-cutting programs have been established for individual estuaries and coastal waters. Notable examples include the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, the Aquatic Habitat Institute for San Francisco Bay, the Chesapeake Bay Program and the Chesapeake Research Consortium, and the individual programs established under EPA’s National Estuary Program. These efforts are promising approaches to the many problems inherent in generating and applying useful information to an issue as large and complex as marine resource management. Similar efforts, however, do not exist for most other waterbodies.

APPENDIX 1: EXISTING WATERBODY MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

Numerous programs have been initiated at the Federal, State, and local levels to address water quality problems in a particular estuary or coastal waterbody, including:

The Chesapeake Bay Program

The primary purpose of CBP is to develop a comprehensive understanding of the Bay’s ecosystem. It is a combined State-Federal effort initiated by EPA in response to legislation passed by Congress in 1976. The intensive study of the Chesapeake Bay’s water quality and resources was the result of heightened concern in the early 1970s about the health of the Nation’s largest estuary. Specifically, EPA was directed to assess and make recommendations on how to improve water quality management in the Bay, to coordinate all research in the Bay, and to establish a system of data collection and analysis. The study of Chesapeake Bay was authorized for 5 years, but was twice extended by a year and was completed in 1983 at a cost of nearly $30 million.

The study focused on the Bay’s 10 most critical water quality problems, three of which were studied intensively: 1) nutrient enrichment, 2) toxic substances, and 3) the decline of submerged aquatic vegetation. The findings documented a historical decline in living resources in the Bay and indicated the need for better management (95). As a result, several State and Federal entities signed the Chesapeake Bay Agreement. The Agreement established the Chesapeake Executive Council to facilitate the implementation of coordinated plans for the improvement and protection of the Chesapeake Bay estuarine system.

The Chesapeake Bay Restoration and Protection Plan, issued in September 1985, was the first planning effort to result from the Agreement. The Plan describes Federal and State strategies and programs designed to coordinate, evaluate, and oversee the Bay’s restoration and protection (95). The first annual progress report, published in December 1985, discusses the plan, the coordinated monitoring program which has been developed; and modeling, research, and data management efforts (96). In 1986, the Council began reporting on the Bay’s water quality conditions and working with the agricultural community on nonpoint source pollution control programs.

The Puget Sound Water Quality Authority

PSWQA, established by the Washington State legislature in 1983, was authorized by the legislature in 1985 to develop a comprehensive management plan for Puget Sound and its related waterways. The plan will be revised every 2 years and a "State of the Sound" report completed. The first Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan was adopted in late 1986, with implementation beginning in early 1987 (464). The plan focuses on protecting Puget Sound from toxic pollutants and pathogens, both of which have contaminated sediment and harmed resources such as fish and shellfish, and on the control of nonpoint pollution. It emphasizes a lead
role for local governments in identifying and controlling important nonpoint sources.

The Authority will oversee the implementation of the plan, propose funding mechanisms and, if necessary, propose new legislation. Although many Federal, State, and local agencies are involved in the study and regulation of the Sound, the Authority is the only agency specifically responsible for planning, oversight, and coordination of programs related to Puget Sound. It has considerable authority because State agencies and local governments are required to evaluate, incorporate, and implement applicable provisions of the plan.

The Great Lakes Water Quality Board

The Great Lakes together represent an extremely large surface expanse of freshwater, yet the Great Lakes system also functions somewhat like a large-scale estuary. The experience of the Great Lakes National Program thus serves as a model for the development of other waterbody management programs, such as those of the National Estuary Program. The Great Lakes Water Quality Board was established by the United States to implement agreements with Canada, reached under the auspices of the International Joint Commission, regarding the water quality of the Great Lakes. The Great Lakes National Program Office of EPA staffs the Board and ensures that U.S. commitments are met.

Two major agreements have been reached by the Commission: the Great Lakes Water Quality Agreements of 1972 and 1978. The 1972 agreement established water quality objectives and focused on pesticide control. The 1978 agreement added an ecosystem management approach and the goal of essentially zero discharge of pollutants; it also calls for the control of all toxic substances.

The agreements thus encourage the protection of the Great Lakes and call for remedial actions against pollution, as well as research and monitoring programs. EPA’s Great Lakes National Program Office and Region 5 are most involved in coordinating activities relating to the Agreements. In May 1986, the Great Lakes States issued The Great Lakes Toxic Substance Control Agreement. Intended to be consistent with both the Federal Clean Water Act and the Great Lakes Water Quality Agreement, the agreement establishes a framework for coordinating regional action to control toxic pollutants entering the Great Lakes system (200, 389,663).

The Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority

GCWDA is a unique example of a within-State waste coordination effort. The authority is a three-county unit of local government, established by Texas statute in 1969 to abate point source pollution in the heavily industrialized Houston Ship Channel and Galveston Bay area. It has established numerous waste management facilities, primarily sewage treatment plants, but also some industrial treatment facilities and a land-based incineration facility. The system is funded by issuing bonds for construction and these are repaid through user charges (ref 215; L. Goin, GCWDA, pers. comm., 1986).

The authority is active in pollution control financing and itself owns and operates four industrial wastewater treatment facilities. These facilities treat and dispose of liquid wastes from over 40 industrial plants. In addition, its 22 municipal wastewater treatment plants and 7 drinking water treatment plants serve over 40 water districts or cities. The objective is for at least one-third of these facilities to become large, regional waste treatment facilities. The authority is also pursuing regional approaches to municipal sludge disposal and resource recovery for municipal solid wastes.

The Southern California Coastal Water Research Project

SCCWRP is dedicated to researching and monitoring the effects of municipal wastewater discharges on marine life. The project publishes a report on recent research efforts every 2 years. It is sponsored by the sanitation districts of Orange County and Los Angeles County and the cities of Oxnard, San Diego, and Los Angeles. These wastewater dischargers created SCCWRP through a joint powers agreement. Each has representatives on a commission that oversees the operation of the project.

The project is not intended to study specific pollution sources or needed controls. Instead, its focus is a variety of specific environmental problems, such as predicting sediment quality around outfalls, fish reproduction near outfalls, and the influence of chlorinated hydrocarbons on fish. The goal of the research is to develop predictive models that would help determine what levels of wastewater treatment are needed to protect marine life (527,528).

The San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board

The San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board is one of the major agencies involved in managing the Bay’s waters. It operates independently of, but is responsible to, the State of California Water Resources Control Board. The Regional Board, comprised
of nine appointed members who are involved in activities to control water quality in the Bay, is primarily an enforcement agency and is limited to activities such as controlling and monitoring sewage outfalls and other point source discharges. It has no authority to control impacts caused by pollutants carried by the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers or from other areas; these are under the exclusive jurisdiction of the State Board. It also has no authority to coordinate activities of the other agencies involved in Bay water quality management.

The Regional Board is active in planning, reviewing, and amending the Basin Plan for the Bay area and in reviewing water quality standards. The plan, last amended in 1982, is the basis for distributing both State and Federal grants for water quality programs such as building and upgrading wastewater treatment facilities. The Board is also active in the study of shellfish through the San Francisco Bay Shellfish Program and in the State's Mussel Watch Program. Its Aquatic Habitat Program studies the effects of toxic pollutants on aquatic life in the Bay (67,70).

The Aquatic Habitat Institute

The Aquatic Habitat Institute is a nonprofit, quasi-public corporation independent from, but highly supportive of, the Regional Board's Aquatic Habitat Program. Although established in 1983, funding only began in 1986. Its purpose is to produce independent research acceptable to all agencies and interests concerned with the management of the Bay area. The Institute is planning a number of scientific assessments and education programs, and will attempt to better coordinate research and monitoring in the San Francisco Bay/Delta area.

The Institute's 10-member Board of Directors consists of representatives from a wide range of government and nongovernment interests (see table 12). Currently, the program's largest single source of funding is EPA's National Estuary Program. This funding will continue for 5 years. The California State and Regional Water Quality Control Boards also contribute funds, and donations are accepted from municipal and industrial dischargers. Eventually, however, the Institute is required to rely on its own funding strategy. This is another unique requirement of the program and will most likely involve the use of discharger taxes or sewer user surcharges, rather than direct appropriations (ref. 66; also D. Segar, Aquatic Habitat Institute, pers. comm., 1986).

The National Estuary Program

NEP was created within EPA in 1985 to oversee the implementation efforts in the Great Lakes and Chesapeake Bay, and to initiate comprehensive programs in other estuaries in the United States. Programs are underway in Puget Sound, Long Island Sound, Buzzards Bay, Narragansett Bay, San Francisco Bay, and Albemarle-Pamlico Sounds. NEP uses existing authorities under the Clean Water Act (Sec. 104), other Federal statutes, and State legislative authorities to control sources of pollution. The program emphasizes the need to focus and integrate existing programs at the Federal, State, and local levels to maximize benefits of pollution abatement. The objective of each program in NEP is to characterize the conditions and trends in the system and develop an integrated management program to maintain or restore the estuary.

The Water Quality Act of 1987 expanded the scope of NEP and authorized additional funding for the development, under its auspices, of individual waterbody management programs.

APPENDIX 2: FEDERAL INFORMATION AND MONITORING PROGRAMS

National Marine Pollution Program

The National Marine Pollution Program (NMPP) was established to coordinate the 11 departments and agencies that are engaged in research or monitoring related to marine pollution (including the Great Lakes) (598,599). The program was mandated under the National Ocean Pollution Planning Act of 1978. Figure 28 indicates the overall Federal marine pollution research budget for fiscal year 1984; figure 29 indicates funding of selected activities.

In late 1985, the program issued a Federal plan for fiscal years 1985 to 1989 (601). The plan recommended, among other things, a greater Federal emphasis on:

1. resource-oriented monitoring to provide national assessments of the status and trends in environmental quality,
2. better coordination of monitoring efforts,
3. research and monitoring programs related to municipal and industrial effluents,
4. research and monitoring on nutrients and pathogens (with less emphasis on metals and petroleum),
5. data synthesis, interpretation, and information dissemination; and
6. studies conducted in estuaries and coastal waters. The level of funding of marine pollution research conducted by the Federal agencies has declined during the 1980s, from approximately $152 million in fiscal year 1981 to about $135 million in fiscal year 1986. The presidential budget for 1987 was approximately $97 million (see figure 28). The effects of the decline on the above recommendations are uncertain.

The Northeast Monitoring Program

The Northeast Monitoring Program (NEMP) monitors waters from the Gulf of Maine to North Carolina's Cape Hatteras. Established in 1979 by NOAA, NEMP monitors physical, chemical, and biological variables over long periods. It establishes benchmarks for both the concentration and distribution of pollutants and for their effects. Since 1980, NEMP has issued several reports summarizing the health of these estuaries and coastal waters (592,597). The reports condense a large body of monitoring information, present it to a wide audience, and provide extensive references for those seeking further information. The information facilitates efforts to assess the effects of pollutants on ecosystems and resources, and to detect and respond to important environmental changes.

**NOAA Ocean Assessments Division**

NOAA's activities involving marine pollution assessment, monitoring, and research are conducted primarily by the Ocean Assessments Division (OAD), housed within the National Ocean Service (610). Two branches of the division are especially active in matters pertaining to waste disposal and its effects: the Strategic Assessment Branch and the Coastal and Estuarine Assessment Branch.

**Strategic Assessment Branch**

The Strategic Assessment Branch evaluates and inventories coastal resources and their exploitation, and also assesses national policies and strategies with regard to these resources and uses (611). Its activities, which accounted for 19 percent of OAD's fiscal year 1985 budget, include:

- assembling Strategic Assessment Data Atlases that summarize key ecological, economic, and political characteristics of each major marine region of the United States (607);
- producing a series of maps on the health and use of U.S. coastal waters;
- surveying Federal, State, and local government expenditures on outdoor marine recreation (348);
- assessing levels of pollutants entering marine waters (the National Coastal Pollutant Discharge Inventory (600));
- inventorying estuaries around the Nation (National Estuarine Inventory), which will allow comparisons of their use and health (362,602,619); and
- periodically inventorying the status of shellfish areas (National Shellfish Register of Classified Estuarine Waters).

**Coastal and Estuarine Assessment Branch**

The primary function of this branch is to assess the consequences of human activities on marine environments; its activities accounted for 35 percent of OAD's fiscal year 1985 budget. The branch has two relevant programs: National Status and Trends, and Consequences of Contaminants. The bulk of the branch's budget goes into the Status and Trends Program.20

---

20Up-to-date information on the Status and Trends Program and on another program, the Quality Assurance Program, is available in the *Biannual Newsletter* issued by these programs.
Figure 29.—Federal Funding of Selected Activities Within the National Marine Pollution Program in Fiscal Year 1984

A. Funding by project purpose (total $121 million)

- Monitoring: 21%
- Development: 9%
- Data analysis: 40%
- Support: 9%
- Research: 55%

B. Funding by pollutant (total $56 million)

- Radionuclides: 15%
- Nutrients: 90%
- Pathogens: 11%
- Miscellaneous: 11%
- Petroleum and petroleum products: 32%
- Organic chemicals: 17%
- Radioactive: 27%
- Other: 0%

C. Funding by waste type (total $33 million)

- Municipal: 18%
- Industrial: 15%
- Other: 9%
- Dredged materials: 32%

Diagrams for B and C only include funding that can be specifically categorized by pollutant or waste type; hence totals are less than the total for A.


The Status and Trends Program.—The objective of the National Status and Trends Program is to document the current status and long-term trends in the quality of estuaries and coastal waters (615,616). The program consists of four components which perform three major tasks:

1. providing data on concentrations of pollutants in finfish, shellfish, and sediments;
2. measuring biological parameters that reflect stress associated with human-induced perturbations; and
3. assessing marine environmental quality and recommending Federal responses.

The fiscal year 1985 budget for the program was $3.3 million, the fiscal year 1986 budget was $2.7 million (a decline of 18 percent), and the proposed budget for fiscal year 1987 was $4.3 million (J. Calder, pers. comm., August 1986). A major component of the program is the Benthic Surveillance Program, which collects samples of sediment, bottom-dwelling mollusks, and bottom-feeding fish from numerous sites throughout the...
country. The samples are analyzed for substances such as toxic metals, polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons, and chlorinated organic chemicals (610,621).

Consequences of Contaminants Program.—This program develops techniques to determine how pollutants in marine waters have affected or can affect marine fish and shellfish and human health (620). The techniques then can augment the capabilities of the Status and Trends Program. Recent activities have emphasized:

- evaluating indicators that signal the risk of shellfish contamination,
- documenting exposure to pollutants that results when fishermen eat their catches, and
- quantifying the relationship in fish between exposure to pollutants and reproductive impairment.

**National Shellfish Register**

The Shellfish Register, issued periodically since 1966, contains information on shellfish contamination incidents and provides important indicators of the extent to which shellfish in U.S. waters are contaminated; the latest register was published in 1985 (603). It uses a classification system based on concentrations of coliform bacteria and natural marine biotoxins, although it also includes information on substances that might be considered hazardous in the shellfish. Productive shellfish waters can be classified as approved, prohibited, conditionally approved, or restricted. Most States implement the system voluntarily, although they may differ in how they meet the general requirements.

The register provides only limited information on the current status of shellfishing areas and still less information regarding past trends, in part because the classification scheme is not used consistently by the States. For example, the classification of a shellfish area could be changed from approved to restricted simply because an area was not surveyed in a particular year, not because of actual contamination. Thus, the register is currently not well-suited for establishing trends in the contamination of shellfish and shellfish waters, although efforts are being made to improve it. These efforts are, however, constrained by severely limited budgets at both the State and Federal levels.
Chapter 8
Managing Industrial Effluents
CONTENTS

| Introduction | 177 |
| Existing Regulatory Framework for Point Source Pollution Control | 178 |
| The NPDES Program | 178 |
| The National Pretreatment Program | 182 |
| Types of Standards for Direct and Indirect Dischargers | 184 |
| Quantities of Priority Pollutants in Industrial Discharges | 185 |
| Types and Numbers of Industries Regulated Under the Clean Water Act | 185 |
| Amounts of Wastewater and Priority Pollutants Generated | 186 |
| Projected Removal of Priority Pollutants Through Full Treatment | 186 |
| Removal of Priority Pollutants Achieved to Date | 188 |
| Reducing Priority Pollutants in Specific Industries | 189 |
| Issues in the Management of Industrial Effluents | 189 |
| Delays in Program Implementation | 189 |
| Gaps and Deficiencies in Coverage of Toxic Pollutants | 192 |
| Inadequacy of Regulatory Compliance and Enforcement | 195 |
| Additional Issues Facing the Pretreatment Program | 203 |
| Using Water Quality-Based Standards for Further Control of Toxic Pollutants | 205 |

Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13. Industrial Categories Subject to Regulation Under the NPDES and Pretreatment Programs as Significant Sources of Toxic Pollutants</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Industrial Categories Granted Exemptions From Categorical Standards</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Expected Reductions in Discharges of Priority Metals and Organic Chemicals by Selected Categorical Industries, Assuming Full Compliance With and Implementation of BAT and PSES Controls</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Expected Reductions in Discharges of Priority Metals and Organic Chemicals by Selected Categorical Industries, Assuming Full Compliance With and Implementation of BAT and PSES Controls</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Final and Proposed Regulations for Categorical Industries</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Criteria Used To Identify “Significant Noncompliance”</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Municipal Treatment Plants (POTWs) in Significant Noncompliance as of Sept. 30, 1985</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30. Regulatory Framework and Standards for Industrial Discharges</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Federal Enforcement Activity, Fiscal Years 1980-86</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. Amount of Average CWA Civil Penalty, 1975-86</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T. Tools for Compliance Monitoring and Data Management Under NPDES</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

The direct and indirect discharge of industrial effluents is a widespread practice that contributes substantial quantities of pollutants to marine as well as non-marine waters. The location, composition, and magnitude of these discharges are all important in assessing their ability to cause or contribute to environmental and human health problems.

Industrial effluents are only a subset of the range of materials disposed of in marine waters, yet they provide a good illustration of the complexity of the issues involved in marine waste disposal. The information presented here generally applies to all industrial dischargers, whether their wastewaters enter marine or freshwater environments, because the statutory and regulatory framework governing industrial discharges usually does not distinguish between discharges into freshwater and marine environments. \(^1\)

Estuaries and coastal waters have been used for disposal more frequently and have been more severely affected than have open ocean waters. Essentially all direct and indirect industrial discharges to marine environments occur in estuaries and coastal waters, the majority of discharges occurring in estuaries. \(^2\) In addition, direct and indirect industrial discharges to rivers that subsequently drain into estuaries and coastal waters are another significant source of pollutants to marine waters, though this source is difficult to quantify.

Large quantities of toxic pollutants are entering marine environments, particularly estuaries and coastal waters. Legal discharges of industrial effluents (contributed either directly to receiving waters or indirectly to publicly owned treatment works, or POTWs) often contain substantial amounts of toxic pollutants; indeed, in the aggregate, industrial discharges represent the largest source of toxic pollutants entering the marine environment.

The large quantities of waste entering estuaries and coastal waters through industrial discharges reflect several factors:

1. the concentration of population and industrial activity in coastal regions,
2. the cost savings to waste generators that use marine disposal as opposed to other alternatives, and
3. a statutory and regulatory approach that authorizes discharge-levels based more on technological capabilities than on resulting water quality.

The net effect of these factors is a considerable degree of 'acceptance' of the routine (but environmentally very significant) discharge of effluents into estuaries and coastal waters, especially when contrasted with the public and government attention focused on dumping of industrial and municipal wastes in the open ocean. This dichotomy is one reflection of the very different philosophical approaches embodied in the two major statutes governing marine waste disposal: the managerial perspective of the Clean Water Act and the more restrictive perspective of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (see ch. 7).

---

\(^1\) Industrial effluents are wastewaters that are discharged through pipelines. They can be either legally discharged directly into receiving waters or indirectly via sewerage systems operated by publicly owned treatment works (POTWs). Both practices are regulated through programs established under the Clean Water Act (CWA). Direct dischargers are regulated through the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) and indirect dischargers fall under the National Pretreatment Program. Both programs have State or local, as well as Federal, components.

\(^2\) Industrial discharges into coastal waters (as defined in this report) are distinguished by the CWA and thus are a partial exception to this generalization. CWA Sec. 403 requires that discharges into the 'territorial sea, contiguous zone, or open ocean be in compliance with the Ocean Discharge Criteria (40 CFR 125, Subpart M). Under this provision, most industrial discharges into estuaries would not be required to meet the Ocean Discharge Criteria; however, industrial discharges into coastal waters would be subject to the criteria. When promulgating the criteria in 1980, EPA estimated that about 230 land-based point source discharges, as well as fixed offshore facilities required to obtain NPDES permits (e.g., the approximately 3,000 offshore oil and gas platforms), would be affected (45 FR 65944, Oct. 3, 1980). See ch. 7 for further discussion of the Ocean Discharge Criteria.
More than 1,300 major industrial facilities discharge wastes directly into U.S. marine waters, mostly into estuaries. Thousands of others discharge into rivers that carry pollutants into these waters, or into POTWs that subsequently discharge into marine waters. These various industrial discharges are the largest sources of the organic chemicals and many metals found in many estuaries and coastal waters.

EXISTING REGULATORY FRAMEWORK FOR POINT SOURCE POLLUTION CONTROL

The NPDES Program

The Clean Water Act (CWA) regulates the discharge of wastes into the navigable waters of the United States, including estuaries and coastal waters. This act, passed in 1972, established the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES, 40 CFR 122) to regulate these point source discharges. Under NPDES, all point sources—both industrial and municipal—that directly discharge into waterways are required to obtain permits that regulate their discharges.4

4In addition to complying with general treatment requirements specified in NPDES permits, municipal sources (i.e., POTWs) and industries discharging to POTWs must also comply with applicable requirements under the National Pretreatment Program.

General Structure

The NPDES program contains four essential operational elements:

1. The discharge permit is the basic “currency” of the NPDES program. Each permit specifies effluent limitations for particular pollutants, monitoring requirements (including a schedule), and reporting requirements for information characterizing and quantifying a facility's actual discharge. If compliance with final effluent limitations has not yet been achieved, a permit (or more typically, a separate order) is issued that contains interim limitations and a compliance schedule.
2. A system based on self-reporting by permittees is the basic approach used to provide the information necessary to determine whether effluent limits specified in a permit are being met. The entire system therefore heavily relies on permittee integrity in reporting results of self-monitoring.

3. Compliance monitoring encompasses those activities intended to determine whether facilities are achieving the requirements contained in their discharge permits. Such activities include conducting inspections, reviewing reports submitted by permittees, monitoring to verify industry-reported data, and compiling statistical information to assess compliance.

4. Enforcement includes all actions taken in response to an identified instance of noncompliance, including determination of the appropriate response based on the severity of a violation and other factors, and initiating and escalating the response until compliance is achieved.

Permit issuance, receipt of data submitted by permittees, compliance monitoring, and enforcement are the primary responsibility of States (if they have been approved to administer their State's NPDES program under CWA Sec. 402) or Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Regions (under CWA Sections 309 and 504), although EPA Headquarters and the Department of Justice can initiate or intervene in enforcement actions. Thirty-seven States and one Territory (the Virgin Islands) have approved NPDES programs (503).

Regulated Pollutants

The 1972 CWA focused on controlling conventional pollutants. It soon became apparent, however, that toxic and non-conventional pollutants in wastes such as industrial effluents, sewage sludge, and dredged material also were causing adverse impacts. In 1977, Congress amended CWA to provide additional regulation of toxic and non-conventional pollutants from specific industrial categories within the framework of the NPDES permitting and compliance process.

A list of 65 classes of toxic 'priority pollutants' and 21 primary industrial categories to be regulated by EPA were included in the 1977 CWA Amendments. This list arose out of a Settlement Agreement of a suit brought against EPA by the Natural Resources Defense Council. EPA subsequently divided the 65 classes into 129 priority pollutants, an amount later reduced to 126 pollutants (40 CFR 122, app. D). The 21 industrial categories were subdivided into 34 categories (40 CFR 122, app. A); 9 of these were specifically exempted from regulation by categorical standards, leaving about 25 primary industrial categories for which categorical effluent guidelines for priority pollutants were to be promulgated (table 13). An additional 35 industrial categories not included in the amendments were designated as secondary; development of effluent guidelines for priority pollutants in these industries was deferred until an unspecified later date (503).

Compliance Monitoring and Data Management

Several tools have been developed to monitor compliance, identify cases of noncompliance, and manage data (box T).

Enforcement

EPA has revised its national Enforcement Management System (EMS) (673) to provide better guidance on enforcement to EPA Regions and delegated States, and to provide a greater degree of nationwide consistency in administrative responses to

Sec. 305 of CWA also authorizes private citizens or their representatives to bring enforcement suits against dischargers. While this approach represents an increasingly effective means of strengthening enforcement, it is beyond the scope of this report. For further information on this topic, see refs. 45, 453, and 501.

Sec box A in ch. 1 for definitions of these classes of pollutants.

Municipal dischargers (i.e., POTWs) are required to meet standards different from those for direct industrial dischargers. Regulations for most POTWs specify a minimum level of treatment (termed ‘secondary’) that is measured in terms of reduction of conventional pollutant parameters. As an alternative to requiring POTWs to employ technological means for controlling toxic and non-conventional pollutants introduced through indirect industrial discharges, CWA provides for such control through industrial pretreatment programs. Discharges from both POTWs and industrial facilities must also meet applicable State water quality control standards where they have been developed.

The actual number of categories has changed as categories have been exempted, combined, or separated.
Table 13.—Industrial Categories Subject to Regulation Under the NPDES and Pretreatment Programs as Significant Sources of Toxic Pollutants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number of indirect dischargers</th>
<th>Number of direct dischargers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum forming</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery manufacturing</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal mining</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil coating I</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper forming</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical and electronic</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical and electronic</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components II</td>
<td>499</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foundries</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic chemicals I</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic chemicals II</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron and steel</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leather tanning</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal finishing and electroplating</td>
<td>10,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals forming</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals manufacturing I</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals manufacturing II</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ore mining</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic chemicals and plastics and synthetic fibers</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>1,082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petroleum refining</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmaceuticals</td>
<td>392</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastics molding and electroplating</td>
<td>1,145</td>
<td>810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcelain enameling</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulp and paper</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steam electric</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Textile mills</td>
<td>1,047</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timber processing</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>15,597</strong></td>
<td><strong>18,058</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number and names of categories listed here do not correspond exactly to those indicated in the text or the Code of Federal Regulations, due to subsequent joining or dividing of categories by EPA. The numbers include only those dischargers that are regulated under categorical standards.


In instances of noncompliance, first developed in 1977, the original EMS was used by few States and EPA Regions; current policy, however, mandates development of a formal enforcement system consistent with the revised EMS. The revised version specifies time frames within which enforcement actions against ‘significant noncompliers’ must be initiated and also specifies procedures for identifying, initiating, and following through with appropriate enforcement actions. In addition to maintaining an inventory of permits and processing submitted data, States or Regions are expected to:

- conduct “enforcement evaluations” to determine an appropriate level of enforcement action and an associated time frame, based on guidelines and procedures developed for the various predetermined categories of violation. Factors to be considered include: the magnitude and duration of the violation; the compliance record of the permittee and past enforcement actions taken; the expected deterrent effect of the response based on experience from comparable situations; and consideration of fairness, equity, and national consistency.
- institute formal enforcement actions and follow-through wherever necessary, usually triggered by a failure to comply through less formal means within a specified period of time.
- initiate field investigations (i.e., inspections) in support of enforcement actions according to a systematic ‘annual compliance inspection plan.’

EPA expected approved States and EPA Regions to revise and formalize their enforcement policies to meet the new requirements and be consistent with the new EMS by the end of fiscal year 1986. However, the Federal Government has only limited ability to ensure that States do so.

**Enforcement Tools Available to Administering Agencies.** —Once an NPDES permit violation is identified, two primary levels of enforcement responses are used:

1. **Informal enforcement responses** include inspections, phone calls, violation letters, and Federal Notices of Violation. The latter, which is sent to the permittee and the administering State agency, can require certain steps to be taken according to a specified schedule.
2. **Formal enforcement responses** require written notification that specifies: 1) actions to be used to achieve compliance, 2) a timetable, 3) the consequences of noncompliance that are enforceable without having to prove the original violation, and 4) the legal consequences
BOX T.-Tools for Compliance Monitoring and Data Management Under NPDES

Tracking Compliance and Identifying Noncompliance

- Monitoring Reports (DM)
- Self-monitoring activities (Di)
- Periodically (typically, major and minor)
- The results of all monitoring required by the permit, and are to be submitted to EPA on a monthly or quarterly basis. Certain serious permit violations are to be reported at the time they occur, usually by phone.
- Inspections can in principle be used to collect samples to detect violations, but because of limited resources they are primarily used to verify reported noncompliance and to support formal enforcement actions.
- Quarterly Noncompliance Reports (QNCRs) are required to be prepared by EPA Regions or approved States. QNCRs document certain instances of noncompliance by major permittees that occurred during the previous quarter. The most recent rule distinguishes between Category I noncompliance (quantifiable, and therefore consistent nationwide) and Category II noncompliance (dependent on professional judgment, and therefore subject to variability). All instances of noncompliance that exceed certain criteria for magnitude, duration, and frequency—and any enforcement action taken—must be reported each quarter until resolved; permittees under enforcement orders must be listed until compliance with both the orders and permits is achieved.

Statistical Summary Reports (SASSRs), prepared by EPA Regions or States, are more comprehensive than QNCRs. They must include all instances in which a permittee had two or more violations of the permit limitation in any 6-month period, regardless of whether other criteria are met. Both QNCRs and SASSRs are intended to help EPA achieve oversight of Regional and State compliance monitoring programs.

EPA has evolved a complex system for ranking instances of noncompliance so that the limited resources devoted to enforcement activities are directed toward the most serious violations. A multi-step process is used to identify and evaluate noncompliance. First, an initial screening of DMR data is performed to identify all instances of noncompliance with permit enforcement exceed specified criteria. A detailed review by professional staff is only if an enforcement action should be initiated to determine whether the enforcement response should be formal. Two sets of criteria have been developed for evaluating violations: limits, compliance schedules, or reporting requirements in permits or enforcement orders.

- Violation Review Action Criteria (VRAC) set minimum thresholds for the duration and frequency of violations which require professional review, but not necessarily formal enforcement responses. The VRAC have been developed nationally, and can only be modified by States to be more stringent.

- Significant Noncompliance (SNC): EPA has developed further SNC criteria to define instances of significant noncompliance. All instances of SNC must be reported on QNCRs. Moreover, EPA specifies that all SNC violations must be corrected (generally within one quarter) or a formal enforcement response be initiated prior to its appearance on a second QNCR (generally within 60 days of the first QNCR), unless an acceptable justification for other (or no) action is provided. If States or Regions fail to act on this schedule, EPA has the authority and responsibility to do so.

Data Management

- Permit Compliance System (PCS): PCS, an automated data system, is intended to serve as EPA's primary management tool for tracking permit issuance.

---

The basic tools for carrying out these activities for indirect dischargers are discussed in the section describing the National Pretreatment Program.

QNCR criteria are specified in the QNCR Regulation, 40 CFR 125.45.
of noncompliance. Two basic types of formal enforcement actions are available:

—An administrative order (AO) generally specifies actions to be taken by a permittee to return to compliance, and a schedule for doing so; AOs issued by EPA cannot be used to assess penalties, although noncompliance is itself an enforceable violation. AOs are generally the first course of formal action because of their expedience and low cost. More than 1,600 AOs were issued by EPA Headquarters or Regional Offices for CWA violations in 1984 (327).

—Judicial referrals are civil actions filed by the State attorney general in an approved State, or otherwise by the Department of Justice. Such referrals are much more lengthy and costly procedures, and fewer than 100 such actions were initiated at the Federal level in 1984 (327).

Currently, court action is the only option available to the Federal Government that can result in the imposition of a financial penalty. Because of the slowness of this procedure and the low penalties that often result, however, it is generally considered an insufficient enforcement mechanism (see discussion of the enforcement issue later in this chapter). Moreover, insufficient resources for enforcement in EPA Regions and Headquarters effectively limit the number of judicial actions that can be undertaken. Some States have the legal authority to impose administrative penalties, and EPA recently was granted comparable authority through amendments to the CWA adopted in the Water Quality Act of 1987. Such authority should greatly enhance the capability of EPA to mount appropriate and timely enforcement actions against violators.

Evaluation of Program Performance .—Under the EMS, two levels of review are mandated to evaluate the performance of administering agencies (i.e., approved States or EPA Regions). First, EPA Headquarters is to perform midyear evaluations of the progress of EPA Regions in implementing the EMS. Second, Regional offices are to conduct reviews of approved State programs, including file audits. The new requirements of the EMS will be the benchmark for measuring system performance.

The National Pretreatment Program

In addition to discharging pollutants directly into receiving waters, industrial facilities also discharge into sewerage systems operated by POTWs; these discharges are designated as “indirect” to distinguish them from “direct” discharges into rivers and other waterbodies. In 1977, Congress broadened the effective scope of CWA by mandating additional regulation of pollutants in indirect industrial discharges (CWA Sec. 307(b)). To meet this mandate, in 1981 EPA developed the National Pretreatment Program (40 CFR 403).

General Structure

The National Pretreatment Program is designed to protect POTWs and the environment by preventing the introduction of industrial wastes that might upset or interfere with POTW operations, pass through the POTW untreated, or contaminate sewage sludge. Under this program, all POTWs are responsible for enforcing General Pretreatment Regulations, and some POTWs are also required to enforce National Categorical Standards.

These requirements are spelled out in the National Guidance for Oversight of NPDES Programs, issued June 28, 1985.
The General Pretreatment Regulations establish industrial, local, State, and Federal responsibilities for implementing the program. They also contain standards that prohibit the discharge into a POTW of pollutants which could cause fire or explosion, obstruction of flow, corrosion, interference or upset, or excess heating of wastewater entering the POTW. These general regulations apply to all industrial and commercial establishments that discharge into POTWs.

The National Categorical Standards contain specific pretreatment standards for the “categorical industries that are subject to regulation as significant sources of toxic pollutants (see table 13). A subset of the Nation’s POTWs, chosen on the basis of high wastewater flow and/or significant industrial inputs, must develop individual pretreatment programs that meet national specifications and must enforce these categorical standards against their indirect dischargers.

The General Pretreatment Regulations also include a provision for regulating industrial discharges of pollutants not covered by categorical standards. If a POTW experiences operational or pass-through problems that are related to industrial discharges of pollutants, POTWs are mandated to develop their own limitations on these discharges (termed ‘local limits’). Local limits can be more stringent than categorical regulations if this is needed to prevent pass-through or interference; they can also be developed to cover pollutants or industries not regulated by categorical standards.

Federal, State, POTW, and Industrial User Responsibilities

Responsibilities under the National Pretreatment Program are closely linked to the administration of NPDES program. Two general areas of responsibility are established. The Approval Authority (typically a State or EPA Region) is responsible for overseeing the development and implementation of individual POTW pretreatment programs. The Control Authority is responsible for ensuring that indirect industrial dischargers achieve and maintain compliance with pretreatment standards and requirements. Once an individual POTW program is approved, the POTW becomes the Control Authority.

States that have received NPDES program authority can also be approved to administer the pretreatment program (i.e., become the Approval Authority). To be approved, the State must demonstrate that it has the authority, resources, and procedures required to approve, oversee, and enforce enforcement of individual POTW pretreatment programs. EPA Regions serve as Approval Authority for nonapproved States, and provide general oversight, guidance, and enforcement assistance for approved States. Under certain circumstances, States with Approval Authority may design a program under which the State is also the Control Authority.

Of the 37 States and 1 Territory with EPA-approved NPDES programs, 24 also have approved pretreatment programs and hence are Approval Authorities (327). Six of these States have opted to assume Control Authority as well, so that POTWs in these States are not required to develop comprehensive individual pretreatment programs.

In general, all POTWs with a total daily flow of more than 5 million gallons, and smaller POTWs with significant industrial inputs, are required to develop and implement individual POTW pretreatment programs. Currently, only about 1,500 of the more than 15,000 POTWs in the United States meet these criteria (327). Of these about 40 percent have an average flow of more than 5 million gallons per day (mgd). These 1,500 POTWs receive an estimated 82 percent of the total industrial wastewater flow entering the Nation’s POTWs and over 90 percent of the wastewater flow originating from industries subject to categorical pretreatment standards (666). These POTWs also generate more than 75 percent of the sludge in the United States (503).

As of October 1986, EPA had approved more than 95 percent of the required individual POTW pretreatment programs (data from Strategic Planning and Management System, Office of Water Enforcement and Permits, U.S. EPA). Many of the approved programs, however, are only in the early stages of being implemented (e.g., ref. 497).

Industrial facilities that discharge wastewater to POTWs (termed ‘industrial users’ but which are

<sup>1</sup>11In large municipalities with several POTWs, the municipality is often designated as the Control Authority.

<sup>12</sup>12Texas operates its own permit program for both direct and indirect dischargers, alongside the NPDES program administered by EPA Region VI.
Wastes in Marine Environments

not subject to categorical standards must still comply with the General Pretreatment Regulations (see above), as well as additional permit, monitoring, or reporting requirements developed by States or POTWs. For categorical industrial users, responsibilities specified in categorical regulations include complying with technology-based effluent limitations on pollutants of concern, monitoring discharges on a periodic basis, and reporting monitoring data and compliance status to control authorities.

Types of Standards for Direct and Indirect Dischargers

Several different types of standards have been developed to regulate industrial discharges of wastewater and pollutants to POTWs or receiving waters. Figure 30 schematically illustrates the relationships between these standards and indicates where they apply within the overall regulatory framework for water pollution control.

Technology-Based Standards

The effluent limits set in NPDES permits to control direct industrial dischargers are primarily technology-based standards applied to individual pollutants. Existing direct industrial dischargers were initially required to meet interim standards based on the “best practicable control technology currently available” (BPT). The next levels of limitations imposed on industrial effluents are termed “best available technology economically achievable” (BAT), designed primarily to control toxic and non-conventional pollutants, and “best conventional pollutant control technology” (BCT), designed to control conventional pollutants. Finally, new industrial facilities are required to comply with “new source performance standards” (NSPS), which are generally comparable to BAT and BCT.

As described previously, municipal dischargers (POTWs) are required to meet standards different from those for direct industrial dischargers. Technology-based regulation of POTW discharges focuses almost exclusively on conventional pollutant control through the requirement that POTWs achieve “secondary” levels of treatment (ch. 9),

Indirect industrial dischargers must comply with technology-based pretreatment standards for existing sources (PSES) or pretreatment standards for new sources (PSNS). These standards, in combination with the fact that POTWs incidentally remove some pollutants prior to discharging wastewater (ch. 9), are intended to establish pollutant
control which is roughly equivalent to that achieved by the BAT and BCT standards for direct dischargers. In addition, indirect dischargers must comply with local limits where they exist; such limits can be developed by POTWs or States to prevent toxic pollutants from disrupting POTW treatment processes or from passing through a POTW into receiving waters.

Water Quality-Based Standards

Section 303 of CWA mandates that additional standards based on the health and desired use of individual waterbodies be developed for all waters of the United States. Such standards are to be used to supplement technology-based controls on point source dischargers and other sources where the technology-based standards are not capable of meeting water quality objectives. Water quality-based standards have been the subject of much debate and they are analyzed in detail later in this chapter.

### QUANTITIES OF PRIORITY POLLUTANTS IN INDUSTRIAL DISCHARGES

#### Types and Numbers of Industries Regulated Under the Clean Water Act

Almost 60,000 industrial facilities1 and 15,000 POTDEs are regulated as direct dischargers under NPDES and are required to comply with technology-based standards, as well as State water quality-based standards where they have been developed. Over 130,000 industries and commercial establishments have been identified as indirect industrial dischargers into POTWs.2 Of these, 14,000 to 16,000 are in industries covered by categorical standards3 (see table 13). While all indirect dischargers must comply with the General Pretreatment Regulations (as well as any local limits imposed by individual POTWs), only this subset must comply with the National Categorical Standards. (Table 13 lists only those dischargers in selected industries for which categorical standards have been promulgated or proposed.) Several other industrial categories have been granted exemptions from categorical standards (table 14).

Thus, approximately 75,000 direct and indirect industrial dischargers, and about 15,000 municipal facilities, are subject to federally derived standards. An additional 85,000 or more indirect dischargers must comply only with the General Pretreatment Standards.

#### Table 14.—Industrial Categories Granted Exemptions From Categorical Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number of facilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adhesives and sealants</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto and other laundries</td>
<td>90,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon black</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gum and wood chemicals</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paint and ink formulation</td>
<td>1,217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paving and roofing materials</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photographic equipment and supplies</td>
<td>1,576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber manufacturing</td>
<td>38,763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing and publishing</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soaps and detergents</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This total includes about 50,000 individually permitted facilities and about 10,000 additional facilities in industrial categories which have been or will be granted general permits (e.g., offshore oil and gas operations). See the discussion below about permit backlogs for further detail on general permits.

2 This total includes the following number of facilities from exempted or noncategorical industries: 69,000 industrial and commercial laundries; 39,000 printing and publishing facilities; 7,000 timber products processing facilities; 1,100 plastics molding and forming facilities; 970 textile mills; and 750 paint manufacturers or formulators. These data are from EPA Industrial Technology Division's database (cited in ref. 666).

3 The range, accuracy of which is unknown, is derived by adding estimates for the number of individual facilities in each of the categorical industries taken from EPA's development documents (503,666). Approximately two-thirds (10,600) of these facilities are electric utilities or metal finishers.
Regulations and any additional local limits developed by POTWs or States.

**Amounts of Wastewater and Priority Pollutants Generated**

Total industrial wastewater flow is roughly estimated to be 18 billion gallons daily, or 6.4 trillion gallons per year, with about three-fourths originating from direct dischargers and one-fourth from indirect dischargers (255,256,666).

Prior to treatment, raw wastestreams from direct and indirect dischargers contain large quantities of toxic metals and organic chemicals. EPA’s Monitoring and Data Support Division (MDSD) maintains a database of flow and composition estimates for wastewaters of selected categorical industries. These data provide a way to estimate the quantity of metals and organic chemicals present in industrial wastewaters; however, this is a conservative estimate for several reasons:

- Only some of those industries for which categorical standards have been promulgated or proposed are included. In addition, pollutants from noncategorical industries are excluded.
- Only a fraction of all priority pollutants are included. 17
- Nonpriority pollutants are not included in the estimates.

The MDSD data (tables 15 and 16) indicate that a minimum of about 400 million pounds of priority metals and about 170 million pounds of priority organic chemicals are present in the raw wastewaters generated by direct dischargers in categorical industries each year. Raw wastestreams from indirect categorical dischargers are estimated to contain a minimum of 200 million pounds of priority metals and almost 60 million pounds of priority organic chemicals annually (665). Together, well over 800 million pounds of priority pollutants are present in raw wastewaters annually generated by categorical industries discharging to POTWs or the navigable waters of the United States.

### Table 15.-Expected Reductions in Discharges of Priority Metals and Organic Chemicals by Selected Categorical Industries, Assuming Full Compliance With and Implementation of BAT and PSES Controls (summary of table 16)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of discharge</th>
<th>Amount from raw</th>
<th>Raw</th>
<th>Full controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Priority metals:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect dischargers</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>96.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct dischargers</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>98.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>97.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Priority organic chemicals:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect dischargers</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>85.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct dischargers</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>99.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>95.6%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All amounts are millions of pounds per Year.

b. Beginning reduction in amount of toxic as compared to amount in raw waste stream.


Projected Removal of Priority Pollutants Through Full Treatment

Full implementation of, and compliance with, categorical standards would achieve major reductions in the amounts of priority pollutants discharged by these industries. Tables 15 and 16 summarize data on the estimated reductions that could be achieved under full implementation of BAT (for direct dischargers) and PSES (for indirect dischargers) categorical standards. These data are drawn from performance models of control technologies mandated under standards already in place or proposed (665). The total quantity of priority pollutants present in discharges of fully regulated wastestreams is projected to be only about 3 percent of the levels in the raw wastewaters. Even at this level of removal, however, more than 13 million pounds of priority metals and 10 million pounds of priority organic chemicals will be discharged an-
Table 16.—Expected Reductions in Discharges of Priority Metals and Organic Chemicals by Selected Categorical Industries, Assuming Full Compliance With and Implementation of BAT and PSES Controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priority metals</th>
<th>Indirect discharges</th>
<th>Direct discharges</th>
<th>Priority chemicals</th>
<th>Indirect discharges</th>
<th>Direct discharges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Raw PSES(a)</td>
<td>Raw BAT(b)</td>
<td>Percent removal(c)</td>
<td>Raw PSES(a)</td>
<td>Raw BAT(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum forming</td>
<td>1,192 8 99</td>
<td>736 16 98</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 0 100</td>
<td>736 16 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery manufacturing</td>
<td>3,495 2 100 566 1 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil coating (1)</td>
<td>363 2 99 251 1 99</td>
<td>85 2 98</td>
<td></td>
<td>85 2 98</td>
<td>3 0 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil coating (11)</td>
<td>76 18 77 3 1 78</td>
<td>37 1 97</td>
<td></td>
<td>37 1 97</td>
<td>31 3 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper forming?</td>
<td>8,780 10 100 7,219 9 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>261 42 95</td>
<td>102 19 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical and electronic components (1)</td>
<td>147 135 8 63 38 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>666 5 99</td>
<td>566 5 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foundries</td>
<td>12,317 13 100 12,827 16 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic chemicals (1)</td>
<td>2,300 24 99 6,067 208 97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic chemicals (11)</td>
<td>195 1 99 394 17 96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron and steel</td>
<td>18,402 361 98 269,606 750 100</td>
<td>18,635 847 95 30,597 77 100</td>
<td></td>
<td>8,815 92 99 2,429 42 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leather tanning</td>
<td>5,321 475 91 899 17 98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal finishing/electroplating,...</td>
<td>136,684 3,754 97 62,446 1,704 97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals forming</td>
<td>215 1 100 631 1 100</td>
<td>1,222 1,222 0 6,248 38 99</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,752 3,752 0 650 35 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals (1)</td>
<td>131 3 98 331 45 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals (II)</td>
<td>249 0 100 750 3 100</td>
<td>18,698 17 100 118,420 123 100</td>
<td></td>
<td>11,152 108 118,420 123 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCP SF</td>
<td>5,519 23 100 34,999 102 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petroleum refining</td>
<td>291 291 0 1,488 291 80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmaceuticals</td>
<td>125 125 0 26 26 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastics molding and forming</td>
<td>26 26 0 41 29 30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcelain enameling</td>
<td>527 15 97 277 8 97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulp and paper</td>
<td>864 864 0 2,865 2,752 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Textiles</td>
<td>725 603 17 590 360 98</td>
<td>5,645 5,582 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>11,052 1,131 90</td>
<td>11,052 1,131 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>197,944 6,754 97 403,075 6,395 98</td>
<td>56,195 8,307 85</td>
<td></td>
<td>171,799 1,690 99</td>
<td>171,799 1,690 99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a\)Quantities are in thousands of pounds per year.
\(b\)Amounts expected to be discharged under full implementation of, and compliance with, PSES or BAT categorical standards. See text for definition of PSES and BAT; note that indirect removals are mandated through PSES standards; direct removals are mandated through BAT standards.
\(c\)Percent reduction in amount of priority metals or organic chemicals (relative amount in raw wastewater).
\(d\)Data for the Copper Forming Category are derived from U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Final Development Document for Effluent Limitations and Standards for the Copper Forming Point Source Category, EPA 440/1-84-1074, table X-19, p. 467 (Washington, D.C., March 1984), during a review of a draft of this OTA report, EPA found that the primary source of information for this table (see below) contained incorrect data for this category.
\(e\)Data for Organic Chemicals and Plastics and Synthetic Fibers (OCPSF Category) are taken from "Correction Notice of Availability" published by EPA (50 Federal Register 4836, Oct 11, 1985).

These data are the most recent available estimates for the OCPSF category and have been revised downward from previous estimates. They should not be regarded as final, however, as they may be subject to further revision.

nually in wastewaters originating from categorical industries (665). 18

Direct dischargers account for more than twice as many of the priority pollutants present in raw wastewaters than do indirect dischargers (69 percent v. 31 percent); in contrast, most (about 65 percent) of the priority pollutants expected to be discharged upon full implementation of BAT and PSES controls will originate from indirect sources. However, pollutants in indirect discharges are subject to additional “incidental” removal as a result of treatment at POTWs, so that further reductions are achieved prior to their discharge to waterbodies. 19

About 80 percent of all indirectly discharged industrial wastewater enters POTWs that are required to have individual pretreatment programs, and a similar percentage receives secondary or higher levels of treatment at POTWs (255,503; also see ch. 9). 20 As discussed previously, the intent of the national categorical standards is to achieve a total reduction—through a combination of pretreatment by industries and incidental removal by POTWs—in discharges of priority pollutants by regulated indirect dischargers that is roughly equivalent to the levels resulting from implementation of BAT and BCT standards for direct dischargers.

Removal of Priority Pollutants Achieved to Date

The partial implementation achieved to date of standards developed under the NPDES and National Pretreatment programs has significantly reduced the amounts of priority pollutants in direct and indirect discharges from some categorical industries. However, the Nation is far from achieving full implementation of, and full compliance with, categorical standards. Moreover, these standards only apply to some industries and pollutants, so even if fully effective, significant quantities of toxic pollutants will remain unregulated by categorical standards.

Unfortunately, existing data do not allow an accurate assessment of how close these programs are to achieving full removal of regulated pollutants. The MDSD database does contain estimates of “current” discharges for industries with categorical standards in place. These estimates are highly questionable, however, because the current discharge is assigned the same value as the discharge expected under full implementation of BAT or PSES, even though implementation of and/or compliance with the standard is far from complete in many cases (e.g., metal finishing and electroplating). These and other shortcomings cast sufficient doubt on estimates of current discharges so as to preclude their use in estimating the extent of removal of priority pollutants achieved to date.

For particular industries, more reliable data are available in some cases and reveal considerable variation in progress toward achieving full BAT or PSES reductions. For example, EPA’s most recently published estimates for the Organic Chemicals, Plastics, and Synthetic Fibers (OCPSF) industry (50 FR 41528, Oct. 11, 1985) suggest that technology already in place is achieving pollutant removals of more than 99 percent for direct dischargers, resulting in discharges that are only about fivefold higher than that expected under the most stringent BAT standards proposed. 21 For indirect dischargers, however, these same data indicate only a 4 percent removal, vastly less than the removal expected under full implementation of PSES. 22

OCPSF industry representatives argue that this level of removal has been accomplished—even in the absence of final regulations—by installing the appropriate pollutant controls either in anticipation of the regulations or in response to permit limits that have been developed using the best professional judgment (BPJ) of the permit writers (R. Schwer, E.I. DuPont de Nemours & Co., pers. comm., November 1986).

18 It is important to remember that these removal estimates are only for a subset of priority pollutants and do not include any nonpriority substances. Nor do they include any pollutants from noncategorical industries.

19 Many pollutants removed from industrial wastewaters treated at POTWs will become contaminants of municipal sludge, generating a different set of disposal problems. This issue is discussed in detail in ch. 9.

20 In marine waters areas, a smaller percentage of total wastewater flow into POTWs—and presumably indirectly discharged industrial wastewater as well—receives secondary or higher treatment. About 39 percent of the wastewater entering POTWs discharging to coastal waters, and 60 percent of that entering POTWs discharging to estuaries, receives secondary or higher treatment (503). This is probably due in large part to the fact that a number of large coastal POTWs have been granted or have applied for waivers from achieving secondary treatment under CWA Sec. 301(h). The fraction of total POTW flow contributed by industrial dischargers is also slightly lower in marine waters: 14.5 percent v. 17 percent nationally.
Reducing Priority Pollutants in Specific Industries

Table 15 presents data on selected primary industrial categories, indicating a) the quantities of priority pollutants in their raw wastewaters, and b) the quantities expected in their discharges assuming full compliance with categorical standards. Direct and indirect dischargers, and priority metals and organic chemicals, are considered separately. Several conclusions can be drawn from these data:

- Whether for raw or fully regulated (PSES/BAT) wastestreams, a few industries tend to dominate the picture, for both direct and indirect discharges. In each case, the top 3, 4, or 5 industrial categories comprise 90 percent or more of the total amount of priority metals or organic chemicals present in wastewaters.
- The effectiveness of BAT or PSES levels of control varies greatly among different industries, ranging from very low removal (pulp and paper) to essentially full removal (organic chemicals, plastics, and synthetic fibers\(^2\)). Under full implementation of standards, however, most industries are predicted to achieve more than 90-percent removal.

Estimates for this industrial category are based on the controls specified in the proposed categorical regulation.

ISSUES IN THE MANAGEMENT OF INDUSTRIAL EFFLUENTS

A number of issues remain regarding the adequacy of the current framework that regulates industrial discharges. These issues primarily concern major constraints on the development and implementation of the NPDES and pretreatment programs. Four key areas of deficiency need to be addressed:

1. Delays in program implementation, including:
   - Delays in promulgation of Federal regulations, and
   - Unpermitted sources and permit renewal backlogs;
2. Gaps in program coverage, including:
   - Nonregulated industries,
   - Nonregulated toxic pollutants, and
   - Permit deficiencies;
3. Inadequacy of regulatory compliance and enforcement, including:
   - Self-reporting: quality and completeness of discharge data,
   - Extent of noncompliance with effluent discharge limits, and
   - Effectiveness of enforcement; and
4. Additional issues facing the pretreatment program, including:
   - Lack of incentives for POTW program implementation and enforcement, and
   - Hazardous waste in sewers.

In addition to these four areas, several other problems that adversely affect the management of industrial effluents are often identified. These include: 1) the inadequacy of resources available for permitting, compliance monitoring, and enforcement activities; 2) a need for better management of the data collected from dischargers to allow centralized access for assessing program performance and progress; and 3) inconsistent policy, methodology, and performance among EPA Regions, States, and local authorities with respect to implementing and enforcing water pollution control programs.

Delays in Program Implementation

Delays in Promulgation of Federal Categorical Regulations

In the absence of final categorical regulations, it is difficult for POTWs and other regulatory bodies to carry out enforcement against dischargers. Regulations for some significant industrial categories (e.g., organic chemicals and plastics) have been proposed, but not yet promulgated (table 17). Uncertainties about the final form of these regulations have caused delays in the implementation of treatment technologies in these industries. Even where final regulations exist, scheduled pretreatment compliance dates have in many cases not yet been
Table 17.—Final and Proposed Regulations for Categorical Industries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Industry</th>
<th>Date of promulgation</th>
<th>Effective date</th>
<th>Date of PSES compliance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timber processing</td>
<td>1-26-81</td>
<td>3-30-81</td>
<td>1-26-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electroplating: 1. Integrated</td>
<td>1-28-81</td>
<td>3-30-81</td>
<td>4-27-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonintegrated</td>
<td>1-28-81</td>
<td>3-30-81</td>
<td>6-30-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron and steel</td>
<td>5-27-82</td>
<td>7-10-82</td>
<td>7-10-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic chemicals I</td>
<td>6-29-82</td>
<td>8-12-82</td>
<td>8-12-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Textile mills</td>
<td>9-02-82</td>
<td>10-18-82</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal mining</td>
<td>10-13-82</td>
<td>11-26-82</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petroleum refining</td>
<td>10-18-82</td>
<td>12-01-82</td>
<td>12-01-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steam electric</td>
<td>11-19-82</td>
<td>1-02-83</td>
<td>7-01-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulp and paper</td>
<td>11-18-82</td>
<td>1-03-83</td>
<td>7-01-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leather tanning</td>
<td>11-23-82</td>
<td>1-06-83</td>
<td>11-25-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcelain enameling</td>
<td>11-24-82</td>
<td>1-07-83</td>
<td>11-25-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil coating I</td>
<td>12-01-82</td>
<td>1-17-83</td>
<td>12-01-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ore mining</td>
<td>12-03-82</td>
<td>1-17-83</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical and electronic</td>
<td>4-08-83</td>
<td>5-19-83</td>
<td>7-01-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components I</td>
<td>4-08-83</td>
<td>5-19-83</td>
<td>11-08-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(arsenic subcategory)</td>
<td>7-15-83</td>
<td>8-29-83</td>
<td>2-15-86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal finishing</td>
<td>8-15-83</td>
<td>9-26-83</td>
<td>8-15-86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper forming</td>
<td>10-24-83</td>
<td>12-07-83</td>
<td>10-24-86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum forming</td>
<td>10-27-83</td>
<td>12-12-83</td>
<td>10-27-86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmaceuticals</td>
<td>11-17-83</td>
<td>1-02-84</td>
<td>11-17-86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical and electronic</td>
<td>12-14-83</td>
<td>1-27-84</td>
<td>7-14-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components II</td>
<td>3-09-84</td>
<td>4-18-84</td>
<td>3-09-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery manufacturing</td>
<td>3-08-84</td>
<td>4-23-84</td>
<td>3-09-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals</td>
<td>8-22-84</td>
<td>10-05-84</td>
<td>8-22-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic chemicals II</td>
<td>12-17-84</td>
<td>1-30-85</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastics molding and forming</td>
<td>6-77. 877e</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(phthalates subcategory)</td>
<td>8-23-85</td>
<td>10-07-85</td>
<td>8-23-88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals forming</td>
<td>9-20-85</td>
<td>11-04-85</td>
<td>9-20-88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonferrous metals II</td>
<td>10-30-85</td>
<td>12-13-85</td>
<td>10-31-88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foundries</td>
<td>3-21-83</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic Chemicals and Plastics</td>
<td>10-04-85</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Synthetic Fibers ...proposed</td>
<td>12-15-869</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pesticides</td>
<td>12-15-869</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BAT standards take effect as specified by the compliance schedule written into individual NPDES permits issued after the effective date of the regulation.

Existing job electroplaters and independent circuit board manufacturers must comply only with the electroplating regulations. All other electroplating subcategories are also covered by metal finishing regulations.

No pretreatment standards were promulgated for these categories because they contain no indirect dischargers.

No pretreatment standards were promulgated for these categories because they contain no indirect dischargers.

This subcategory is under study to establish treatability data for possible future regulation. Final action is expected in June 1987 (51 Federal Register 4526, Apr. 21, 1986). EPA expects to exempt this subcategory from pretreatment standards under Paragraph 8 of the NRDC consent decree.

Final regulations for the pesticides industry were issued in 1985, but subsequently withdrawn by EPA (51 Federal Register 44911, Dec. 15, 1986). No date for reissuance of the regulation was provided.

SOURCE: Office of Technology Assessment, 1987; based on Federal Register notices cited in the appropriate sections of 40 Code of Federal Regulations, Sections 401 to 460, except as noted above.
reached. As of the end of 1985, final compliance dates had not yet passed for half of the industrial categories for which pretreatment regulations have been issued; only five more compliance dates were reached by the end of 1986, leaving nine categories still without final regulations in effect. 23

Final regulations for all but two of the primary categorical industries, OCPSF and Pesticides, have now been promulgated. Regulations for pesticides have been promulgated, but were challenged in court and are being raised. 24 Moreover, the one remaining industry for which standards have never been issued (OCPSF) is the category contributing the most priority organic chemicals in its raw wastewaters (table 16).25 In addition, compliance dates for the seven latest regulations to be promulgated will not be reached until well into 1987 and 1988 (table 17).

The effect of delays in issuing final regulations can be very different for direct and indirect dischargers. In the absence of final regulations, technology-based limits based on the best professional judgment (BPJ) of the permit writer are often written into NPDES permits for direct dischargers. In the same situation, however, indirect dischargers are only subject to local limits (if they exist), which are based largely on the ability of the POTW to meet its own NPDES permit limits or sludge disposal requirements. This factor may in part account for the major differences in the levels of pollutant removal achieved by direct and indirect dischargers in the OCPSF industry in the absence of final categorical regulations.

\footnote{Final compliance dates with pretreatment standards are specified for indirect dischargers, and are required under CWA Sec. 307 to be no more than 3 years after the date of promulgation. For direct dischargers, compliance dates are written into permits, typically in the context of a compliance schedule. Sec. 307 specifies that compliance should generally be required within 1 year, but in no case more than 3 years, after promulgation of the BAT standards. However, delays in renewing permits (discussed later in this chapter) may further lengthen the period before compliance must be achieved.}

\footnote{Final regulations for the Pesticides industry actually were promulgated on Oct. 4, 1985 (50 FR 40672). Various aspects of the rule were challenged in the Court of Appeals, however, and EPA subsequently discovered significant errors as well. Under Court order, EPA remanded the regulation on Dec. 15, 1986 (51 FR 44911).}

\footnote{It is unclear when final regulations will be issued for the OCPSF category. EPA recently announced its intention to file for an extension of its deadline (set by the Court at Dec. 31, 1986) for promulgation of final regulations and has asked interested parties to comment on several new proposals (51 FR 44082, Dec. 8, 1986).}

Unpermitted Sources and Permit Renewal Backlogs

Lack of Ability To Identify Facilities That Have Not Applied for Permits.—Many (if not most) States and Regions lack a systematic method for identifying nonfilers, instead relying on informal approaches such as citizen complaints. EPA and State permit officials generally believe that all major dischargers have been identified and have applied for permits (576), although data supporting this claim are not available.

Several studies, however, suggest that unpermitted facilities may be significant sources of pollutants in at least some areas (462,576). In Puget Sound, for example, many nonpermitted commercial and industrial facilities were recently identified and as much as 20 percent of the toxic pollutants entering Puget Sound are estimated to originate from such nonpermitted discharges (462).

Backlog in Processing Submitted Applications for Initial Permits.—The backlog in issuing new NPDES permits was a major problem in the late 1970s and early 1980s. The extent of this backlog varies greatly: 1) among EPA Regions and approved States, 2) between municipal and industrial dischargers, and 3) between major and minor dischargers. EPA national statistics for 1982 indicated more than 16,000 unprocessed permit applications, only about 200 (1.3 percent) of which were from major dischargers (576). Studies of individual States documented a similar situation (576). The State of Washington has eliminated its backlog of unissued initial permits for major dischargers, and is now concentrating efforts on “significant minor” dischargers (462).

Resource limitations are routinely cited as the major factor that forces permitting efforts to focus primarily on renewals, new sources, and major dischargers. This factor appears to be the primary reason for the backlog in general and for the much lower rate of permitting for minor dischargers.

Backlog in Renewing Expired Permits.—EPA and delegated States also face the continual, and
in many cases increasing, task of renewing permits that have expired. While an expired permit is still enforceable, the opportunity is lost to review and upgrade permits in a timely manner. Moreover, each expired permit that is not reissued represents a de facto permit length longer than the 5-year term intended under CWA.

Most initial NPDES permits were issued in 1973 and 1974, with expiration dates set for 1978 and 1979. As of the end of 1982, EPA reported 34,000 expired (and not reissued) permits. About 13 percent (4,400) of these were for major dischargers, the remainder for minor dischargers. Over half of these permits had been expired for more than 22 months (576). A similar picture existed in the five States that GAO examined in detail.

Several factors have been cited as causes for this backlog:

- the lack of BAT guidelines for use in upgrading effluent limits,
- heavy reliance on BPJ as a substitute for BAT and BCT guidelines,
- a shortage of resources devoted to permit issuance,
- the need to develop general permits for certain categories of minor dischargers which do not require individual permits, and
- low management priority placed on renewing permits for minor dischargers.

EPA recently has increased the resources devoted to permit issuance and renewal, and has promulgated most of the BAT regulations it was required to develop. These efforts were taken in part to meet a national goal of eliminating the permit backlog for major dischargers by the end of fiscal year 1985, one that was largely met by EPA Regional offices, but not by many approved States.

Recent EPA data suggests a considerable reduction in the national backlog for major dischargers, although a substantial fraction of major permits and an even larger fraction of minor permits remain expired (327). Thirty-four percent of all major industrial and 13 percent of all major municipal permits are expired. This is a total of 1,810 expired permits, compared to the 4,400 reported in 1982. Many approved States continue to have even larger backlogs, however. For example, in Washington half of all permits (and one-quarter of those for major dischargers) are currently expired (462).

EPA is addressing the minor discharger backlog by developing general permits to cover an estimated 10,000 minor dischargers. A second, more controversial approach has been EPA’s legislative proposal to extend the term of NPDES permits from the current 5 years to 10 years (242). EPA argues that this change would reduce the annual permitting workload, and presumably the backlog; modification of permits would still be required to incorporate “significant new standards. Opponents view this proposal as a ‘paperwork’ solution that would further reduce the opportunity to review and upgrade permits at the frequency originally intended by CWA.

Gaps and Deficiencies in Coverage of Toxic Pollutants

Nonregulated Industries

Some entire categories of industrial dischargers, such as car washes and other commercial laundries or paint and ink formulators, are exempted from BAT effluent guidelines and pretreatment standards (see table 14). In addition, certain categories of other industrial categories, for example, adhesives and sealants, are exempted. Finally, pretreatment standards for some industrial categories, such as textile mills and plastics molding and forming, were proposed but never promulgated.

These and other categories can contribute significant amounts of toxic pollutants to surface waters or POTWs. The laundries and textile mills categories together account for approximately 22

---

2Such permits have been issued or proposed for activities such as offshore and coastal oil and gas facilities, coal mining, animal feedlots, construction sites, noncontact cooling water, petroleum storage and transfer, deep seabed mining, and seafood processing. Currently, general permits cover about 7,700 facilities (E. Ovseñik, Office of Water Enforcement and Permits, EPA, pers. comm., January 1987).

3Reasons given for exempting these industries from effluent limitations for toxic pollutants include: presence of insignificant levels of pollutants, no or few direct or indirect dischargers, economic constraints, no new plants expected, presence of pollutants for which removal technology does not exist, etc. These facilities must still obtain and meet effluent limitations specified in their NPDES permits; in the absence of categorical standards, however, limitations are likely to be specified only for conventional pollutants or to rely on the best professional judgment (BPJ) of the permit writers for toxic pollutants.
percent of the total industrial flow into POTWs. Approximately 91,000 laundries, including 22,000 car washes, have a total wastewater flow of 526 million gallons per day; this wastewater contains at least 13 priority pollutants. About 1,000 textile mills discharge 312 million gallons per day to POTWs; pollutants identified in these wastewaters include several priority metals and organic chemicals (503).

Other industries not included by EPA on its original list of industrial categories may also be significant sources of toxic pollutants. These industries include treatment, storage, and disposal facilities for hazardous wastes; drum and barrel reconditioners; solvent redairers; battery salvagers; septage haulers; and automotive radiator shops. Many small dischargers within industries that have categorical regulations are exempted from the regulations because of the potentially heavy economic burden of meeting effluent standards. For example, electroplating job-shops that discharge less than 10,000 gallons per day of wastewaters containing chromium, copper, nickel, or zinc are specifically exempted from pretreatment regulations. In some cases, however, such low-volume discharges can contain high enough concentrations of toxic pollutants to upset POTW operations. Although local limits (which are authorized and enforceable under Federal law) could be used to regulate such discharges, POTWs face many obstacles in developing such limits, particularly in the absence of Federal standards or guidance (503,653,666).

Nonregulated Toxic Pollutants

Many toxic pollutants in industrial wastewaters are not regulated by national standards for a variety of reasons—for example, lack of data on the presence of certain pollutants in a wastestream; lack of analytical means for measuring certain pollutants; lack of technological means to control certain pollutants; low regulatory priority; or the diversity and complexity of individual plants or processes within an industrial category.

Categorical regulations generally contain standards for only a fraction of all priority pollutants. Development of a standard only occurs if three conditions are met: 1) the pollutant is present in high amounts, 2) the technology for its control is available, and 3) the implementation of that technology is economically feasible. Thus, many priority pollutants—in particular, priority organic chemicals—may be present in high concentrations but remain unregulated for technological or economic reasons. For example:

- EPA has not developed limits for phthalates generated by the plastics molding and forming industry because it does not have sufficient data on technologies for controlling these chemicals (51 FR 14526, Apr. 26, 1986).
- While pretreatment standards have been developed for the petroleum refining industry, they contain no limits on priority organic chemicals, even though this category is a very significant source of such pollutants, accounting for almost 15 percent of the expected discharge of priority organic chemicals to POTWS under full PSES implementation. 30
- As a result of the much greater focus on metals than on organic chemicals, full implementation of EPA’s categorical pretreatment standards is predicted to greatly reduce total inputs of priority metals to POTWS, but to reduce priority organic chemicals by only 47 percent (666).3

Other facilities that discharge priority pollutants but are not regulated by national standards include those that: 1) contribute wastes to POTWs that are either not required to or have not yet developed an individual pretreatment program, and 2) are in noncategorical industries. About 30 percent of the priority pollutants that enter POTWs originate from noncategorical sources (503). Available data suggest that roughly equal amounts originate from domestic households and from noncategorical industries or commercial establishments.

Estimates of the amount of hazardous chemicals introduced by these industries into POTWs are presented in ref. 666.
Finally, both NPDES and the pretreatment programs have limited ability to address discharges of nonpriority pollutants. Categorical standards have focused almost exclusively on the 126 priority pollutants. However, numerous additional toxic pollutants are known to be present in significant quantities in both direct and indirect discharges. Data collected by EPA for the OCPSF industrial category indicates that this industry’s raw wastewaters contain 2.5 pounds of nonpriority organic chemicals—including such toxic compounds as formaldehyde and methanol—for every pound of priority organic chemicals. Other categories, such as the pesticides and pharmaceuticals industries, are also significant sources of toxic nonpriority pollutants (666).

In principle, categorical standards, local limits, or water quality-based standards can be used to control nonpriority pollutants, and in some cases these approaches have been developed. However, these types of controls do not currently provide a systematic means for addressing pollutants that fall outside the primary focus of the CWA pollutant control programs.

At least two legal mechanisms for regulating these additional toxic pollutants are available, but they have only been used to a limited extent. Section 307(a) of CWA gives EPA the authority to add substances to the priority pollutants list, but this authority has not been used to date. Under paragraph 4(c) of the Consent Decree reached between EPA and the Natural Resources Defense Council, EPA is required to identify, and possibly regulate, toxic pollutants that might violate the objectives of the NPDES and National Pretreatment programs but that are not listed as priority pollutants. In one survey of industrial wastewaters, EPA detected the presence of over 1,500 compounds; of the more than 400 that were specifically identified, 6 compounds were chosen as candidates for future regulation due to their presence in significant amounts and their human or aquatic toxicity (666). No standards have yet been developed, however, due to lack of information on the ability of in-place or other available control technologies to remove these pollutants.

Permit Deficiencies

Lack of Limits on Toxic Pollutants.—Typically, discharge permits specify numeric limits for most or all conventional pollutants, but far fewer limits are specified for priority metals or organic chemicals. While the development and introduction of BAT guidelines will help alleviate this deficiency, several aspects of this problem remain:

- Monitoring for priority pollutants other than those known to be present (and therefore specified in the discharge permit) is rarely required, so that the presence of additional priority pollutants in a discharge often is not documented.
- Even where the presence of priority pollutants has been reported by permittees or discovered through sampling, limits for such pollutants often have not been included in permits. For example, an audit of 44 permittees discharging into Puget Sound that reported the presence of priority pollutants revealed only 14 that had any limitations on the reported substances (462).
- While technically a violation of CWA, the discharge of a pollutant for which no standard exists in the permit is unlikely to be identified or treated as a violation.
- Water quality-based standards have not been developed by most States for most priority pollutants, hampering the introduction of water quality-based discharge limits on these substances into individual permits. Even where developed, the standards do not address sediment contamination, which is probably the more important “sink” for most metals and organic chemicals of concern (see section later in this chapter on water quality standards).

Heavy Reliance on Best Professional Judgment (BPJ) in the Absence of Standards.—Whenever national standards for a particular industry or pollutant do not exist or have not yet been developed, individual permit writers must rely on their BPJ. At least two levels of discretion are involved: determining which, if any, pollutants should be limited, and setting the actual level. Both elements can
be significant sources of inconsistency in setting discharge limits. 32

'Backsliding on Permit Limits During Renewal.—The CWA's goal of achieving zero discharge of pollutants by 1985 was based on a 'ratchet' approach in which discharge limits would be made increasingly stringent in successive permits. Indeed, current Federal regulations require that a reissued permit "be at least as stringent" as the previous permit, unless certain exceptional conditions are met (40 CFR 122.44(1))." 33

However, some "second round" permits incorporating BAT limits on toxic pollutants have been found to contain weaker limits than those imposed in the "first round" permits. For example, in a 1985 study of 16 major industrial dischargers in the Puget Sound basin, 14 of the renewed permits had been weakened for at least 1 pollutant, and 8 were weakened for at least 3 pollutants (458). Many of the weakened limits were for conventional pollutants based on BPT standards promulgated a decade ago. Overall, for those pollutants specified in both sets of permits, standards for 40 percent of the pollutants had been weakened, 27 percent had been strengthened, and 33 percent remained unchanged.

Justification for such changes may often exist, particularly given the extensive use of BPJ in setting initial limits. However, there appears to be a disturbing lack of appropriate means for communicating or explaining such changes to the public during the renewal process (458,462).

**Inadequacy of Regulatory Compliance and Enforcement**

Various elements of the NPDES and pretreatment programs determine their effectiveness in ensuring compliance with permits or other means of controlling the discharge of pollutants from point sources. Significant problems occur in three areas: quality and completeness of data submitted by regulated facilities, extent of noncompliance, and effectiveness of enforcement.

Information available on these issues is often far from complete or is regional and selective in nature, and thus may not always be representative of the national situation. Moreover, data may not be entirely current, an inherent problem in light of frequent changes in program design, permit status, available resources, agency priorities, and regulations. Finally, much of the information needed for a thorough national analysis is often unavailable, or is inaccessible due to the relatively primitive state of development of national databases.74

**Self-Reporting: Quality and completeness of Discharge Data**

The efficacy of the entire NPDES program rests on the ability of agencies to obtain reliable data characterizing the discharges of permitted facilities. Given the immense number of such facilities, NPDES relies on a self-reporting system in which facilities are required to monitor their discharges and regularly report the results to the appropriate EPA Region or delegated State. Administrative review of reported data is the only systematic means of identifying instances of noncompliance, although inspections are occasionally used to supplement industry reporting.

Several problems with this self-reporting system have been identified. The foremost and most obvious of these is that such a system relies to a large extent on the integrity of permittees to submit accurate information. In order to generate reliable data, a self-reporting system must include effective deterrents to counter the obvious incentive to fal-

---

32 Inadequacy of Regulatory Compliance and Enforcement

33 Inadequacy of Regulatory Compliance and Enforcement

74 Self-Reporting: Quality and completeness of Discharge Data

195 Ch. 8—Managing Industrial Effluents

**Note:** The text contains references to various sections of the Clean Water Act (CWA) and associated regulations. For example, 40 CFR 122.44(1) refers to conditions that must be met for a reissued permit to be at least as stringent as the previous permit. The text also mentions the Puget Sound basin study and the inclusion of regulatory changes in permits. The efficacy of the NPDES program is discussed, focusing on the need for reliable data to assess compliance. The text highlights the limitations of self-reporting systems and the importance of comprehensive data collection and enforcement.
sify information rather than comply with discharge limitations. Such deterrents require that the system be able to detect and penalize those who violate reporting requirements.

These deficiencies call into serious question the adequacy of the mechanisms available to EPA and the States to verify information received through the NPDES self-monitoring system. In the face of declining resources available for such activities, this crucial link in the current compliance and enforcement program is unlikely to be strengthened.

Violations of Reporting Requirements.—Failure to submit a discharge monitoring report (DMR), or submission of incomplete data, are obvious means of concealing serious noncompliance with discharge limitations. One study of major industrial and municipal NPDES permittees in six States found that 8 percent failed to submit a DMR at least once during an 18-month period, and that 37 percent had submitted one or more incomplete DMRs (576). However, this rate of compliance is an apparent improvement in the DMR submission rate for industrial dischargers compared with that found in an earlier study (574).

EPA or State response to reporting violations varies, but in general such violations appear to have received little or no attention. As an extreme example, a recently identified major discharger into Puget Sound had not submitted a DMR for 30 consecutive months, yet no action had been taken by the permitting authority (462).

Quality of Reported Effluent Sample Analyses.—In several surveys of the quality of chemical analyses of effluent samples submitted by major NPDES permittees, EPA found that significantly more than half of all permittees reported unacceptable data for one or more effluent parameters, and that 20 to 25 percent of all analyses were of unacceptable quality (576).

In many cases, poor performance was due to a high rate of reporting errors, rather than analytical errors. While in principle easier (and less expensive) to correct, such errors call into question the integrity of permittees as well as the reliability of submitted data.

Adequacy of EPA's and States' Abilities To Verify Information.—Compliance sampling inspections (CSIs)—during which effluent samples are collected for the purpose of verification—are the primary tool available to EPA and States to verify the data submitted by dischargers. 39 CSIs are employed primarily in cases where noncompliance has been reported or is suspected (327,576). In 1982, for example, only 7 percent of New Jersey's and 5 percent of New York's major dischargers received CSIs. Nationwide, EPA statistics showed a large decrease in CSIs performed during the period 1979 to 1981; there was a 20 percent reduction for municipal sources and an almost 50 percent decrease for industrial dischargers. Inadequate resources were cited as the primary reason for the decline, a problem which may have been partially alleviated in subsequent years (468).

As further illustration of the infrequent use of CSIs, guidelines in the State of Washington strongly encourage annual CSIs for all major dischargers, including collection and analysis of effluent samples. A recent analysis found, however, that only one-sixth of dischargers into Puget Sound had ever received a CSI (over a 10-year period); analysis for priority pollutants had been conducted for only five dischargers (462). Moreover, it is standard practice in the State to announce inspections and field sampling in advance, raising concerns over how representative of typical effluent such samples actually are.

---

The data cited by GAO (576) did not indicate what fraction of errors were below acceptable limits; consistently low errors would be expected if deliberate falsification were the cause.

Seventy types of inspections of NPDES permittees are also conducted, but do not involve collection of effluent samples.

The number of other types of inspections—compliance evaluations and performance audits—actually increased significantly during fiscal years 1979 to 1981. These are considerably less expensive and time-consuming than CSIs.

This fraction included only about half of Puget Sound's major industrial dischargers.

3DMRs are required to be submitted quarterly or monthly. Two percent of GAO's sample did not submit DMRs for 3 or more quarters or 5 or more months during the survey period; 11 percent submitted incomplete DMRs for 3 or more quarters or 5 or more months during this period.

4This type of violation is now an instance of Category II Noncompliance, and therefore must be reported in Quarterly Noncompliance Reports (QNCRS; see 40 CFR 123.45 (a)(2)(ii)(D)).

5"Unacceptable" results were those that were either higher or lower than the acceptable limits established by EPA's Quality Assurance Program, determined on a case-by-case basis for pollutants actually specified in a discharger's permit.
Extent of Noncompliance With Effluent Discharge Limits

This discussion separately considers compliance for direct dischargers (municipal and industrial facilities regulated under the NPDES program) and for indirect dischargers (regulated under the National Pretreatment Program).

Direct Dischargers.—Estimates of the extent of permittee noncompliance with NPDES permits are quite disparate (238,392,462,574,576,689). A major source of variability—and controversy—surrounding these estimates is the criteria used to define noncompliance, particularly significant noncompliance (SNC).¹

In particular, different criteria have been used by EPA and Congress' General Accounting Office (GAO) to determine SNC (table 18). (EPA has since partially revised its criteria, as discussed in table 18.) As a result, GAO and EPA have reported considerably different SNC estimates, even using the same raw data. For example, based on its review of dischargers in six States, GAO found that about 80 percent exceeded one or more permit limits at least once during an 18-month period; almost half of the permittees who exceeded their permit limits did so for more than 6 of the 18 months, and about 20 percent did so for more than 12 of the 18 months. Based on GAO's criteria, one-quarter of all dischargers were in SNC at least once (576).

EPA took issue with several of GAO's findings, in particular those regarding SNC. EPA's data for the same six States indicated a SNC rate 7 to 12 percent lower than that found by GAO over the same time period. Nationally, EPA reported SNC rates of 18 percent for municipal and 16 percent for industrial dischargers.

Regardless of the criteria used, it is clear that noncompliance is a major and continuing problem. At the same time, some progress has been made: industrial compliance has improved considerably over the last several years, and it has consistently exceeded the degree of municipal compliance. EPA data for the first quarter of 1985 indicated that only 5 percent of major industrial facilities were in SNC. Similarly, as of the third quarter of 1985, only 6

---

Table 18.—Criteria Used To Identify “Significant Noncompliance”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Environmental Protection Agency</th>
<th>General Accounting Office</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Based on magnitude and frequency:</td>
<td>2 exceedances of a monthly average limit in any 6-month period that meet the following criteria:</td>
<td>4 consecutive exceedances of an average limit by at least 50% during its 18-month survey period:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 40% over limit for conventional pollutants and “non-toxic” metals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 20% over limit for toxic pollutants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- discretionary for fecal coliforms or pathogens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Based on frequency only:</td>
<td>4 exceedances of a monthly average limit (by any amount) in any 6-month period for any pollutant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other criteria:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Excludes permittees on interim limits and/or construction schedules</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Excludes permittees returned to compliance by end of quarter†</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other criteria:</td>
<td>Includes permittees on interim limits and/or construction schedules (about 25% of GAO's sample)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

¹Another source of variability is in the interpretation of how significant a particular rate of permit violations really is. Essentially all studies express noncompliance in terms of the number of facilities with at least one permit limit violation in a given time period. These facilities, however, may be in full compliance with many other permit limits during the same period. EPA argues that it is also important to examine the number of limits that are exceeded relative to the total number of possible exceedances (i.e., the number of limited parameters in each permit times the number of permits) to fully appreciate both the magnitude of the compliance problem and the success or failure rate (651).

percent of completed major POTWs were in SNC (table 19). However, over one-third of all major POTWs had not yet completed the construction needed to meet treatment requirements, and 15 percent of these were in SNC with their interim limits.

In marked contrast to EPA's latest national statistics, a considerably less optimistic picture was recently reported by the State of Washington (462). Using EPA's definition of SNC, 41 percent of the State's major municipal and industrial facilities were in SNC during the second half of 1985; moreover, the SNC rate was considerably worse for industrial facilities than for municipal facilities (50 percent v. 31 percent).

Whether the Washington survey is representative of other dischargers in the State or in other parts of the country is not known. Nevertheless, these results clearly indicate that, even if national average compliance rates are as high as reported by EPA, certain regions of the country are experiencing compliance rates far below average.

Two related factors are responsible for the differences seen in SNC rates for industrial and municipal dischargers. First, far fewer municipal facilities (65 percent) have completed the construction needed to achieve compliance than have industrial dischargers (94 percent) (327). Second, EPA initially adopted a less aggressive enforcement policy toward municipal facilities, in part because of the uncertainties or delays associated with Federal funding for construction (576). EPA has subsequently issued a new National Municipal Policy (49 FR 3832, Jan. 30, 1984), which adopts a more aggressive stance. 43

Data concerning compliance rates for minor dischargers generally are not available, although the reduced attention paid to them in permitting and enforcement strongly argues that their extent of compliance is likely to be considerably lower than for major dischargers. Of an estimated 12,000 minor POTWs nationwide, almost 3,400 (28 percent) had not met the statutory deadlines of CWA or were not in compliance with their NPDES permits as of October 31, 1985 (327).

Indirect Dischargers.—Relative to direct discharges, less information is available on the compliance of indirect dischargers with pretreatment regulations. The National Pretreatment program is newer and less developed than the NPDES program for direct dischargers. Moreover, the specified deadlines for final compliance with pretreatment standards in seven industrial categories will not occur until 1987 and 1988, and final regulations for two additional categories (OCPSF and Pesticides) are yet to be issued.

Another major obstacle is the fact that the primary authority and responsibility for regulating such facilities and determining compliance is far more decentralized than is the case in the NPDES program. The primary authority can be a POTW, a State, or an EPA Region. Of the more than 15,000 POTWs in the United States, the EPA required about 1,500 to develop pretreatment programs.

Table 19.—Municipal Treatment Plants (POTWs) in Significant Noncompliance as of Sept. 30, 1985

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Completed major POTWs</th>
<th>Number of permits</th>
<th>Number in SNC of permits</th>
<th>Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2,506</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major POTWs on compliance schedules and/or interim limits</td>
<td>1,219</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total major POTWs</td>
<td>3,725</td>
<td>338</td>
<td>9%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*SNC = significant noncompliance.

ment programs; EPA Regions bear these responsibilities for the remaining States.

Several additional factors complicate the measurement, as well as achievement, of compliance for indirect dischargers. No national tracking system (comparable to the PCS for direct dischargers) currently exists for compiling and analyzing the self-reported data required of industrial users. Moreover, the size of the regulated universe of the pretreatment program is considerably larger than that of the NPDES program. An estimated 100,000 to 140,000 indirect dischargers are subject to General Pretreatment Regulations; approximately 15,600 of these fall into industries which are also subject to Categorical Pretreatment Standards (see table 13).

Despite these limitations, some attempts have been made to examine compliance rates for indirect industrial dischargers, particularly in the electroplating industry. In a 1984 survey of selected major national electroplating firms, baseline monitoring reports (BMR)s for 22 percent of the facilities were either lost or never submitted (258). For those facilities for which some compliance information could be located, only 54 percent were in compliance with categorical standards; 28 percent were clearly not in compliance; and the status of the remaining 18 percent could not be determined.  

A 1984 study of electroplates in California also documented widespread noncompliance: 40 percent of the facilities in the San Francisco Bay area were in violation, and 70 percent in the Los Angeles area were classified either as 'compliance unknown' (61 percent) or 'out of compliance' (9 percent) (97). In response, EPA (which administers the pretreatment program in California) initiated a number of enforcement actions against major violators.

A 1985 study examined compliance for 1,600 major facilities in a broader range of industrial categories (98). One-fourth of the major facilities studied were in noncompliance with Federal standards during 1985. Noncompliance was three times higher in southern California than in the San Francisco Bay area, ranging from 18 percent (L. A. County) to 50 percent (Orange County). Virtually all reported violations in southern California were from electroplaters and metal finishers, which accounted for 93 percent of all industrial users in the region.

For the electroplating and metal finishing industries, the noncompliance rate improved considerably in the Bay area, decreasing from 40 percent to 11 percent between 1984 and 1985. In southern California, progress during this period was made primarily in determining the compliance status of industrial users. However, 32 percent of these facilities were still reported to be out of compliance (98).

Several other problems associated with determining or measuring pretreatment compliance also have been identified: the absence of a consistent definition of, or means of quantifying, noncompliance; the use of different and inconsistent data sources for determining noncompliance; and the use of varying methods for monitoring (98,502).

Effectiveness of Enforcement

The final, essential link in the NPDES and National Pretreatment programs is enforcement. EPA’s philosophy and policy toward enforcement has undergone major fluctuations over the last decade. The number of enforcement actions initiated by EPA steadily declined from more than 1,500 in 1977 to about 400 in 1982 (576). Part of this decline was caused by explicit changes in EPA’s enforcement policy, which placed greater emphasis on pursuing ‘voluntary compliance and negotiated settlements (238,462,576).

Since that time, EPA and some States have taken several steps to strengthen and codify their enforcement policies. The revision of EPA’s Enforcement

---

6 BMRs must be submitted by indirect dischargers to the control authority within 6 months of the effective date of a pretreatment standard. The contents information on the position of the facilities’ discharges with respect to those pollutants regulated by categorical standards.

7 The electroplating facilities in this survey were associated with major corporations, and hence may reflect a greater degree of compliance than the industry as a whole.

8 Six industries were included: electroplating; metal finishing; semiconductor manufacturing; pulp, paper, and paperboard; steam electric power generation; and textile mills. The 1,600 facilities examined were all industrial users of POTWs required to develop pretreatment programs.
Management System, the commitment of new resources to the Agency's enforcement programs, and the increase in the number of formal enforcement actions all point to such changes (462,468). In general, these efforts have been based on the realistic assumption that the resources available to identify and effectively respond to all violations will remain limited, so the development of a consistent way to rank violations is essential. It remains to be seen how effective such actions will be in improving enforcement and compliance under CWA.

Several enforcement problems have been identified during recent years: the nature and timeliness of the response to a violation once it is identified; the effectiveness of the response in eliminating the violation in a timely manner; the ability to impose meaningful penalties; and the adequacy of resources for enforcement activities. Problems in these areas can in turn lead to delays in achieving compliance on the part of industrial firms or municipal plants, or to unfair economic advantages to violators.

Unfortunately, few data systematically evaluate these factors. Available information indicates two phases: an initially very poor record of enforcement, followed by a general trend toward gradual improvement in recent years. These phases illustrate the nature and extent of obstacles (some of which are being overcome) that face enforcement of water pollution control programs.

Extent and Timeliness of Response.—Several studies have examined EPA and State responses to reported violations, with special attention to whether and how quickly action is taken. In one study of enforcement in EPA Region II, over 4,000 violations by 158 major industrial dischargers between 1975 and 1980 were identified (391). Overall, only 13 percent of these violations received any response after they were reported; in contrast, about twice as many violations discovered during onsite inspections received a response. The vast majority of responses taken were informal: phone calls or warning letters. Moreover, almost a year elapsed, on average, before authorities first responded, during which time an average of three additional violations occurred.48

A continuing low level of response to permit violations, many of which are instances of SNC, has also been documented in the State of Washington (462). During the second half of 1985, less than half of the reported SNC violations received a formal enforcement response, despite the issuance of a new enforcement policy that required all instances of SNC to be subject to a formal action. During this same 6-month period, no civil penalties were assessed against municipal dischargers, while a substantial number of industrial facilities were fined.

A study of State and POTW enforcement of pretreatment standards in Rhode Island also documented widespread noncompliance by indirect industrial dischargers over the last several years; during this period, only one judicial enforcement action was initiated (497).

Recent national data show some improvement in the extent of response to permit violations, at least at the Federal level. Since 1980, both the number of administrative orders (AOs) issued and the number of judicial actions undertaken (i.e., number of cases referred to the Department of Justice) have been on the rise (figure 31).49

More limited data are available on the level of State activity during this period. For 1985 and 1986, the number of AOs issued by NPDES States was almost three times higher than the number issued at the Federal level; the number of civil actions initiated by these States was 50 percent higher in 1985, and 100 percent higher in 1986, than the number of cases initiated at the Federal level (672).

Effectiveness of Response.—The effectiveness of EPA's response to violations at 33 Louisiana facilities, many of which had "frequently and extensively" violated their permit limits during a 2-year period has been examined (576,689). While EPA initiated numerous informal and formal actions against these facilities, GAO concluded that they were generally ineffective as judged by the continuation of noncompliance. Formal enforcement actions appeared to be no more effective than informal actions: of the 17 facilities that received one

---

48Data for AOs was further broken down into actions against major and minor, and municipal and industrial, permittees. Each year, the majority of the AOs were issued to major dischargers; in addition, the largest number of AOs were consistently issued to major municipal permittees.
or more AOs, only one came into compliance in the following months. In one extreme case, a discharger was in violation of its permit for 35 consecutive months, despite receiving six AOs. In another, a discharger that had violated its permit limits for 21 consecutive months, often by more than 100 percent, was never subjected to a formal enforcement action by EPA. Out of all 33 facilities, only one case was referred to Federal prosecutors.

EPA has contested a number of GAO’s findings, including GAO conclusions about the effectiveness of AOs (65 1). During the period examined by GAO, EPA issued nine AOs, each of which specified a compliance schedule. EPA reports that six facilities returned to compliance within the time frame established in the AO, and that in the other three cases the AOs had a net positive effect, albeit delayed, on ultimately resolving the situations.

Ability to Impose Meaningful Penalties.— Several studies have documented the infrequent imposition, infrequent collection, and low level of penalties for violations of permit limits in various areas of the country (238,462,576,689). These studies emphasize the often time-consuming and frustrating nature of civil actions, especially when measured against the lack of effectiveness of the resulting penalties as deterrents to the original violator or to other permittees.

One common recommendation in such studies is the need for EPA to be given statutory authority to impose administrative penalties against vio-
Figure 32.—Amount of Average CWA Civil Penalty, 1975-86

To avoid skewing the analysis by the large penalties assessed in a very small number of cases, only penalties under $200,000 (so-called “routine” cases) are included in calculating the average penalty. Only 5 percent of all cases involved penalties larger than this amount.


The penalty situation has improved considerably in recent years (671). Figure 32 illustrates the trend in the size of the average CWA civil penalty collected in cases brought by the Federal Government between 1975 and 1986. These data show an accelerating increase in the average CWA penalty, from $7,500 in 1975 to $48,400 in 1986. Total penalties collected in 1986 were the highest ever, totaling over $5 million. Figure 32 also shows the individual trends for POTWs and industrial facilities. Whereas the average penalty assessed in cases brought against industries showed a gradual increase during this period, the average penalty assessed against POTWs remained very low (less than $5,000) until 1983, but has since risen substantially. In addition, the fraction of cases settled without a penalty has declined over the last several years, especially for cases brought against municipal violators.

Adequacy of Resources for Enforcement Activities.—A consistent theme encountered in this analysis of enforcement, as well as other activities associated with the implementation and administration of water pollution control programs, is the underfunding of such efforts. Resources available to EPA and approved States for administering the NPDES and National Pretreatment programs and ensuring their enforcement are clearly inadequate. For example:

- Although personnel for the National Pretreatment program doubled from 1984 to 1985 to a total of approximately 65 people, EPA’s
Pretreatment Implementation Review Task Force (PIRT) estimates that an additional 150 positions in Regional offices would be needed to properly implement the program (653). PIRT also recommended increased Federal funding for State programs.

- The State of Washington estimated that it had resources to conduct only 24 percent of the activities needed to effectively administer its NPDES program. Efforts to supplement its budget through increased use of permit fees have been unsuccessful (462). Five staff positions are currently devoted to the State’s pretreatment program, despite a 1985 study indicating an actual need for 14 positions (461).
- Under the proposed fiscal 1987 budget, funding for water quality enforcement and permitting will decrease $4.1 million, and funding for implementing the National Municipal Policy will drop $3.1 million. Overall, the proposed budget for water quality programs represents a 15 percent decrease over the fiscal 1986 budget (149).

Additional Issues Facing the Pretreatment Program

Balancing Needs for National Consistency and Local Flexibility

During the last decade, many indirect industrial dischargers and POTWs argued that POTWs with strong locally developed pretreatment programs should be allowed to retain these programs. These locally controlled programs would not have to meet the programmatic and bureaucratic requirements of the National Pretreatment Program as long as they provide control of toxic pollutants that is as stringent as the national program. Proponents of this perspective argue that imposing National Categorical Standards on these POTWs results in over-regulation, and unnecessarily increases costs and administrative burdens for POTWs and industries.

Opponents of this approach maintain that a strong national program is necessary to ensure equitable regulation throughout the Nation and to hold POTWs and industries to a set of minimum standards. From an administrative viewpoint, allowing local control would create an atmosphere of uncertainty and might encourage some POTWs or industries to delay complying with national regulations because of concern about program changes. In addition, EPA would have to devote some of its scarce resources to evaluate local program adequacy and performance.

Most POTWs interested in local control have abandoned the issue for political reasons, and it now appears that the Nation is committed to continued development of a strong national program. At the same time, however, the development of more stringent local limits, where needed, is being strongly encouraged, as is the expansion of water quality-based controls tailored to local needs.

Despite attempts to achieve nationwide consistency, large differences exist in the implementation and oversight of various regulations by different EPA Regions (502,503). Some Regions have allocated resources for both program approvals and oversight and enforcement, while others have only allocated resources for program approvals. In addition, the arrangements among municipalities, States, and EPA Regions are often complex and variable. With more than 95 percent of the required POTW programs approved, the pretreatment program appears to be nearing the end of its development stage. As efforts shift toward implementing these programs, the importance of local limits and water quality-based permitting will grow considerably.

Obstacles to POTW Program Implementation and Enforcement

Local Limits.—Despite the importance of local limits, several obstacles hinder their development and enforcement. POTWs have an incentive to develop local limits on indirect discharges of certain toxic metals or organic chemicals that have the potential to disrupt POTW treatment operations. However, because many pollutants that are harmful to aquatic resources do not disrupt POTW operations, POTWs have had little incentive to develop and impose local limits on these pollutants.

A POTW also might develop local limits to help it meet the specific limitations on its own discharge that are contained in its NPDES permit or to clean up its sludge. However, EPA estimates that only 1 percent of all POTW NPDES permits contain any numerical limits on the discharge of toxic me-
Wastes in Marine Environment

Metallic or organic chemicals (653). For example, none of Rhode Island’s POTWs have any such limits specified in their discharge permits (497). Where they do exist, the limits are typically based on State water quality standards, but those standards have been developed to a much greater extent for metals than for organic chemicals (see last section of this chapter). Moreover, where nationally developed standards for toxic pollutants—in effluent, receiving waters, or sewage sludge—have not been developed, few incentives (and many obstacles) exist for POTWs to develop their own local limits (503,653). The net result of this lack of incentive is that POTWs only rarely impose local limits on their industrial users, especially for priority pollutants.

Monitoring and Enforcement.—These important elements of local pretreatment programs are often inadequate. Even for POTWs with approved pretreatment programs, mechanisms to ensure a program’s effectiveness may not exist. Two-thirds of the POTWs examined in one study did not monitor influent for priority metals or organic chemicals, although most large POTWs have generally identified the major sources of toxic pollutants entering their facilities (503). In another study of POTWs with approved programs, only 25 percent had all of the following mechanisms considered essential for controlling industrial wastes: 1) a sewer use ordinance with specific effluent limits, 2) a permitting mechanism, and 3) a monitoring and enforcement program (503). Gradual improvements in these areas have occurred, although for many programs the ability to identify and effectively respond to noncompliance has yet to be demonstrated.

The burden of enforcing pretreatment regulations initially falls on POTWs. Even in the best of situations, it is difficult to determine the extent to which industries have complied with applicable regulations; in part, this stems from heavy reliance on self-monitoring by industries, which commonly is not independently verified by POTWs. Because partial financing for POTW operations comes from the taxes and user fees paid by industrial dischargers, there may be little motivation for a POTW to enforce limits, except where POTW operations or sludge management is impaired (497,503).

Hazardous Waste in Sewers

The current and increasing discharge of hazardous waste to sewers poses a major challenge to the pretreatment program. Hazardous wastes can be legally discharged into POTWs under the Domestic Sewage Exemption of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA). As recent amendments to RCRA come into effect, increasing amounts of hazardous wastes are expected to be discharged into POTWs. New provisions extending RCRA authority to all facilities that generate more than 100 kilograms per month of hazardous waste have increased the total number of generators now subject to RCRA regulations from 14,000 to over 175,000 (50 FR 31285, Aug. 1, 1985). Many of these small quantity generators already discharge into local POTWs and thus could fall under the Domestic Sewage Exemption; it is estimated that as many as 25 percent of all small hazardous waste generators already use this disposal option for their hazardous wastes (568).

EPA recently submitted a major report, known as the Domestic Sewage Study (666), to Congress on the issue of hazardous waste in sewers, and more recently issued an Advanced Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (51 FR 30166, Aug. 22, 1986) that discussed preliminary approaches to implementing the Study’s recommendations. For more discussion of this issue and the role of POTWs in treating domestic and industrial wastes, the reader is referred to these sources and to chapter 9.

Footnotes:
51 If appropriate action is not initiated by the POTW, higher authorities can step in. For example, in the last 2 years EPA has initiated more than 50 judicial actions against indirect industrial dischargers (primarily electroplates) for violations of general and categorical pretreatment regulations (J. Moran, Office of Enforcement and Compliance Monitoring, EPA, pers. comm., Dec. 23, 1986).
52 Previously, only generators producing more than 1,000 kilograms per month were subject to RCRA hazardous waste regulation.
USING WATER QUALITY-BASED STANDARDS FOR FURTHER CONTROL OF TOXICS POLLUTANTS

In 1984, EPA released a national policy statement that described a strategy for achieving additional and more efficient control of toxic pollutants beyond that resulting from BAT and other CWA technology-based requirements (49 FR 9016, Mar. 9, 1984). This strategy focuses on water quality-based permitting of toxic pollutant discharges to be implemented through the NPDES program. Because water quality-based standards are difficult to set, EPA is adopting an integrated strategy that uses both chemical and biological methods to determine appropriate standards (659). States will be expected to devote more effort to develop water quality-based effluent limits for inclusion in NPDES permits.

This new EPA policy reflects a reevaluation of the regulatory efforts to control toxic pollutants during the last 15 years. The 1972 Clean Water Act shifted the focus of pollutant control from the use of water quality-based standards to the use of technology-based standards. Subsequent implementation of technology-based standards has resulted in significant improvements in the control of toxic discharges and in the quality of some receiving waters, and full implementation would achieve even more control.

However, the level of control provided has not always satisfied all the interested parties. For example, the technology-based standards usually do not consider site-specific circumstances such as the quality of receiving waters. In addition, BAT standards are industry-specific; some industries are required to achieve greater removal of a specific pollutant than are other industries, leading to claims of under- or over-regulation.

As a result, some industries have argued for waivers from complying with technology-based standards, in situations where the quality of the receiving water would not be impaired. 53 In contrast, environmentalists have argued that even the achievement of compliance with technology-based standards has not resulted in sufficient improvement in the quality of some receiving waters, and that supplemental controls are needed.

The 1972 CWA did not eliminate the use of water quality-based standards. Section 303 required States to adopt water quality standards to protect inter- and intra-state waters through establishment of water quality goals and designation of water uses; specific standards based on Federal water quality criteria are then to be applied to protect these uses. 54 Section 301(b)(1)(C) of CWA requires that all discharges meet water quality-based standards where they have been developed. These standards can in principle be translated, using wasteload allocation techniques, into effluent limits for the various dischargers to a particular receiving waterbody.

EPA maintains and periodically updates a summary of Federal water quality criteria and State standards. According to the most recent summary, Federal water quality criteria have now been developed for most conventional, non-conventional, and toxic priority pollutants (668). 55 The federal criteria are for guidance only and are not enforceable. Using these criteria, all States have adopted enforceable water quality standards for fecal coliform bacteria, oil and grease, dissolved oxygen, pH, dissolved solids and salinity, and temperature, and almost all have a standard for suspended solids and turbidity (668). 56 EPA estimates that 40 percent of major municipal permits—and perhaps as high a fraction of major industrial permits—are based in some manner on these water quality standards (J. Hoornbeek, Office of Water Enforcement and Permits, EPA, pers. comm., Nov. 13, 1986).

53 These waivers are termed ‘fundamentally different factor’ (FDF) waivers. The conditions (including consideration of water quality) under which EPA can grant an FDF variance were clarified by Congress in the Water Quality Act of 1987.

54 EPA is authorized to review State standards and may also promulgate standards where State standards have not been developed, although they have not done so.

55 Federal water quality criteria consist of four criteria based on consideration of aquatic life (acute and chronic criteria specific for fresh or marine waters) and two additional criteria based on consideration of human health (one for both water and fish ingestion, and the other for fish ingestion only). Typically, only a subset of these six parameters is specified for a given pollutant.

56 Under current policy, the adequacy of State water quality standards is now a consideration in the decision of whether to grant approval to a State to administer the NPDES program. However, the standards developed by States whose programs were approved prior to the development of this policy (or, indeed, prior to the development of most Federal water quality criteria) have not always been subject to a comparable degree of scrutiny by the Federal Government.
In contrast, for most other pollutants—in particular, priority pollutants—none or only a few States have developed standards (668). Specifically:

- Of 85 priority organic chemicals for which Federal water quality criteria exist, no States have developed standards for 37, and only one State has developed standards for another 32. For each of the remaining 16 priority organic pollutants, standards have been developed by an average of 12 States (with a range of 2 to 23 States).
- At least 1 State has developed a standard for each of the 14 priority metals and cyanide for which Federal water quality criteria exist; for each of these substances, an average of 15 States (with a range of 1 to 24 States) have developed standards.

Thus, for no priority pollutants have even half of the States developed a water quality standard. Fourteen States have no water quality standards for priority pollutants whatsoever.

OTA also reviewed water quality standards for priority pollutants that have been promulgated by the 24 coastal States to determine the number of standards that have been specifically developed for or applied to marine waters. This survey revealed the following:

- Nine of the 24 coastal States have no marine water quality standards for priority pollutants whatsoever, and 16 States have no such standards for priority metals or cyanide.
- For the 8 coastal States that have any marine standards for priority metals or cyanide, standards have been developed for an average of 4.5 of the 14 priority metals and cyanide.
- For the 15 coastal States that have any marine standards for priority organic chemicals, standards have been developed for an average of 6.8 of the 85 priority organic chemicals.

The development of water quality-based standards poses several problems. First, it is questionable whether EPA has sufficient resources to continue to develop and update the Federal water quality criteria, or to evaluate water quality standards that are developed by States. Moreover, a large increase in compliance monitoring and enforcement burdens would also be anticipated.

Even if resources were sufficient, a number of major technical obstacles would need to be overcome. Only limited data are available on ambient pollutant concentrations in receiving waters, variability in these concentrations, and the fate of these pollutants and their impacts on indigenous organisms. In addition, our ability to monitor water quality in relation to potential environmental or human impacts is relatively primitive.

Nevertheless, further promotion of EPA's policy on water quality-based permit limitations for toxic pollutants could help provide an additional level of control beyond technology-based standards. Several approaches to increase the use of water quality-based standards may be useful for Congress and EPA to consider:

- improve technical assistance to States and local management agencies to aid in the development of State water quality-based standards;
- provide state-of-the-art guidelines to States by updating existing national water quality criteria and accelerating the development of new national water and sediment criteria;
- incorporate water quality standards into POTW NPDES permits as a means of providing incentives for POTWs to develop local limits; and
- promote wider application of whole-effluent toxicity testing, for example, through the expanded use of toxicity-based limitations in NPDES permits.
Chapter 9
Managing Municipal Effluent and Sludge
CONTENTS

overview .............................................................. 209
Treatment Processes and Products ...................................... 211
  General Wastewater Treatment Processes .................................. 211
  Effluent and Sludge Composition ........................................... 216
Amounts of Effluent and Sludge Generated and Disposed ........ 217
  Effluent and Sludge Generation ............................................. 217
  Marine Disposal of Effluent ................................................ 217
  Marine Disposal of Sewage Sludge .......................................... 219
Costs of Sludge Disposal .................................................. 221
General Fate of Nudge and Effluent ...................................... 221
  Dumped Sludge .................................................................. 221
  Discharged Effluent .......................................................... 222
Impacts From Effluent and Sludge Disposal ........................ 223
  Marine Impacts From Particulate Material, Microorganisms, and Nutrients ........... 223
  Marine Impacts From Metals and Organic Chemicals ........................... 224
  Impacts From Land-Based Disposal ........................................... 224
  Risks to Humans From Sludge Disposal Methods ........................ 225
Major Issues Related to Marine Environments ...................... 225
  Compliance and Enforcement ............................................... 225
  Effect of Toxic Pollutants and Hazardous Wastes on Sewage Management .... 226
  New Regulatory Initiatives Regarding Sludge Management .................. 227
  Role of Marine Environments in Municipal Waste Management .............. 228
  Role of Land-Based Alternatives in Sludge Management ................... 233

Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Definitions of Municipal Treatment Levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Advantages and Disadvantages of Selected Effluent Disinfection and Sludge Treatment Processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Amounts of Effluent and Sludge Generated by Municipal Treatment Plants (POTWs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Costs of Dumping Sludge at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site and the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Generation, Treatment, and Disposal of Municipal Effluent and Sludge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Status of 301(h) Applications, As of Jan. 2, 1987</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Boxes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.</td>
<td>Relevant Statutes, Programs, and Policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Inputs of Toxic Pollutants and Hazardous Wastes Into POTWs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W.</td>
<td>Proposed Discharge of Sludge by Orange County</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 9
Managing Municipal Effluent and Sludge

OVERVIEW

The treatment of municipal wastes generates two products: sewage sludge (the mostly solid material separated from the original waste) and effluent (the liquid remainder). Large quantities of these products are disposed of in marine waters. The treatment of municipal wastes and the management of these products raise many concerns, for example:

- the dumping of sewage sludge in coastal and open ocean waters;
- the impacts of toxic pollutants (in particular, metals and organic chemicals from industrial discharges into sewers) in sludge and effluent on marine resources;
- the constraints imposed by the presence of toxic pollutants on the beneficial use of sludge and effluent;
- the impacts of conventionized pollutants (including solids and fecal bacteria), other microorganisms (e. g., viruses), and nonconventional pollutants (e. g., nutrients) in sludge and effluent on marine resources; and
- whether current levels of municipal treatment will be maintained as Federal funding for the construction of treatment plants declines.

Municipal waste management in the United States has been shaped by events that occurred during the past 150 years. In the 19th century, the increased use of water delivery systems and flush toilets dramatically increased the amount of rinsewater and raw sewage flowing from households (1 75,551). The rinsewater and sewage was usually diverted into cesspools or existing stormwater drains, but these often were unable to handle the increased flow and health problems arose from the contamination of soil and wellwater.

In response, cities began channeling wastewater into newly built sewers that discharged into surface waters, including marine waters (175,551). Initially, these discharges received no treatment because people assumed that the receiving water would dilute the waste and prevent health problems. In 1909, almost 90 percent of wastewater carried in sewers received no treatment. However, it was soon discovered that discharges into rivers contaminated drinking water supplies in downstream communities, causing major public health problems such as epidemics of typhoid fever.

Cities then began to develop processes to filter wastewater and treat bacteriological contamination prior to discharge (1 75,551). Many processes developed between 1900 and 1935 are still important components of current municipal treatment (318). One problem arises, however, regarding the nature of the wastes being treated. The original processes were not designed to treat metals and organic chemicals, yet industries discharge wastewater containing these pollutants into municipal sewers. Thus the sludge and effluent products left after treatment are often contaminated with these substances.

The initial responsibility for developing large and efficient disposal systems was usually carried at the municipal level; suburban areas often were annexed and special district agencies (e. g., the Boston Metropolitan Sewerage Commission) were created to facilitate such development. However, the institutional structure to regulate sewage treatment and disposal has grown rapidly and has gradually passed to the State and Federal levels. The Federal Government, for example, spent over $40 billion in the last 15 years to help local sewage authorities build or upgrade municipal treatment plants (569). The current legal framework for managing municipal effluent and sludge is described in box U.

The generation of both sludge and effluent is expected to increase in coastal areas as populations increase and as more communities are serviced by municipal treatment plants. Effluent discharges into marine and fresh waters probably will increase accordingly because this is the only means currently available for large-scale disposal. In some situations, water conservation or the re-use of effluent (e. g., via water reclamation for irrigation or groundwater...
Appendixes
recharge) could reduce the need for discharges. Several management options are feasible for sludge, including, for example, dumping in marine waters and beneficial use on cropland. The demand to dump sludge in marine waters could increase, because the use of other options may be constrained by regulatory and social factors and because dumping sometimes may be economically and even environmentally preferable when compared with other options.

### Treatment Processes and Products

#### General Wastewater Treatment Processes

About 70 percent of domestic wastewater in the United States is channeled into publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) for treatment (159). The remainder is discharged into private septic systems or, in some cases, discharged without treatment into various waterbodies. These wastestreams are complex mixtures, generally composed of water, suspended solids, organic material, oil and grease, dissolved nutrients, microorganisms, and metals and organic chemicals.

The exact composition of wastewater entering POTWs is highly site-specific and complex because its components can come from a variety of sources: household chemicals, human wastes, industrial and commercial discharges into sewers (box V), and rainwater and street runoff from combined sewer systems (figure 33). In addition, about 60 percent of the material periodically cleaned from septic tanks is transported to and treated in POTWs (638). Composition also varies with time, particularly in systems that receive large inputs from combined sewers or seasonal industrial discharges.

POTWs treat raw wastewater by removing or degrading organic materials or, in the case of some bacteria, by destroying them. Most of the remaining solid organic and inorganic material is removed, forming a sludge. The remaining liquid effluent typically contains much less than 1 percent solids, while sludge contains from 1 to 7 percent solids (prior to further dewatering).

Treatment levels are defined primarily on the basis of the percentages of two conventional pollutants—biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) and total suspended solids (TSS)—that are removed from the wastewater. At the first or “primary” treatment level, debris is physically screened, and some suspended solids settle in sedimentation tanks. Typically, up to about 60 percent of the suspended solids are removed during primary treatment (633).

‘Secondary’ or biological treatment uses microorganisms to destroy or remove additional amounts of BOD and TSS. Any additional suspended solids that are removed are added to the sludge, so secondary treatment produces more sludge than primary treatment. More advanced, or ‘tertiary’, treatment generally is used to remove additional suspended solids or nutrients (table 20). It often entails the use of chemicals (e.g., aluminum sulfate, ferric chloride, polyelectrolytes) to precipitate the target pollutants (633,634).

Technologies developed in the early 20th century to treat municipal wastewater still are used, though they have been modified and improved, as the basis for treatment at most municipal plants. One example is anaerobic digestion. Many new technologies have been developed in the last few decades, particularly for sludge treatment (e.g., physical-chemical treatment, pure oxygen-activated sludge systems, and ammonia stripping), but few are widely used in municipal treatment plants (318).

The costs for building and operating municipal treatment plants vary with the particular combination of processes used to achieve a specified treatment level. Costs can escalate rapidly as the required level of treatment is increased, in part because of additional costs for sludge treatment processes (not to be confused with sludge disposal techniques), but economies of scale can counter this to a degree (650,661).
This page was originally printed on a gray background. The scanned version of the page is almost entirely black and is unusable. It has been intentionally omitted.
If a replacement page image of higher quality becomes available, it will be posted within the copy of this report found on one of the OTA websites.
Ch. 9–Managing Municipal Effluent and Sludge • 213

Figure 33.—Generation, Treatment, and Disposal of Municipal Effluent and Sludge

Table 20.—Definitions of Municipal Treatment Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment level</th>
<th>Treatment requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Approximately 30%/0 removal of BOD and 60%/0 removal of TSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>Removal of both BOD and TSS to levels of 25-30 mg/l, but not less than 85%/0 removal; pH between 6.0 and 9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary</td>
<td>Removal of both BOD and TSS to levels less than 9 mg/l, or removal of over 95%/0 of BOD and TSS; additional requirements for removal of nutrients (e.g., nitrates, phosphates) on site-specific basis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABBREVIATIONS: BOD = biological oxygen demand  
TSS = total suspended solids  
*Treatment levels required by the Clean Water Act and codified at 40 CFR Part 133


Table 21 not very effective against parasites (e.g., protozoan cysts).

Furthermore, the densities of bacteria in effluent (even including the fiftyfold dilution factor) are usually still too high to achieve compliance with water quality standards for recreational and shellfish-growing waters. In addition, both viruses and bacteria tend to become concentrated in sludge because of their tendency to associate with solid material (although large numbers remain in the effluent, as well). For these reasons, “disinfection” techniques (table 21) are often used to further reduce microorganism levels in effluent prior to disposal.

Chlorination is the most commonly used effluent disinfection technique in the United States. It has
Table 21.—Advantages and Disadvantages of Selected Effluent Disinfection and Sludge Treatment Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique Used for</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effluent disinfection:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorination</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>Commonly used; 98% to 99% destruction for bacteria; high removals of viruses and cysts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozonation</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>99% removal of fecal coliform; high removal of viruses; destroys phenols, cyanides, trihalomethanes; no chlorinated byproducts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV radiation</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>Initially effective on all microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamma radiation</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>Penetrates deeper than UV radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>Destroys most pathogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine dioxide</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>98 to 99% bacteria removal; high virus removal; no chlorinated compounds; small measurable residual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sludge treatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerobic digestion</td>
<td>ST,DI</td>
<td>Removes up to 85% of microorganisms and 40% of volatile solids; more rapid, simpler, less subject to metal upset than anaerobic digestion, PSRP&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaerobic digestion</td>
<td>ST,DI</td>
<td>Removes &gt;85% of microorganisms and 40% of volatile solids; easier to dewater; preferred at larger plants; commercial gas byproducts; PSRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermophlic aerobic digestion</td>
<td>ST,DI</td>
<td>Faster than aerobic; near complete destruction of bacteria and viruses; heat self-generated; PFRP&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air drying</td>
<td>DW,DI</td>
<td>Reduces some solids and microorganisms; PSRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat drying</td>
<td>DW,DI</td>
<td>Significant reduction in volume; destroys most bacteria; useful for distribution and marketing products; PFRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat treatment (under pressure)</td>
<td>DW,DI</td>
<td>Sterilization; readily dewatered; PFRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liming</td>
<td>ST,DI</td>
<td>Destroys bacteria; binds metals, so less leaching; PSRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorination</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>Free of odors; dewaterable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composting</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>PSRP and PFRP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* = disinfection; DW = dewatering, ST = stabilization; PSRP = process to Significantly Reduce Pathogens; PFRP = Process to Further Reduce Pathogens (see text for details).

been considered economical and effective and it usually destroys virtually all fecal coliform bacteria in effluent. Several concerns, however, have been raised about chlorination. First, it may only temporarily inactivate, rather than destroy, microorganisms present in effluent. Second, it is not as effective against pathogenic viruses as it is against fecal coliform bacteria. Finally, chlorinated hydrocarbons can be formed as byproducts of the process and pose significant risks to organisms in the vicinit,v of municipal discharges, although information on chlorine byproducts in municipal wastewater is limited (503,636).

Alternative effluent disinfection methods such as ozonation and ultraviolet light treatment may be more effective than chlorine against viruses. These methods have rarely been used in the United States for drinking water or municipal wastewater treatment, although ozonation has been widely used in Europe to purify drinking water (142,503). Both methods are hard to apply and expensive, so chlorination may be the only practical means of disinfection in most locations. To combat chlorine’s disadvantages, long outfalls that discharge into deep and dispersive ocean waters have been used to dilute pathogen concentrations sufficiently to meet water quality standards.

Sewage sludge also can undergo additional treatment or “conditioning. In particular, sludge that is to be disposed of on land is required to undergo certain technology-based processes to reduce microorganisms; these processes involve varying types of disinfection, stabilization, or dewatering (table 21) (650). Some processes, such as anaerobic digestion, have been in use for over 60 years (318). Others have been developed recently; for example, ionizing radiation has been used on a pilot scale in Boston and on a commercial scale in Miami (59,503).

These sludge treatment processes are grouped into two categories, Processes to Further Reduce Pathogens (PFRP) and Processes to Significantly Reduce Pathogens (PSRP). If food crops are to be grown within 18 months of land application, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulations require that a PFRP be used. PFRPs destroy most bacteria and viruses by subjecting sludge to elevated temperatures over a specified time, but again the actual reduction is variable; in addition, some parasites such as protozoan cysts are not readily destroyed (205). If no food crops are involved, sludge treated by a PSRP can be applied to land, subject to certain restrictions (e.g., on public access, grazing, pH, and metals and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) content).

Other sludge treatment techniques include chemical fixation and encapsulation for sludges containing high levels of contaminants, earthworm conversion, and emerging processes such as anaerobic fixed-film biological treatment.

Incidental Removal of Metals and Organic Chemicals

POTWs are designed specifically to remove conventional pollutants from wastewater, but not to remove metals and organic chemicals. As some of these pollutants pass through POTWs into receiving waters, they sometimes upset the efficiency of POTW treatment systems. Not all metals and organic chemicals pass through POTWs, however, because treatment processes do result in the unintentional or “incidental removal or degradation of some of these wastewater pollutants.

Incidental removal can take several forms—volatilization, removal to sludge, or biodegradation. The metals that are incidentally removed tend to be incorporated into sludge (637), and some organic chemicals also can be incorporated into sludge, from which they often are volatilized during subsequent sludge treatment. "Municipal treatment processes to significantly reduce pathogen concentrations" (6)

1“Incidents refer to large or sudden changes in the concentrations of metals or organic chemicals that kill the microorganisms used in treatment processes; as a result, municipal effluent can be discharged into receiving waters without adequate treatment (503). For example, an upset at a POTW in Rhode Island, and subsequent discharge of effluent with excess BOD levels, was attributed to the dumping of cyanide into the municipal sewers (497).

2For biodegradation of chemicals to occur, however, microorganisms in the treatment plant generally must be acclimated to a small but constant input of the chemicals. However, variable inputs are probably more common and hinder acclimation; thus, many chemicals that could in principle be incidentally removed through biodegradation will instead pass through to receiving waters (503),
processes thus destroy some pollutants and redistribute the remainder.

The degree of incidental removal varies greatly among POTWs, particular treatment techniques, and individual pollutants (637,666). According to one study of 50 POTWs, different treatments showed a range of efficiencies for incidental removal for some selected priority pollutants (637). For example, POTWs with primary treatment removed 10 to 57 percent of metals and 0 to 62 percent of organic chemicals, while POTWs with secondary treatment removed 34 to 85 percent of metals and 40 to 94 percent of organic chemicals.

These results suggest that 15 to 66 percent of the metals and 6 to 60 percent of the organic chemicals could pass through POTWs with secondary treatment. This study has been criticized, however (94). In particular, critics noted that if the pollutant in question was not detected (i.e., its concentration was below the minimum detection level), the concentration was recorded as being at the minimum detection level. This procedure, in combination with other factors, could underestimate actual removal efficiencies.

Effluent and Sludge Composition

Numerous studies have documented the composition of different effluents and sludges (101, 173, 524,637,638,639,650,666). The composition of both products is highly site-specific and variable over time, depending on the nature of sources discharging into municipal sewers and on the destruction and redistribution (i.e., incidental removal) of pollutants during treatment processes.

Whatever the degree of incidental removal, however, both effluent and sludge will almost always be contaminated to some degree with metals and organic chemicals (637). In one study of POTWs in New Jersey (including some that dump sludge in marine waters), for example, an average of 27 percent of Clean Water Act (CWA) priority pollutants were present in effluent and sludge (160).

Some waste treatment processes can further alter the composition of sludge and effluent. In particular, the use of chlorination to disinfect effluent prior to discharge can create and increase chlorinated hydrocarbons in the effluent; in one study, the concentration of chloroform in effluent increased by 70 percent (704). In general, though, the majority of chlorine apparently ends up as chloride ions rather than in chlorinated organic compounds (636). In addition, metals tend to associate with solid material, so sludge tends to have higher concentrations of metals than does effluent from the same plant (503).

Although treatment processes destroy high levels of some bacteria, remaining bacteria and other microorganisms can be distributed in both effluent and sludge. Under the right conditions, these organisms can proliferate in effluent and sludge and constrain subsequent management. Furthermore, some bacteria cannot be detected with traditional techniques but apparently can remain viable in marine waters for extended periods of time (in some cases, years) (ch. 6). The apparent absence of human pathogens at or near sludge disposal sites in the open ocean, for example, may actually reflect our inability to detect such organisms rather than their actual absence.

Given the numerous pollutants that have been or could be detected in sludge and effluent, EPA and others have attempted to determine which components are "most important" or of "greatest concern." For example, as part of an effort to develop new regulations for sludge management, EPA identified a list of about 50 metals and organic chemicals that could cause environmental or human health impacts and these could be the focus of future regulatory efforts (31,643).
AMOUNTS OF EFFLUENT AND SLUDGE GENERATED AND DISPOSED

Effluent and Sludge Generation

Over 15,000 POTWs currently operate in the United States and each year they treat and discharge approximately 9.5 trillion gallons of wastewater. More than 2,200 POTWs are located in coastal counties, and they discharge about one-third of the Nation’s municipal effluent (503,608). POTWs also produce increasing amounts of sewage sludge. The total amount generated by all POTWs more than doubled during the last decade, and almost 40 percent originates from POTWs located in coastal counties (table 22).

By the year 2000, total sludge production could increase to over 10 million dry metric tons (377,503). The amount of effluent is expected to increase to between 13 and 16 trillion gallons per year. These increases will result from expanded use of secondary and advanced treatment processes, which produce more sludge, and increases in population, sewerage hookups, and numbers of POTWs (654).

Land-Based Management Technologies for Effluent and Sludge

Only about 2 percent of the Nation’s total effluent is not discharged into surface waters (503). Instead, it is used to irrigate or fertilize agricultural and forest land, or for groundwater recharge, industrial uses, aquiculture, and underground injection to prevent saltwater intrusion. In Los Angeles County, for example, water reclaimed by five municipal treatment plants is used for landscaping, irrigation, groundwater recharge, and industrial processes (503).

The choice of disposal or treatment options generally is driven by site-specific factors such as POTW size and location, regulatory climate, State policies, qualitative assessments of impacts, and costs (502). Most land-based disposal or treatment of sludge involves land application, the use of the sludge as a commercial product for household or municipal use (known as distribution and market-

Table 22.—Amounts of Effluent and Sludge Generated by Municipal Treatment Plants (POTWs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product and treatment level</th>
<th>All POTWs</th>
<th>POTWs discharging into estuaries</th>
<th>POTWs discharging into coastal waters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>Percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effluent:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No discharge ...............</td>
<td>1,577</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary ....................</td>
<td>1,023</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced primary ..........</td>
<td>2,102</td>
<td>2.81</td>
<td>10.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary ..................</td>
<td>8,005</td>
<td>10.47</td>
<td>40.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary ...................</td>
<td>2,775</td>
<td>9.84</td>
<td>37.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total ...................</strong></td>
<td><strong>15,482</strong></td>
<td><strong>29.96</strong></td>
<td><strong>–</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sludge:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No discharge ...............</td>
<td>1,577</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary ....................</td>
<td>1,023</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced primary ..........</td>
<td>2,102</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary ..................</td>
<td>8,005</td>
<td>2.85</td>
<td>41.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary ...................</td>
<td>2,775</td>
<td>2.86</td>
<td>41.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total ...................</strong></td>
<td><strong>15,482</strong></td>
<td><strong>6.86</strong></td>
<td><strong>–</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Treatment levels are defined in table 20, except no discharge = no discharge into waterbodies, and advanced primary levels intermediate between primary and secondary levels.

** Effluent, amounts are in billion gallons per day. For sludge, amounts are in million dry metric tons per year.

***Percent of total amount (of effluent or sludge, as appropriate).

**The total of 578 POTWs (500 into estuaries and 78 into coastal waters) differs slightly from the total of 578 cited in ch. 3, because of differences in the way POTWs were classified during different analyses of data available from EPA.

ing), landfilling, and incineration (650). Other approaches used for significantly smaller amounts of sludge include incorporation into construction materials (e.g., brick, asphalt) and animal feed, and degradation by earthworms.

Land application usually involves spreading sludge on agricultural and forest land or using it in redamation projects (e.g., on strip-mined land), and it has been the subject of much research (429, 525, 591). Distributing and marketing sludge commercially involves using or selling composted or heat-dried sludge as a nutrient enricher and soil conditioner. Landfilling consists of placing sludge in an area dedicated solely to disposal and then covering it with soil. Incineration includes burning sludge alone, co-combustion with municipal waste (to yield usable energy), and emerging technologies such as gasification and liquefaction (660). In general, it is used for sludges with a very high organic content where land is scarce (318); about 150 incinerators or co-combustion facilities now operate in the United States (660).

Together, these land-based options are used to treat or dispose of about 90 percent of the sludge generated in the United States. Up to one-half of all sludge is landfilled or put in surface impoundments, about one-fifth is incinerated, and about one-fourth is applied to the land (including distribution and marketing) (503, 634). The use of these
options varies geographically and with POTW size. In 1980, for example, coastal POTWs landfilled 54 percent, ocean-dumped 22 percent, and land-applied 5 percent of their sludge. Small POTWs use land application or landfilling to dispose of almost three-fourths of their sludge, while larger POTWs use a greater variety of methods, including incineration.

**Marine Disposal of Effluent**

The most common way to dispose of effluent is to discharge it through pipelines into nearby waters. Almost 600 POTWs discharge effluent directly into estuaries or coastal waters (table 22). Although these POTWs represent only 4 percent of the Nation’s total, they account for about one-fourth (2.3 trillion gallons annually) of all municipal effluent because many of them serve large urban areas. Of this, about 2.1 trillion gallons of effluent are discharged annually into estuaries (503). About three-fifths of the effluent discharged into marine waters receives secondary or greater treatment; effluent discharged into estuaries generally receives greater treatment than does effluent discharged into coastal waters. 1

Pipelines can be designed so that discharges are more likely to meet specified water quality goals. For example, the use of very long pipelines, in combination with design features such as large multiport diffusers, can result in effluent discharges that are highly diluted and far from shore (375,387).

**Marine Disposal of Sewage Sludge**

Sludge is disposed of in marine environments in two ways, by dumping from barges or ships or by discharge from pipelines. Discharges of sludge into estuaries and coastal waters take place only in southern California and Boston and total about 110,000 dry metric tons of sludge or solids each year 2 (503). The discharge of sludge by the City of Los Angeles will cease when a sludge dehydra-
ing/inciperation facility is completed in 1987. Under court order, Boston is developing secondary treatment facilities and alternative sludge management options (148, 166). Sludge discharges into Boston Harbor could continue until these improvements are in place in the mid-1990s.

The amount of sludge that is dumped in marine waters has increased steadily, from over 2.5 million wet metric tons in 1959 to about 7.5 million wet metric tons in 1983 (648). This equals about 7 to 10 percent of all sludge generated in the United States (503). After the 1977 Clean Water Act amendments banned the dumping of sludge that would "unreasonably degrade" the ocean, over 100 small municipalities stopped dumping at sea, but these accounted for less than 5 percent of all dumped sludge. Because of a 1981 court decision (City of New York v. United States Environmental Protection Agency; see ch. 7), nine sewerage authorities in New York and New Jersey have continued to dump sludge at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site in the New York Bight, which has been used since 1924 (table 23) (306,503).

The use of the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site is now being phased out and sludge dumping is being moved to the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site (ch. 3). As of November 1986, Nassau and Westchester Counties had shifted all dumping to the deepwater site; New York City had shifted 10 percent; and the sewerage authorities in New Jersey had shifted 25 percent (F. Czulak, U.S. EPA Region II, pers. comm. November 1986). New York City has indicated that it will not be able to move all its dumping to the deepwater site prior to 1988 (502).

---

1 The Los Angeles County Sanitation Districts mix "entrant" (solid particles derived from centrifuge processes) with sewage sludge and term this discharge effluent.

2 The 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site was operated by the Los Angeles County Sanitation Districts from 1924 to 1988.
After sludge is produced at municipal treatment plants, it can be managed in several ways, including land application, landfilling, incineration, distribution and marketing, and marine dumping. When dumped, sludge is loaded onto barges (like those shown here, which are loaded with municipal waste and debris) or ships for transport to the dumping site.

Table 23.—Costs of Dumping Sludge at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site and the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permittee</th>
<th>Amount dumped in 1985</th>
<th>Total cost, 12-mile site</th>
<th>Total cost, deepwater site</th>
<th>Ratio of costs, deepwater/12-mile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New York City, NY</td>
<td>3.03</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>18.6</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middlesex County, NJ</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passaic Valley, NJ</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nassau County, NY</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Westchester County, NY</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essex-Union Joint Meeting, NJ</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bergen County, NJ</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rahway Valley, NJ</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linden-Roselle, NJ</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total or average</td>
<td>6.57</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>58.2</td>
<td>4.0/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In millions of wet metric tons.

\*Millions of dollars, adjusted to 1982 dollar values.

\*Not available.

\*Weighted average ratio for entire New York Bight, excluding Linden-Roselle.

Future Demand for Marine Disposal of Sludge

It is difficult to predict the future demand for marine disposal of sludge. Many municipalities would probably be interested in dumping sludge in marine waters if the regulations are changed to allow increased dumping. Several large coastal municipalities (e.g., Baltimore, Boston, Washington, DC, Jacksonville, Philadelphia, San Diego, San Francisco, and Seattle) have expressed interest in maintaining dumping as a potential option should other options fail (32,532). In addition, Orange County, California, has proposed that it be allowed to discharge sludge into deep ocean waters on an experimental basis (see box W).

Estimating the amount of sludge that might be dumped in marine waters in the future is extremely difficult because:

- it is unclear whether current relatively restrictive Federal policies will change;
- it is unclear how many east coast communities would find it economically feasible to dump at the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site;
- land-based disposal options could often be more attractive, especially if levels of toxic pollutants in sludge are reduced; and
- the granting of waivers from secondary treatment requirements (under Sec. 301(h)) could result in less sludge being produced by coastal municipalities, since lower treatment levels generate less sludge.

Costs of Sludge Disposal

The costs of sludge disposal and management options are determined primarily by sludge treatment requirements; economies of scale; land acquisition costs; capital, operating, and maintenance costs; transportation costs; and energy requirements (138, 504,635,639). Transportation alone can account for most of the costs associated with land application, landfilling, and ocean dumping.

The relative costs of dumping sludge at the 12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site and of land-based disposal will vary. Dumping in marine waters generally is less costly, because it does not require the sludge to be dewatered, as is necessary for land application and incineration (306). Dumping will certainly be more costly at the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site than at the 12-mile site. On average, dumping at the deepwater site is expected to cost four times more than dumping at the 12-mile site (table 23). These estimates largely reflect short-term transportation costs, but they may underemphasize the degree to which future capital investments reduce long-term costs. Dewatering, for example, would reduce the volume of sludge produced, which would reduce the number of trips to the deepwater site and decrease transportation costs, but it would also increase treatment costs prior to disposal (306). Dumping at the deepwater site generally could be less costly than land-based disposal for most municipalities currently dumping sludge (553).

GENERAL FATE OF SLUDGE AND EFFLUENT

Dumped Sludge

The potential for impacts from municipal waste disposal depends on what happens after disposal. When dumped from barges or ships, sludge is initially diluted by currents and by turbulence from the wake, typically by a factor of several hundred within a few minutes and by a factor of 5,000 or more after 4 hours (385,387). Dilution is greater if the material is released in many smaller amounts rather than a few large ones (280). Subsequent dilution is much slower, so initial dilution greatly influences the concentration of sludge components to which marine organisms will be exposed (387).

After initial dilution, most of the particles in sludge are still denser than the surrounding seawater and tend to descend as a large "cloud" at a rate dependent on size and density. When it reaches water of equal density, the cloud tends to

---

11 Initial dilution is considered to occur until a discharge ceases rising in the water column (i.e., until it reaches water of equal density), or until dumped material either ceases moving in the water column or reaches the bottom (280).
Wastes in Marine Environments

222

spread horizontally (385, 387, 503). Individual particles then slowly disperse and may settle toward the bottom.

The rate at which particles accumulate on the bottom is influenced by factors such as volume, dumping rate, type and size of particles, and physical and chemical processes. Large particles, for example, settle more rapidly than small ones; furthermore, they can be formed when small particles aggregate, a process enhanced when freshwater waste such as sludge mixes with saltwater. However, this tendency is decreased somewhat by dilution, which makes particles less likely to collide and aggregate (387).

The extent of settling—in terms of amount of material and area covered—varies significantly among different sites. In enclosed and shallow environments with little tidal action (e.g., many estuaries), material can accumulate on the bottom in the general vicinity of the dumpsite when sludge is dumped over a long period (85, 87, 400). These types of marine waters, however, are not used for sludge dumping in the United States.

In contrast, in more open and well-mixed waters such as are used in the United States, most particulate material (perhaps as much as 90 percent) is transported out of the immediate area by currents and may disperse over an area of several hundred square kilometers (387). In the New York Bight, for example, most particles disperse away from the immediate dumping area over the course of days or weeks; some particles and associated pollutants move into and accumulate in other areas of the Bight such as Christiaensen Basin (located northwest of the dumpsite).

The decomposition of the organic material in dumped sludge depends on the activity of microorganisms. Initially, much of the decomposition is performed by microorganisms that are present in the sludge before it enters marine waters. These microorganisms are adapted to survive in freshwater (the main component of sludge) and they may not survive when the sludge enters marine waters, thereby reducing the initial decomposition of organic material. Some decomposition also occurs after the material settles on the bottom, but it tends to be slower in the conditions typical of bottom sediments and for sludges with low organic content. It also tends to be slower in waters that have low oxygen levels, since many or most of the decompose microorganisms require oxygen. Some observers suggest that decomposition could be enhanced by "seeding" sludge with microorganisms developed (e.g., by genetic engineering) to survive in both fresh and marine water (R. Colwell, Univ. Maryland, pers. comm., October 1986; also see ref. 105).

Discharged Effluent

When discharged from a pipeline, effluent is primarily fresh, buoyant water which tends to form a "plume" that rises in the water column. The plume rises, entraining saltwater in the process, until it reaches either water of equal density or the surface; the plume can spread horizontally at either point. The particles in the effluent, already present at a concentration of less than 1 percent, are diluted as they mix with the denser saltwater, but the degree of initial dilution varies greatly. For pipelines that discharge into shallow water and that are not equipped with diffusers, dilution is only about a factor of 10 (280). In contrast, large outfalls that discharge in relatively deep water and that are equipped with long multiport diffusers can achieve initial dilution of up to a thousandfold (280). Individual particles begin to sink slowly after this initial plume rise and dilution.

As with sludge, the fraction of particles in effluent that disperses from the discharge point varies markedly under different conditions. In the relatively dispersive conditions in the Southern California Bight, for example, only about 10 percent of the particles may settle in a well-defined zone around the discharge point (350), although accumulation of these particles can still result in significant Impacts.
IMPACTS FROM EFFLUENT AND SLUDGE DISPOSAL

Marine Impacts From Particulate Material, Microorganisms, and Nutrients

Pollutants such as particulate material (suspended solids, organic material), fecal coliform bacteria and other microorganisms, and nutrients in sludge or effluent can cause a variety of beneficial and adverse impacts on marine environments.

Some observers argue that the beneficial nature of sludge and effluent disposal in marine waters has not been appreciated by the public (509,638). In estuaries and coastal waters, nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphorus can stimulate phytoplankton productivity, and in turn possibly enhance commercial fisheries. In the open ocean, nutrients from sludge dumping could stimulate increases in productivity, since lack of nutrients is a major constraint on productivity in most of these waters. Overall productivity, however, would still remain low relative to estuaries and coastal waters.

In contrast, the adverse impacts associated with dumping and discharges of sewage wastes have received considerable attention. One common problem is that particulate material can accumulate in the disposal area, especially if the activity is continuous or frequent, and alter bottom (i.e., benthic) habitats. This can lead to changes in population sizes or the diversity of marine organisms. The major change in species composition that typically occurs is a shift from communities dominated by suspension feeders, such as crabs and mollusks, to ones dominated by deposit feeders, such as worms (350).

These types of impacts are present in a range of sites around the country. In southern California coastal waters, for example, pollutants including suspended solids, and some metals and organic chemicals have affected about 5 percent of the benthic communities to some degree (350,387). One small area (less than 10 km²) around two outfalls was severely affected and up to about 85 km² of surrounding areas was moderately affected. At one dumpsite near Delaware Bay, once used by Philadelphia, gradual accumulation of material to the south and west of the site seems to have caused changes in benthic species abundance and diversity (686). In the New York Bight, the most severely degraded areas (about 10 to 15 km²) occur just west of the dumpsite, on the margin of Christiaensen Basin (387).

Excessive inputs of nutrients and organic material (i.e., eutrophication) can lead to hypoxia—low dissolved oxygen levels—and other serious consequences. In some shallow and enclosed marine waters, these impacts have been caused at least in part by effluent discharges. Both problems, however, also are caused by other factors. Seasonally recurring episodes of extreme hypoxia in the New York Bight, for example, are caused by a combination of factors: natural stratification of the water prevents the mixing and reoxygenation of bottom waters; nutrients from a wide variety of sources, including raw sewage and municipal effluents carried by the Hudson and Raritan rivers, increase plant life, which can lead to reduced oxygen supplies when the plants die and are decomposed by microorganisms (416,548,632).

Pathogenic microorganisms present in effluent and sludge can cause a variety of impacts, too, such as the contamination and closure of shellfish beds. Some cases of shellfish contamination have been unequivocally linked to sludge dumping, for example, at the old Philadelphia dumpsite (595). Such contamination may be partially reversible; 3 years after dumping ceased at the Philadelphia dumpsite certain pathogenic microorganisms were relatively rare, although still detectable (595). Although contamination by pathogenic microorganisms is common in the vicinity of effluent discharges, the microorganisms can also come from raw sewage, combined sewage overflows, and runoff. Some viral pathogens present in effluent discharges (e.g., enteric viruses) have high survival rates in marine waters and, if ingested, may adversely affect human health by causing gastrointestinal disorders and other diseases.

12 In 1976, the public attributed the presence of fecal material on New Jersey and New York beaches to the dumping of sludge in the New York Bight. However, several other sources of material (including the raw sewage carried into the Bight from the Hudson and Raritan rivers), together with high river flows and various climatic factors, apparently were responsible for these episodes (377,547,632).
Wastes in Marine Environments

Marine Impacts From Metals and Organic Chemicals

The potential for metals in both sludge and effluent to cause adverse impacts depends on many chemical and physical factors (ch. 4). Organisms can ingest certain metals that sometimes cause immediate toxic effects (including death). Furthermore, because metals are persistent they can bio-accumulate within organisms and cause further impacts (e.g., impair growth or reproduction in fish and benthic invertebrates) (55). Most metals do not biomagnify in successive levels of the food chain. However, mercury—a common pollutant in sludge—can be converted by marine organisms to a form that has direct acute toxic effects on the organisms, biomagnifies in the food chain, and is toxic to humans.

Many organic chemicals also are persistent in the environment and often bioaccumulate. In contrast to metals, however, many also can biomagnify. These chemicals can cause severe sediment contamination problems, and a variety of short- and long-term effects on organisms.

Information on the potential impacts of metals and organic chemicals in effluent discharges has been summarized for 25 of the 30 largest coastal POTWs that applied for Section 301(h) waivers (503,649). If these POTWs were allowed to continue to provide less-than-secondary treatment, 12 were considered to have the potential to cause significant impacts because of large quantities of metals (e.g., copper, nickel, thallium, zinc) and organic chemicals (e.g., naphthalene, pentachlorophenol) in their effluents. Potential and observed impacts included contamination of sediments and organisms; fish disease and reproductive failure; degradation of benthic and plankton communities; and closures of shellfisheries and fisheries (503). Effluents from the other 13 applicants were considered to lack this potential (649).

Toxic pollutants in combined sewer overflows (CSOs) also have caused major impacts in marine waters (503,647). Puget Sound have contributed to toxic "hotspots" in Elliot Bay, where the sediments have average concentrations of metals and organic chemicals greater than sediments from the deep central part of the Sound. Elevated levels of copper and lead also were found in fish exposed to the overflows and sediments. In San Francisco Bay, sediments located near CSOs had elevated concentrations of numerous pollutants, including many metals, and the sediments were considered unsuitable to support the normal diversity and abundance of organisms (233, 503). In contrast to Puget Sound, however, fish near the CSOs in San Francisco Bay did not exhibit elevated amounts of metals.

Impacts From Land-Based Disposal

Land applied sludge can be used beneficially as a fertilizer or soil conditioner on agricultural and forest lands (34,429,502,525). Seattle, for example, has applied sludge to forest lands and recently determined that revenues from the sale of sludge for forest application will at least partially offset the costs of sludge treatment and other management options (P. Machno, Seattle Metro, pers. comm., 1985; ref. 469).

Controversy surrounds many land application projects, however, because pathogens, metals, organic chemicals, and even nutrients in the sludge can cause adverse impacts (167). Nutrients such as organic nitrogen and ammonia, for example, can be converted by microorganisms into nitrates, which can leach into and contaminate surface water or groundwater.

Because of public health concerns, the presence of pathogens is a major factor limiting land application. Modern treatment processes can reduce the densities of most bacteria and some viruses, but not parasites, and sludges subjected to these processes are allowed to be land-applied in certain situations. Additional reduction of pathogens results from sunlight and drying after application. Despite this, bacteria, viruses, and parasites can survive in soil for months, depending on soil temperature, pH, organic content, and other factors. Viable pathogens have been found in runoff from fields that were subject to land application of sludge. No cases of human disease, however, have been documented to date from land application of treated sludge, al-
though disease outbreaks have been linked with application of untreated sewage wastes (ch. 6).

Potential impacts from metals are another limiting factor. In general, metals adsorb strongly to particles or are not highly water soluble, so they tend to be retained in the soil. They are more mobile in sandy or acidic soils, however, from which they can leach into and contaminate surface runoff and groundwater. Some metals (e.g., cadmium, chromium, zinc, nickel) can be taken up by plants, sometimes affecting productivity, and excessive amounts of metals in plants can affect livestock or human health (118,387).

Some organic chemicals are lost from the soil through volatilization, but the fate of others depends on properties such as their volubility in water (503). They usually do not affect plant productivity significantly, but they can be ingested from soil or root surfaces by livestock, accumulate in animal tissues, and be consumed by humans.

The impacts associated with landfiling sludge are similar to those for land application. Anaerobic conditions are more common in landfills, however, which tends to retard the conversion of nitrogen and ammonia into nitrates, so there is generally less potential for leaching of nitrates into groundwater. Decomposition of organic material in landfills also can produce various gases; methane can be explosive, while carbon dioxide can acidify soils and increase the volubility of metals.

Sludge incineration significantly reduces the amount of material to be disposed, totally destroys pathogens, and can destroy more than 99 percent of organic chemicals under proper conditions. However, emissions of particulate material can affect ambient air quality, and emissions of volatilized metals or products of incomplete combustion can increase risks to human health. Incineration residuals, particularly metals, also remain in scrubber water or bottom ash, which also must be disposed of (usually in landfills, thereby adding to the potential risk of groundwater contamination).

**Risks to Humans From Sludge Disposal Methods**

Extensive research has been conducted on the potential risks to humans from different sludge disposal methods. EPA has developed a series of environmental and human health hazard indices for 50 pollutants found in sludge (656). Based on these indices, it appears that contaminated sludge applied to human food-chain cropland poses the greatest risk to humans, primarily because of the threat of PCBs and other nonvolatile, insoluble organic chemicals (503). In contrast, application of uncontaminated or even moderately contaminated sludge to non-food-chain croplands poses much less risk to humans. Evidence also suggests that risks to humans from land incineration and ocean dumping might be less than those from land application (503).

**MAJOR ISSUES RELATED TO MARINE ENVIRONMENTS**

The many issues that influence the management of sewage sludge and effluent in marine waters can be grouped into five broad categories:

1. compliance and enforcement,
2. how toxic pollutants and hazardous wastes affect sewage management,
3. new regulatory initiatives regarding sludge management,
4. the role of marine waters in waste management, and
5. the role of land-based disposal alternatives. 

The issue of ensuring funding of future municipal treatment plant construction, under the Construction Grants Program, is discussed in ch. 1; indirect effects of the program on the above issues are discussed here when appropriate.

Compliance and Enforcement

Municipal treatment plants have been slower than industrial facilities to respond to the original requirements of CWA. Originally, municipal plants were to achieve secondary treatment by 1977. Congress extended this date to 1988, and in 1984 EPA issued a National Municipal Policy statement affirming this goal. As of September 30, 1985, however, 37 percent of all major POTWs still were not in compliance with secondary treatment requirements, in part because many have not com-

---

1The issue of ensuring funding of future municipal treatment plant construction, under the Construction Grants Program, is discussed in ch. 1; indirect effects of the program on the above issues are discussed here when appropriate.

2Major POTWs include those discharging more than 1 million gallons per day or serving more than 10,000 people.
pleted the necessary construction (327). Substantial progress has been made during the last year in bringing POTWs onto a compliance schedule (designed to achieve compliance by mid-1988) or into actual compliance (table 24). As a result, under existing construction schedules, it appears that compliance could be achieved by the mid-1988 deadline by about 87 percent of major POTWs (table 24) (655). Almost 200 major POTWs, however, currently do not have compliance schedules and hence are likely to miss the deadline.

Even where required facilities have been built and are operational, some frequent and often serious violations of discharge standards have occurred. About 6 percent of the major POTWs that have completed construction have exhibited significant noncompliance. Noncompliance by these POTWs was attributed to inadequate facilities to provide required treatment levels; inadequate industrial pretreatment and treatment of combined sewer overflows; problems in maintaining sewer systems; and lack of appropriate local institutional structures to finance capital and operating costs and to efficiently manage facilities (327).

Implementing and enforcing CWA goals and requirements has been difficult, in part because of limited resources for monitoring and restrictions on the types of penalties that EPA can impose (327). Furthermore, these requirements focus largely on the removal of conventional pollutants. Quantities of metals and organic chemicals can be significant, however, and are likely to decline only if pretreatment is implemented and enforced.

Effect of Toxic Pollutants and Hazardous Wastes on Sewage Management

Many problems associated with municipal waste disposal stem from the presence of toxic metals and organic chemicals, which municipal treatment plants are not designed to treat. Hundreds of these pollutants enter municipal systems legally and illegally, although often at extremely low concentrations, and they are primarily contributed by industrial sources. A small portion is "incidentally" removed from wastewater, and some pollutants become incorporated in sludge. If POTWs continue to receive industrial wastes that contain these pollutants, questions will continue to arise regarding the ability of POTWs to produce clean effluent and sludge.

If levels of these pollutants in POTW influents were reduced, however, the feasibility of some disposal options, such as land application, would be enhanced. "Many constraints hamper the achievement of such a goal, however, including poor compliance with and enforcement of regulations, lack of standards for some management options, and lack of permit limits for some pollutants.

The lack of standards presents problems for both sludge and effluent disposal. Most sludge disposal options are not covered by regulations that limit metals and organic chemicals in sludge, leaving

Table 24.—Status of Major Municipal Facilities (POTWs) Not in Compliance With National Municipal Policy*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status of POTW</th>
<th>Number of major POTWs (October 1985)</th>
<th>Number of major POTWs (July 1986)</th>
<th>Number of minor POTWs (October 1985)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On final enforcement schedule or under referral</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>1,066</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returned to compliance</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unresolved</td>
<td>581</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>2,775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total subject to National Municipal Policy</td>
<td>1,578</td>
<td>1,491</td>
<td>3,381</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*As of date indicated, data refer only to major POTWs whose design was to treat flows of 1 million gallons per day or more or to service a population of 10,000 or greater.

†Provisional data are the number of POTWs that require further construction to achieve compliance; data are not available for minor POTWs that have completed construction but are not in compliance.

‡Referral indicates Department of Justice or State Attorneys General for civil action; such cases usually result in the establishment of a final compliance schedule.

POTWs without clearly defined goals for sludge quality. Among POTWs that receive significant quantities of industrial discharges, most have effluent discharge permits that contain limits on some metals but only a few organic chemicals (503). In part, this reflects the lack of State water quality standards for some metals and most organic chemicals (668). POTWs can also develop their own "local" limits on industrial discharges of metals and organic chemicals into sewers. Local limits on industries are generally developed, however, only if a POTW must meet a specific limit contained in its own discharge permit. Since most POTWs do not have limits on organic chemicals in their permits, there is little incentive for them to develop corresponding local limits on their industrial users.

Some of these problems are being addressed by EPA and the States. For example, EPA is developing comprehensive sludge disposal regulations and promoting the use of water quality-based permitting as a means of controlling toxic pollutants (49 FR 9016-9019, Mar. 9, 1984). EPA also has the statutory authority to develop regulations for potentially toxic substances that are currently unregulated by CWA but which may be present at high concentrations in municipal wastestreams. Under paragraph 4(c) of the 1976 Toxics Consent Decree, for example, EPA has identified six such pollutants, but no regulations have been developed (644).

These important issues—enforcement, local limits, additional national standards, and water quality criteria—are discussed in further detail in chapters 1 and 8. For most of these issues, improved implementation of existing programs at all levels of involvement is critical and will require much more rigorous enforcement. This will only be possible if funding for monitoring and enforcement programs is increased.

The issue of legal hazardous waste discharges into sewers is particularly vexing. Eliminating the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) Domestic Sewage Exemption and regulating such discharges under RCRA is attractive because POTWs would receive fewer hazardous wastes. This option, however, could lead to increased illegal dumping into sewers and waterways, possibly making the problem worse (666). EPA proposed that the exemption be retained and that POTWs continue to develop and improve pretreatment programs to reduce the levels of hazardous and toxic pollutants that enter treatment plants. This approach thus will require effective implementation and enforcement of the pretreatment program, the likelihood of which is unclear. A related approach might be to develop regionalized waste treatment facilities, specifically designed to collect and treat hazardous or other industrial wastestreams (502).

New Regulatory Initiatives Regarding Sludge Management

The management of sludge is controlled by a patchwork of Federal, State, and local regulations, and no national sludge management program now exists. Instead, institutional arrangements among municipalities, counties, States, and EPA Regions are highly site-specific and complex, and often highly politicized (502). Management also is complicated by a lack of comprehensive disposal standards, changing economic conditions, public opposition, and a relative lack of promotion of the idea that sludge can be used as a beneficial resource. As a result, most municipalities develop options haphazardly to take advantage of short-term opportunities.

Two sometimes antagonistic needs are key parts of the sludge management debate: the needs for stronger Federal guidance and regulation, and more flexibility to accommodate local conditions (502). Proponents of a minimal Federal role would let States develop their own regulations independently, with the Federal Government providing only technical assistance and guidance. Because local sludge management decisions are highly site-specific and often difficult to implement (502), local managers need considerable flexibility in designing and implementing sludge disposal options.

These and other institutional issues are discussed in a contract prepared for OTA which summarized case studies of sewage management and pretreatment programs in Boston, Hampton Roads, Houston, Los Angeles County, Miami, New York, Philadelphia, and Seattle (502). These localities were chosen to achieve diversity in geography and type of waterbody, use of sludge dumping, degree of industrialization, pretreatment program status, sludge management alternatives, and institutional policy issues.
According to this perspective, however, Federal regulations do not allow sufficient flexibility or promote consideration of site-specific factors. In contrast, proponents of an increased Federal role question whether current regulations for both sludge and effluent provide sufficient protection for the public and the environment. They contend that the Federal Government should continue to establish minimum national standards for most pollutants, conduct broad multimedia assessments, and possibly develop a large-scale, uniform national program with mandatory requirements for all States. Minimum standards, for example, could be included in the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System to provide performance goals for POTWs and promote the use of sludge as a resource.

In response, EPA has developed two new regulatory initiatives involving State sludge management programs and Federal regulations for sludge disposal. Under these initiatives, the Federal Government would play a stronger role in some areas: promoting the use of sludge as a resource, developing technical regulations for sludge disposal, and providing more technical assistance.  

First, EPA proposed a new rule to aid States in designing sludge management programs (51 FR 4458, Feb. 4, 1986); final action on the rule is scheduled for February 1987. Under the rule, States would develop plans for managing sludge (including promoting beneficial uses). To obtain EPA approval, a State would have to:

- demonstrate that it can ensure compliance with Federal regulations by overseeing how individual POTWs manage sludge;
- demonstrate that the State can monitor sludge to verify compliance and take enforcement actions against violators;
- possess legal authority to assess civil penalties for violations; and
- meet various reporting requirements on sludge inventories, noncompliance, and other aspects of sludge management (150, 151).

Second, EPA is developing technical regulations for five major sludge management methods—land application, landfilling, incineration, distribution and marketing, and ocean disposal. Federal regulations have never been promulgated for some of these options (e.g., for distribution and marketing), although nonbinding guidance has been issued. The new regulations would complement the regulations for State programs and would focus on quantifying the risks from and allowable concentrations of metals and organic chemicals in sludge; EPA identified pollutants that are candidates for regulation, and pollutants selected for actual regulation will be controlled either by numerical criteria for different disposal options or by technology-based management practices (311). These regulations would place sewage sludge management within a multimedia context; for a given situation, the risks of different options could be compared and the most environmentally acceptable option identified.

The regulations are scheduled for proposal in 1987. In a preliminary review, EPA’s Science Advisory Board (SAB) indicated that the risk assessment methodologies being used by EPA to develop the regulations do not provide a clear way to compare the human health risks of different sludge management options (245); the SAB recommendations focused on improving these methodologies. In addition to this shortcoming, the regulations do not sufficiently address pathogens. Current regulations for pathogens are technology-based and focus on fecal coliform bacteria; they do not directly address other pathogens such as viruses and parasites.

Role of Marine Environments in Municipal Waste Management

If policy choices about waste disposal in different marine environments are made within the context of a waste management hierarchy that includes
other management options, then marine waste disposal may be acceptable in some cases and unacceptable in others. Furthermore, the particular policy choices made about disposal in estuaries and coastal waters could greatly influence decisions about land-based and open ocean disposal.

For example, a goal of maintaining or improving the quality of estuaries and coastal waters could preclude the dumping of sludge in coastal waters, where most of it currently occurs. This could increase the need for either land-based disposal or open ocean dumping of sludge. A comparison of the benefits and risks of all sludge disposal options could suggest that the best use of uncontaminated (i.e., containing minimal amounts of metals, organic chemicals, pathogens) sludge might be either on land or in open ocean waters. On the other hand, the choice of treatment or disposal options for contaminated sludge would be less clear because of the risks of groundwater contamination from land application or landfilling, air pollution from incineration, or marine impacts from dumping. EPA’s new regulatory initiative will address some of these issues. Still, some basic questions regarding sludge and effluent disposal in marine environments remain unsettled.

### Should Sludge Dumping Be Allowed in Marine Waters?

The basic choice to be made in any disposal operation is between dispersal or containment (387). Containment of sludge in marine waters is technically difficult, expensive, and can increase adverse impacts. Dispersal, on the other hand, is feasible and since its objective is to minimize the buildup of disposed material on the bottom, it reduces the probability of impacts.

Dispersal is generally greater in large and well-mixed water masses, where wastes are mixed rapidly into a large volume of water and dispersed over a wide area (132,387). These conditions are prevalent in open ocean environments and well-mixed coastal waters. In contrast, estuarine and calmer coastal waters generally are less well-mixed or flushed. In addition, they receive large inputs of waste material from other sources. This section focuses on sludge dumping, while the proposed discharge of sludge by Orange County, California, into ocean waters is described in box W.

At the relatively deep Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site, for example, particles from dumped sludge are expected to be well-dispersed and result in little or no accumulation on the bottom (595). Although bottom-dwelling organisms at the site might be affected and monitoring should be conducted, the impacts are likely to be less severe than those seen near the present less dispersive site in the New York Bight Apex (416,548).

Relatively uncontaminated sludge thus could probably be dumped in open ocean waters without causing severe impacts, as long as a dispersal strategy and appropriate disposal technologies were used (51,87,338,387,402). In general, sludge should be dumped slowly in deep, dispersive waters to obtain the greatest mixing and dilution. Furthermore, impacts might be minimized by varying the location and frequency of disposal operations (509). Barges or ships could help achieve this goal, since the disposal location can be changed as needed. Shifting dumping to the Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site is one example of this strategy.

On the basis of these factors, there would be little rationale to eliminate dumping as a disposal option. In addition, controlled dumping under dispersive conditions also might be used beneficially to increase productivity in certain marine environments, for example midcontinental shelf areas with a naturally relatively barren benthic community (509).

On the other hand, however, most sludge dumped in marine waters will continue to be contaminated to some degree with microorganisms, metals, and organic chemicals. Furthermore, the likelihood that programs for reducing toxic pollutants in municipal wastes will be fully implemented and enforced is unclear. The uncertainties associated with our ability to detect microorganisms (including human pathogens) in marine waters, and to sufficiently reduce the amounts of metals and organic chemicals in sludge, thus argue in favor of a policy that call for restricting (at least to some degree) the dumping of sludge. For these reasons, many public groups remain adamantly opposed to dumping in any form.

If marine dumping of sludge is to continue, it seems prudent to use a dispersal strategy (e.g., dumping in well-mixed and deep waters) and to minimize the presence of metals, organic
Chemicals, and pathogens. This strategy would clearly preclude dumping in estuaries and poorly-mixed coastal waters.

In addition, if increased dumping were allowed, another legitimate concern is whether the magnitude of dumping could be sufficient controlled. Economic pressures might force a substantial increase in the amount of sludge being dumped in the ocean. The Marine Protection Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) permitting process may be adequate to temper these economic incentives; in addition, fees or taxes could be imposed on ocean dumpers so that the total cost of dumping is comparable to the cost of other disposal options. It may be difficult, however, to levy such a tax or fee on
POTWs using ocean dumping because the MPRSA only allows the collection of fees to process permit applications.

**Treatment Levels for Effluent Discharges**

Effluent cannot be readily contained and instead is generally discharged from pipelines. Since pipelines are fixed in one position and result in relatively low rates of initial dilution (280,509), their use can lead to the accumulation of particulate material in localized areas. Even so, these discharges can be suitable and dispersion can be enhanced if:

1. the amounts or concentrations of pollutants in effluents are reduced, and
2. pipelines are properly designed and placed in well-mixed and dispersive waters at appropriate distance from shore and depth (387).

Because of historical precedent and the current structure of municipal systems, few people question the need to discharge sewage effluent into estuaries and coastal waters.

At the same time, however, other options such as water conservation and reclamation could be used in some situations to reduce discharges into
marine and fresh waters. For example, the development of small plants to treat and reclaim municipal wastewater might be environmentally and economically preferable to the continued development of larger and more expensive POTWs that discharge effluents into surface waters, especially as these larger plants begin to age and as Federal funding for the construction of municipal treatment plants declines (N. K. Taylor, Seirra Club Clean Coastal Water Task Force, pers. comm. 1987). The incentives to develop water reclamation and conservation plants are greatest in the more arid areas of the country.

For discharges into marine waters much disagreement exists about the acceptable levels of two conventional pollutants—suspended solids and biochemical oxygen demand—in such discharges and whether some POTWs should be allowed to provide less-than-secondary treatment. Under Section 301(h) of CWA, POTWs could apply for waivers from secondary treatment requirements in areas where environmental quality would not be harmed, primarily to reduce construction and operating costs. The implementation of the waiver program, as well as its merit, has been debated extensively (122,225,310,533,649).

There is little doubt that substantial cost savings, amounting to several billion dollars in construction costs and up to $100 million in annual operation and maintenance costs, could be achieved by allowing some waivers (504,575). Comparing cost savings to costs of subsequent changes in receiving water quality is difficult, however, because of the variety of other factors that can affect water quality.

From a technical perspective, the question of whether lower treatment levels should be allowed can only be determined on a case-by-case basis, after evaluating site-specific factors. These factors are evaluated as part of the 301(h) application process (40 CFR Part 125, Subpart G) and include:

- the quality of receiving water (i.e., ability to disperse material, degree of previous impacts);
- the sensitivity of indigenous organisms and communities; and
- the relative contributions of pollutants from other sources (e.g., nonpoint pollution, industrial effluents).

As of January 1987, EPA had decided that all relevant criteria appeared to be satisfied for 46 of 208 waiver applications (figure 34). Only a few large coastal POTWs, however, received approvals (e.g., Los Angeles County). Some municipalities (e.g., Seattle) withdrew their applications in part because of major public controversy.

From a policy perspective, prohibiting such waivers in the future could be justified because of the overall extent of pollutant inputs from many sources into estuaries and coastal waters and the expected trend of degradation in many of these waters. Indeed, some environmental groups have suggested that the Section 301(h) waiver provision be rescinded.

In one sense, this issue is largely moot, however, because decisions about most waivers have been made and no additional applications can be submitted. In addition, the National Municipal Policy calls for most POTWs to achieve secondary treatment by mid-1988. It is complicated, however, by uncertain future economic conditions. Many POTWs have not yet secured funding for building or upgrading plants to the secondary level, and Federal Construction Grant funds for such activities will be significantly reduced in the next few years.

In anticipation of reduced Federal funding, some States are developing revolving funds (through bond sales or initial capitalization by State appropri-
ations) to meet future POTW construction costs (143,520). Some municipalities are turning to private developers in an attempt to finance necessary construction, although it is unclear whether incentives are sufficient for private developers to invest on a large scale in municipal treatment plants (143,685).

These economic conditions could lead to reconsideration of the issue of required treatment levels in the future, as municipal treatment needs in coastal areas increase and as older treatment plants require maintenance or expansion. At the same time, and in combination with general concerns about the quality of marine environments, they also could provide incentives to consider other options for managing effluent such as water reclamation and reuse.

**Role of Land-Based Alternatives in Sludge Management**

The availability of land-based sludge management options is a critical factor in decisions regarding marine disposal of sludge. In the context of the waste management hierarchy, use of sludge as a beneficial resource on land (or in marine waters) would generally be preferred to disposal. From a technical perspective, relatively uncontaminated sludge could be land-applied, under proper conditions (e.g., appropriate measures to control runoff), as a beneficial resource without causing significant impacts. In addition, destruction of uncontaminated sludge by incineration might also be preferred in many situations.

Implementation of land-based alternatives, however, often is difficult for several reasons. First, local public opposition to land application or incineration can be intense because sludge is often considered an undesirable waste and because of concerns about health risks arising from use of these methods. Second, long-term management arrangements often are difficult to maintain (502). Third, standards to compare the various land-based disposal alternatives have been lacking (502), but EPA is developing regulations to address this problem. Finally, most sludges are contaminated with pathogens and toxic pollutants, which limits the environmental acceptability of land-based (and marine) disposal options, especially those involving beneficial uses.
Chapter 10
Managing Dredged Material
CONTENTS

overview .................................................................237
Dredged Material Disposal: Amounts and Sites .......................239
    Inventory of Dredged Material Amounts ..........................239
    Disposal Sites .........................................................239
    Future Need for Marine Disposal ..................................240
Dredged Material Characteristics .....................................242
    Sediment Composition ..............................................242
Effects of Dredging Equipment on Composition ......................242
Physical Fate of Dredged Material After Disposal ..................243
    Disposal in Marine Environments .................................243
    Disposal in Intertidal and Upland Containment Areas .............244
Impacts of Dredged Material Disposal ................................244
    Disposal in Marine Environments .................................244
    Disposal in Intertidal Areas and Upland Containment Areas .......246
Predicting Environmental Impacts ....................................246
    Predicting Physical Fate in Marine Environments ..............246
    Predicting Chemical Impacts on Marine Organisms ..............246
    Predicting Impacts From Other Disposal Options ................247
Disposal Techniques for Contaminated Dredged Material ..........248
    Capping in Marine Environments .................................248
    Upland Containment Areas .......................................249
Containment Islands ..................................................249
Costs of Disposal Operations .......................................250
Policy Issues .........................................................251
    Dealing With the Shortage of Disposal Areas ....................251
    Providing Balanced Consideration of All Disposal Options .......253

Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X. Statutory Framework</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 10

Managing Dredged Material

OVERVIEW

Dredging involves the removal of bottom sedi-dumped into marine environments each year. About
tment from rivers and harbors and its transporta-one-third of all dredged material (180 million wet
tion to another location for disposal. ‘New work’metric tons) is disposed of in marine environments:
dredged material is generated during the initial de-two-thirds of this material is disposed of in estu-
dvelopment of a port, harbor, or navigation chan-aries and the remainder is dumped in coastal waters
nel, or the widening and deepening of existing or the open ocean. Two dozen sites receive about
navigational channels. In addition, “maintenance”95 percent of all dredged material dumped in
dredging is required for most channels because fine-coastal waters and the open ocean (442); an un-
grained, river-borne sediment settles out of suspen-nown sediments are used for dis-
sion and gradually accumulates in the channelsposal in estuaries. Pressure to use marine environ-
ments for dredged material disposal will continue
channels. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
(COE) considers a small fraction of this mainte-
nance material, general y dredged from areas near
highly industrialized ports and harbors, to contain
high enough levels of pollutants to require special
management during disposal. 1

COE is responsible for maintaining over 25,000
miles of navigable waterways that service over 155
commercial ports and more than 400 small boat
harbors; these ports and harbors are valuable for
commercial, defense, and recreational purposes.
Projects run by COE, other Federal and State agen-
cies, and private efforts result in the dredging of
about 550 million wet metric tons of sediment each
year, at a cost of about $725 million (442). Most
dredged material originates from COE projects that
have been authorized by Congress. Box X briefly
describes the major Federal statutes that control the
disposal of dredged material.

Dredged material accounts for about 80 to 90
percent by volume of the waste material that is

1 COE, uses a series of screening tests, discussed below, to deter-
mine when dredged material requires special handling. Quantitative
national criteria that could be used to decide whether dredged mate-
rial is contaminated, however, are currently lacking.

‘Dredged material is usually measured by volume in cubic yards.
To facilitate comparisons, where possible, with the amounts of other
waste types, volumes of dredged material have been multiplied by the
density of such material, which is approximately 1.18 metric tons per
cubic yard, to give wet metric tons. The density of material from any
given site may vary somewhat from this figure, however, so the resul-
tant calculations should be considered estimates only.
benthic organisms that recolonize the deposits may take up and bioaccumulate some of these pollutants. Although few potentially harmful pollutants appear to be released directly into the water column, the pollutants can be transferred from benthic organisms to predator organisms. To date, no known human health impacts have been documented from the transfer of pollutants from dredged material up the food chain, although such impacts would be difficult to detect and generally have not been investigated.

Disposal of contaminated material generally involves expensive techniques designed to isolate the material from the environment. In some marine environments, it can be covered or 'capped' with a layer of uncontaminated sediment or special containment islands can be built. On land, it can be...
disposed of in specially managed upland containment areas. It is unlikely, however, that currently available disposal techniques will permanently isolate all pollutants.

No disposal option is categorically better than another, because operational, economic, environmental, and social factors vary greatly among dredging projects (496). As a result, the choice of disposal options usually requires site-specific and often subjective evaluations (169).

Finding suitable disposal sites is the overriding problem now facing COE and other sponsors of dredging projects. Although COE policy stresses the balanced consideration of all disposal options, Federal regulatory requirements are generally stricter for disposal in the open ocean than for disposal in freshwater and estuarine environments. Federal and State requirements tend to be least restrictive for upland disposal, and policies that have attempted to curb pollution in freshwater and marine environments have indirectly encouraged dredged material disposal in upland containment areas. However, disposal in upland areas is generally costly, and finding upland sites is becoming more difficult. Thus, future decisions regarding disposal of dredged material in the Nation's estuaries and coastal waters will be greatly affected by policies regarding disposal on land and in open ocean waters.

**DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL: AMOUNTS AND SITES**

**Inventory of Dredged Material Amounts**

Almost 60 percent—about 310 million wet metric tons—of all dredged material in the United States comes from estuarine and coastal areas. Of this material, an average of about 180 million wet metric tons is disposed of in marine environments: about two-thirds in estuaries, one-sixth in coastal waters, and one-sixth in the open ocean. Of the remaining material dredged from estuarine and coastal areas, most is disposed of in upland containment areas (above the water table, but near the dredging site), but some is disposed of in intertidal areas, open freshwater areas, or containment islands.

The amount of material disposed of in coastal and open ocean waters has fluctuated greatly during the last 25 years, between 35 and 120 million wet metric tons per year, with much of the fluctuation resulting from varying dredging demands on the lower Mississippi River (figure 35; the figure and the discussion in this paragraph do not include disposal activities in estuaries). If the volumes of dredged material from the lower Mississippi River are ignored, dredging volumes decreased from 1974 to 1981 and then began to increase in 1982.

Dredged material can be used in a variety of beneficial ways. About 15 to 20 percent of all dredged material is used for: beach nourishment; subaqueous mounds for shoreline protection; construction aggregate; fill material for commercial development or parks; cover material for sanitary landfills; construction material for dikes, levees, and roads; development of marshes and upland habitat; soil supplementation on agricultural land; and reclamation of strip mines (565).

**Disposal Sites**

**Sites in Coastal and Open Ocean Waters**

As of January 1987, about 126 disposal sites were located in coastal waters and the open ocean (D. Mathis, COE, pers. comm., January 1987). Most of these sites are distributed relatively evenly along the Atlantic, Gulf, and Pacific coasts, although a few are located in the Caribbean and the South Pacific (442). Although half of the sites receive some use each year, 95 percent of all coastal and open water disposal occurs at about two dozen sites. Some disposal sites are rarely used. Half of the sites have areas of 0.5 square miles or less; the remainder have areas of up to 4 square miles. About three-fourths are located in water less than 60 feet deep; only 18 are in water over 300 feet deep.
Figure 35.—Amounts of Dredged Material* Disposed of in Coastal Waters and the Open Ocean, 1974-84

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Amount excluding New Orleans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1976</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1977</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1979</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1981</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1982</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1983</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*From U.S. Army Corps of Engineers’ Projects.


Section 103 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) established a formal process for designating coastal and open ocean disposal sites. In 1977, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) published comprehensive criteria for the designation process and granted 3-year “interim” designations for previously used disposal sites (630). Preparation of an environmental impact statement (EIS) for each site and “final” designation were to be completed by January 1981, but this process encountered many delays (579).

As of November 1986, EPA had granted final designation to 19 sites (Office of Marine and Estuarine Protection, EPA, pers. comm., November 1986). Although COE does not formally designate sites, as of January 1986 it had “selected” about 15 additional sites that it considered suitable for final designation (D. Mathis, COE, pers. comm., January 1987). Most of these sites were selected for one-time use, for example, for the disposal of material from channel deepening projects in Mobile and Norfolk, with disposal of any subsequent maintenance material occurring at other, EPA-designated sites. Most of the remaining 90 or so coastal and open ocean sites are being used under extensions of EPA’s original interim designations.

No major dredging project has been canceled because a coastal or open ocean disposal site lacks final designation. However, a portion of the Tampa Harbor deepening was delayed, and the State of New York has prohibited the use of several undesignedated disposal sites in coastal waters. COE, port authorities, and the dredging industry are concerned that future projects could be canceled or delayed if interim disposal sites cannot be used, for example, because of litigation over delays in the designation process (442).

Sites in Estuarine Waters

Defining the number of disposal sites in estuaries is difficult because material often is discharged along much of a navigation channel, although at some distance from the channel itself. Thus, it is difficult to judge whether this constitutes one or multiple disposal sites. Section 404 of the Clean Water Act (CWA) controls this kind of disposal through a permitting process, but it does not include provisions for formally designating sites. Generally, a permit for disposal in an estuary specifies that a site will be used for a given length of time; in many cases, the permit is only for one disposal operation, although the site could be used again under another permit.

In addition, about 30 sites have received multiple-use permits under Section 404 (D. Mathis, COE, pers. comm., January 1987). These site— for example, Alcatraz Island in California and Puget Sound in Washington—tend to be controversial, and the permitting process often involves preparing an EIS, even if the site is not to be used on a continuing basis. Most dredged material disposal that occurs in estuaries, however, does not occur at these multiple-use sites.

Future Need for Marine Disposal

Dredged material disposal in marine waters could increase for several reasons. First, some projects
Ch. 10—Managing Dredged Material

After being excavated from a navigation channel, dredged material can be “sidecast” from the dredge and used to replenish beaches.

proposed for increasing commercial traffic would involve the development of harbors and deepening of channels. These projects would generate large amounts of material, and deeper channels, once created, generally would require increased maintenance dredging. Since most coastal ports have used marine waters heavily for disposal from similar projects in the past, such disposal is likely to continue; for example, about 90 percent of dredged material from COE’s New York District is disposed of at the Mud Dump site in the New York Bight. Second, some observers argue that the United States must develop additional capacity to handle large, deep-draft vessels if it is to maintain or increase its present role in the international economy. Because of the high costs of port construction and uncertainties about the total required capacity for deep-draft ships, however, only a limited number of such ports are likely to be built (388). Third, some ports may need to be deepened to accommodate an increasing number of naval vessels.

Although all major U.S. ports have made some plans for expansion and channel deepening, new federally authorized port projects have faced many delays over the last 10 to 15 years. The Water Resources Development Act passed by Congress in 1986, however, authorized many of these projects, including 6 deep-draft projects and 35 general cargo and shallow water improvements. It also established cost-sharing between the Federal Government and local sponsors or port authorities. If all the authorized projects are completed, the Federal share would be $3 billion and the local or port share would be $2 billion. New dredging projects will now proceed, and marine disposal of some material is likely. The cost-sharing arrangement, however, could inspire local sponsors to reduce the amount of requested dredging, with a subsequent decrease in the amount of material requiring disposal (P. Johnson, Office of Technology Assessment, pers. comm., November 1986).
DREDGED MATERIAL CHARACTERISTICS

Sediment Composition

Sediment is composed of varying amounts of several natural substances: sand, gravel, silt, and/or clay; organic matter and humus (i.e., decomposed organic matter); and chemical compounds such as sulfides and hydrous iron oxide. Sediments also can be contaminated with various metals and organic chemicals, from both point and nonpoint pollution sources.

Pollutants commonly found in dredged material include metals (e.g., cadmium, chromium, copper, iron, lead, mercury, nickel, silver), chlorinated hydrocarbons (e.g., PCBs, DDT), polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, and other petroleum products. Most pollutants are adsorbed or tightly bound to the organic material and the clay particles in dredged material, thereby reducing their potential availability to marine organisms that inhabit the water column, but not necessarily to benthic organisms that dwell on or in the sediment (46, 549).

No quantitative criteria exist for defining the degree to which dredged material is contaminated, so it is difficult to estimate exactly how much dredged material is clean, somewhat contaminated, or highly contaminated. COE considers a large portion of dredged material to be relatively clean. For example, as much as 20 percent of all sediment dredged by COE is "new work" material, which generally is not contaminated because it was deposited long before the settlement and industrialization of North America. Sand, which does not readily adsorb pollutants, and sediments located some distance from present or past pollution sources usually are relatively clean.

To determine when dredged material is contaminated enough to require special management, either in upland or island containment areas or by capping, COE generally relies on a series of screening tests. Based on these tests, COE considers about 3 percent (approximately 7 million wet metric tons) of all material dredged in its coastal districts to be highly contaminated and to require special management. In addition, participants at an OTA workshop estimated that about 30 percent of all maintenance material might be contaminated to some degree, even though it is not managed specially (584). These participants and other observers consider highly contaminated dredged material to be less contaminated than material disposed of in sanitary landfills (103) and than some hazardous material (299).

Most contaminated sediment is found in the immediate vicinity of ports and harbors, or in areas where direct municipal and industrial discharges into estuaries and coastal waters have contributed considerable amounts of pollutants. Riverborne days that are "trapped" in estuaries and navigation channels also may have been contaminated when they were transported through upstream regions. Dredging and disposal operations do not introduce new pollutants into aquatic environments; they simply redistribute sediments that are already contaminated.

Effects of Dredging Equipment on Composition

The physical characteristics of dredged material are significantly influenced by the type of dredging equipment used to excavate and transport the sediment. Two major types of dredges are used: hydraulic and mechanical.

4This figure is based on the survey of COE coastal districts; since quantitative nationwide criteria are lacking, responses about the degree of contamination were based on the best judgment of COE personnel and their experience with dredged material requiring special management.

5It is unclear whether the Resource Conservation and Recovery Acts toxic characteristic leachate procedure (TCLP) toxicity test, developed by EPA to evaluate the potential for leaching from land-based disposal sites, is legally applicable to dredged material. The previous test (the extraction procedure, or EP, toxicity test) specified that material should be tested in its field-collected form, which for dredged material would always be wet. According to COE, wet dredged material, even if highly contaminated, will generally pass the EP test (103, 269, 299). On the basis of the EP test, highly contaminated dredged material could be considered acceptable for upland disposal; subsequent oxidization of the material, however, could make it susceptible to leaching. In contrast, dried dredged material, even if not considered highly contaminated, might not pass the test.
Much of the dredging in the United States is conducted by ships known as hopper dredges, which hydraulically excavate material from a channel bottom and place it in "hoppers" within the hull. After the ship moves to a designated disposal site, the material is either dumped into the water or discharged through a pipeline to a beach or a diked containment area. This diagram of a hopper dredge shows some of the equipment used to excavate material from the bottom.

Most of the dredging in the United States is done with hydraulic dredges. Hydraulic dredges add significant amounts of water to the material, which enables the resulting slurry—about 80 to 90 percent water—to be pumped through a pipeline to a disposal site. Hydraulic dredges include both pipeline dredges and hopper dredges. Pipeline dredges discharge the material through a pipeline leading away from the dredge; they are rarely used in the open ocean because the pipeline can be broken by sizable waves. Hopper dredges are ships that hydraulically fill their hulls with dredged material slurry, cruise to the disposal site, and dump the dredged material through doors in the hull; they operate most effectively in the open ocean or in vessel traffic.

Mechanical dredges are used on small jobs (e.g., around piers). They have clamshells or buckets that remove sediment at its original, or "in situ," density without adding significant amounts of water. Mechanically dredged sediment is typically transported to a disposal site in barges (240).

**PHYSICAL FATE OF DREDGED MATERIAL AFTER DISPOSAL**

**Disposal in Marine Environments**

When a load of dredged material is dumped from a stationary hopper dredge in water depths of less than 200 feet, most of the material descends rapidly (a few feet per second) through the water column as a high-density mass. The remainder—about 1 to 5 percent of the released sediment—remains suspended in the water column as a plume of slowly settling particles. When the rapidly de-
scending mass reaches the bottom, the largest blocks of material remain in the impact area. Fine-grained material (as opposed to coarser, sandy material) spreads several hundred feet radially along the bottom and away from the impact point, in the form of a layer of “fluid mud” that can measure several feet in thickness (234).

In estuaries and coastal waters, the accumulation of dredged material on the bottom can be significant if dumping occurs over long periods or involves large volumes. Ever since the late 1800s, for example, dredged material has been dumped in the New York Bight within a few miles of the present Mud Dump site (located 6 miles east of New Jersey and 11 miles south of Long Island). More than 85 percent of the dredged material has remained at the disposal site, forming three well-defined hills that rise 30 to 50 feet above the bottom (125,171). Other material has accumulated northwest of these mounds, evidence of shoreward transport and/or dumping of dredged material short of the disposal site.

In the deep ocean, where water may be thousands of feet deep, the rapidly descending mass of material will entrain water as it descends and lose its integrity. After this occurs the material continues to settle slowly through the water column as a widely dispersed plume of suspended sediment. This material eventually is distributed widely over the bottom, usually without any significant buildup (93,234,439). If the total volume of material dumped at an open ocean site exceeds a few hundred thousand metric tons, however, the deposition may be sufficient to bury benthic organisms.

When slurry made of dredged material is disposed of in rivers, estuaries, and enclosed coastal areas via pipeline dredges, an estimated 97 to 99 percent of the slurry descends rapidly to the bottom of the disposal area. Once on the bottom, the slurry typically accumulates in the form of a low gradient mound of fluid mud. About 1 to 3 percent of the slurry remains suspended in the water column in the form of a turbidity plume. Turbidity plumes usually spread a few thousand feet from the discharge point and dissipate within several hours after the dredging is completed (500).

Once deposited, the long-term fate of dredged material depends on many factors, including bottom topography, the nature of the sediment, and erosion and transport by currents (234). Several models can be used to predict long-term transport of dredged material (235).

**IMPACTS OF DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL**

**Disposal in Marine Environments**

In marine environments, a number of adverse impacts can occur as dredged material descends through the water column or when it settles on the bottom. Impacts can occur in two areas: 1) on the water column and pelagic organisms, and 2) on bottom-dwelling organisms. No impacts on human health are known to have occurred from the transfer of pollutants in dredged material through the food chain; even if they were detected, however, it would be difficult to attribute them solely to dredged material disposal because other sources of pollutants are present in most areas.

**Impacts on the Water Column and Pelagic Organisms**

Levels of suspended solids in the water column during dredging and disposal operations are usually low enough to cause few, if any, detectable physical impacts on pelagic organisms (i.e., those in the water column) (232). If surrounding waters become too turbid, several control techniques can...
be used (14). Another approach is to schedule projects to avoid seasons, such as during spawning, when potential impacts to marine organisms are great (320).

As dredged material descends through the water column, some pollutants (e.g., hydrogen sulfide, manganese, iron, ammonia, and phosphorus) may be released and their concentration in the water column may increase. In dispersive waters these increases are usually diluted rapidly (62, 232, 708). In small estuaries and sheltered coastal waters, however, such releases may adversely affect organisms in the water column. It appears to be rare, however, for pelagic organisms to bioaccumulate metals and organic chemicals released from contaminated dredged material, although detecting such impacts and attributing them to a particular waste type is difficult.

Impacts on Bottom-Dwelling Organisms

**Physical Impacts.**—Most benthic organisms that are covered by more than a foot or so of dredged material will die from suffocation within minutes or hours after disposal (232, 708). Some burrowing organisms may be able to move vertically through the deposited material, especially if the dredged material is similar to the original bottom sediment. Bottom-dwelling fish typically leave a dumpsite during disposal operations, but they may return later if the habitat is not severely altered.

Physical impacts to bottom-dwelling organisms are generally restricted to the dumpsites. In large estuaries and coastal waters such as Chesapeake Bay or Puget Sound, disposal of uncontaminated material probably has an insignificant overall impact on the ecosystem. Physical impacts also are likely to be less significant (although possibly more widespread) at deeper sites because the material is more dispersed over the ocean bottom (440). In smaller estuaries or embayments, however, ecosystem impacts can be more significant. In general, disposal sites that are used once a year or more frequently will not fully recover as long as disposal continues. In addition, particularly sensitive benthic communities such as undersea grasses, coral reefs, and oyster beds may never recover.

In most areas that have been covered by uncontaminated dredged material, recolonization by benthic organisms begins within a period of weeks; extensive recolonization can take from several months to a few years after cessation of dumping activities (232, 708). If the dredged material is similar to the original sediment, recolonization will occur more rapidly and the new community will more closely resemble the original community. Otherwise, the new community may show changes in the types and distribution of species, or changes in the total biomass of organisms present.

Some disposal of uncontaminated dredged material has harmed fisheries and other marine resources. For example, a quahog fishery was totally lost when several million wet metric tons of dredged material were disposed of at the Brenton Reef disposal site near Narragansett in 1969 and 1970 (442). In another instance, a coral reef off southern Florida was smothered by a disposal operation (J. Wilson, COE, pers. comm., 1986). On the other hand, some sites adversely affected by dredged material disposal may later be colonized by other organisms and become important commercial and sport fishing sites. The Brenton Reef site, for instance, was colonized by lobsters and is now a favorite location for lobster fishermen (442).

Chemical Impacts.—In addition to physical impacts, some pollutants in dredged material may be released to the lower water column over a period of months or years because of: the expulsion of interstitial (or pore) water as the material consolidates on the bottom (125), the burrowing of organisms in the upper layers of sediment (124), or the resuspension of material during storms (709). Benthic organisms that recolonize the deposit area may take up and sometimes bioaccumulate some pollutants from the lower water column or the sediment itself (46, 232, 260). Pollutants of particular importance include methyl mercury, cadmium, and many chlorinated and polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (442).

Potential and actual adverse effects from pollutant uptake are discussed in chapters 5 and 6. In many situations, it is difficult to discern how bioaccumulation affects benthic organisms or the ecosystem in general (437), or where the pollutants came from. In the New York Bight, for example, dumped sewage sludge and dredged material are major contributors of many metals, suspended solids, phosphorus, and PCBs, but it is difficult to
ascertain how much is contributed by the dumping of dredged material alone (125). In addition, metals often tend to be tightly bound to the clays and organic matter in dredged material; in such cases, they are less likely to be released to the water column.

**Disposal in Intertidal Areas and Upland Containment Areas**

In intertidal areas, impacts depend largely on the characteristics of the disposal site. If a 3- to 6-inch layer of clean dredged material is placed over a marsh, most plants will regrow within several years. Once vegetated, these marshes are quickly colonized by various invertebrates (e.g., mussels, snails, and crabs) and birds. Thicker layers of dredged material will probably destroy the marsh grass and significantly change the elevation of the area so that marsh grass may not regrow (3 19). Some metals and organic chemicals can be taken up by plants, especially if the dredged material is exposed to oxidizing conditions during low tide (179,265,479). Once taken up by plants, pollutants can be transferred to wildlife or to estuarine organisms that feed on the plants or plant detritus (301).

Upland disposal in diked containment areas has been favored by many Federal and State regulatory agencies during the last decade because of concerns about potential impacts associated with marine and freshwater disposal (259). Several problems, however, can occur in upland situations. For instance, if ponded water on top of the settled material is drained, pollutants can escape in the drained effluent (15,289,43 1,449). In addition, the material remaining in the containment area often oxidizes, increasing the acidity of the material. Under these conditions, metals that were formerly bound to the dredged material (e.g., cadmium, lead, mercury, nickel) can be released in runoff from the containment area (179,300). Most organic chemicals tend to remain with the fine-grained dredged material in the containment area or volatilize into the atmosphere (R. Peddicord, COE, pers. comm., 1986). Upland containment areas have also been identified as sources of saltwater intrusion and other groundwater contamination (179,442; R.M. Engler, COE, pers. comm., 1986).

**PREDICTING ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS**

Predictions about project-specific impacts can only be made if there is adequate information about the proposed operation, the material that will be disposed of, and the disposal site environment. In some cases, predictions can be generalized for situations in which the sediments, dredging equipment, and disposal environments are similar.

**Predicting Physical Fate in Marine Environments**

The short-term physical fate of disposed dredged material is generally quite predictable and computer and empirical models are available for making more detailed assessments. Predicting long-term sediment transport, however, is usually more difficult (234). For example, the accuracy of long-term predictions is directly related to the availability of data on currents and other hydrographic conditions in a particular area (235). If this information is not available, detailed and costly predictions of long-term physical fate for single disposal operations may not be worthwhile, unless a large volume of material is involved. Using information from past disposal operations at similar sites is often a more effective way of predicting long-term transport.

**Predicting Chemical Impacts on Marine Organisms**

The COE uses a number of laboratory tests to evaluate the potential short-term toxicity of pollutants in dredged material to marine organisms:

- Bulk sediment composition analyses indicate the concentrations of pollutants that are present in the dredged material.
- Elutriate tests indicate the degree to which different pollutants might be released to the water column during disposal.
- Laboratory bioassays indicate the potential ‘acute’ toxicity (or lethality) of pollutants to organisms, over a period of 2 to 60 days (436).
Bioaccumulation tests indicate which pollutants might be taken up by marine organisms over the short-term (436).

These standard tests generally require several months to a year to complete; costs can range from $1,000 to $30,000 per sample (table 25). The number of samples required to evaluate a particular disposal operation depends on several factors, including size of the dredging project, sensitivity of the disposal environment, and similarity of the project to past projects that have been monitored for impacts.

Federal and State regulators have tried to use bulk sediment composition analyses as the primary (and sometimes only) method for determining whether a particular sediment is contaminated enough to require special management, in part because these analyses do not require expensive and time-consuming tests. In addition, the potential toxicity to marine organisms of a given sample of dredged material is usually lower than indicated by the tests, because metals and some organic chemicals tend to be tightly bound to clay particles and humus in the material and to be less available to the organisms (259). Because of this factor, COE has assumed that sediment passing these tests can be disposed of safely in any environment without concern about potential chemical effects; if the sediment fails these tests, it is considered contaminated enough to be unsafe for unrestricted disposal in marine environments.

The use of these types of tests to determine whether dredged material is contaminated enough to require special management has been criticized. For instance, bulk sediment composition analyses do not necessarily indicate the likelihood that pollutants will be released from the sediment to the water column or whether they will be taken up by marine organisms. Laboratory bioassays do not indicate which pollutants are responsible for any observed effects nor can they detect long-term, chronic effects, and bioaccumulation tests do not necessarily indicate whether further effects will occur (436,437).

In addition, the lack of standardized, quantitative "sediment quality criteria" is a major problem, especially for sediments that are neither extremely contaminated nor extremely clean (C. Zarba, U.S. EPA, pers. comm., November 1986; K. Kamlet, A.T. Kearney, Inc., pers. comm., November 1986). Regulatory agencies could use sediment quality criteria—designed to indicate when pollutant levels in dredged material are likely to cause impacts on marine organisms—to assess the degree of contamination of dredged material. EPA is considering developing quantitative sediment quality criteria for some metals and organic chemicals (C. Zarba, U.S. EPA, pers. comm., November 1986). Without such criteria, the results of any qualitative tests are subject to varying interpretation. Thus, tests such as the bulk sediment composition analyses are probably most useful as screening tools to identify clean sediments, but not to assess the degree of contamination of sediments.

### Predicting Impacts From Other Disposal Options

In upland containment areas, the consolidation of dredged material slurry can be predicted with reasonable accuracy, based on empirical observations and measurements (555). Chemical impacts, however, are more difficult to predict.

COE has developed several tests to predict the chemical impacts that might be associated with upland disposal. These tests show the quality of ponded water that might be discharged during the disposal operation, the quality of surface runoff from the disposal area, the potential for long-term leaching of pollutants into adjacent aquifers or surface waters, and the potential uptake of pollutants by plants and animals that might eventually inhabit the area. These tests also require several months to complete, but they are generally more expensive than tests for marine disposal (table 26). EPA has developed other tests under the Resource Con-

---

**Table 25.—Approximate Costs of Laboratory Tests for Predicting Chemical Impacts of Marine Disposal, Per Sample**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Cost Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulk sediment analyses</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elutriate test</td>
<td>$1,000 to $5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioassay</td>
<td>$1,000 to $5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioaccumulation tests</td>
<td>$15,000 to $30,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Source:** Office of Technology Assessment, 1987; based on W. E. Pequegnat, An Overview of the Scientific and Technical Aspects of Dredged Material Disposal in the Marine Environment, contract prepared for U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment (College Station, TX January 1986)
Table 26.—Approximate Costs of Laboratory Tests for Predicting Chemical Impacts of Upland Disposal, Per Sample

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test Type</th>
<th>Cost Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulk Sediment analyses</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality of ponded water tests</td>
<td>$7,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runoff quality tests</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leachate quality tests</td>
<td>$75,000 to $100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant/animal uptake tests</td>
<td>$30,000 to $40,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Leachate quality tests address the potential for contaminating groundwater.*


**DISPOSAL TECHNIQUES FOR CONTAMINATED DREDGED MATERIAL**

If dredged material is determined, by whatever method, to be highly contaminated, it generally requires special management during disposal to isolate it from the environment. These special techniques include disposal in:

1. water, under a layer or “cap” of uncontaminated sediment,
2. an upland containment area, or
3. a containment island.

These disposal options all require long-term maintenance to maximize the degree of sediment isolation. Even then, it is unlikely that all pollutants will be permanently isolated.

**Capping in Marine Environments**

In relatively quiescent marine (and freshwater) environments, contaminated dredged material can sometimes be isolated from aquatic organisms by covering it with a layer of uncontaminated material (47, 261, 363, 511). About 3 feet of cover material is usually required to minimize the possibility of organisms burrowing into the contaminated material. Capping does not change the nature of the material under the cap; it still remains contaminated.

Capping has several advantages, especially in relatively quiescent marine environments. First, caps appear to be stable and subject to little erosion in these environments; it is conceivable that additional capping material might not be needed for several decades. Second, as long as the cap is not disturbed the contaminated material remains in a relatively unoxidized state, thereby minimizing the upward migration of pollutants from the dredged material (47). Finally, costs for capping can be much lower than costs for disposal in upland containment areas or containment islands. The London Dumping Convention considers capping in quiescent marine environments to be an acceptable method, if subject to careful monitoring (136).

Capping also has several disadvantages, however. First, the water column may be exposed to some pollutants as the dredged material descends to the bottom, although releases to the water column tend to be small. Second, if water depth at the site increases beyond 100 feet, it becomes difficult to restrict lateral spreading when dredged material is placed on the bottom. Third, capping requires a large volume of clean cover material, leading to increased costs. This can be minimized if contaminated material from one project is covered with uncontaminated material from another.

When contaminated sediment is removed with a pipeline dredge, the slurry can be pumped through a “diffuser” mounted at the end of the pipeline (390). By reducing the velocity of the slurry as it leaves the pipeline, a diffuser system minimizes the exposure of the water column to the contaminated dredged material, allowing more precise placement of the material, and minimizes the lateral movement of the material along the bottom. First designed in the United States in the late 1970s, diffusers have been used to cap contaminated sediment in Rotterdam Harbor and recently were tested on contaminated dredged material from Calumet Harbor, Chicago, IL (R. Montgomery, pers. comm., 1986).
project. Fourth, once the dredged material is on the bottom, contaminated water may be released as the sediment consolidates prior to capping or after capping if the cap “sinks” into the contaminated sediment. Finally, storms or currents can erode the cap, thus requiring the expense of additional clean material.

Capping of contaminated material has been used over the last decade in the United States, Japan, Canada, and the Netherlands (442). In this country it has been used in water depths of 100 feet or less in Long Island Sound, the New York Bight, off the coast of Maine, the Duwamish Waterway near Seattle, and Alaska.

In some cases, natural or artificial subaqueous pits can be filled with contaminated dredged material and capped (37). Pits restrict the lateral spreading of the dredged material, and a cap that is level with the bottom is less susceptible to erosion than a mounded surface. Approximately 125 natural and artificial pits have been identified in rivers, estuaries, and coastal areas of the United States, many near ports and harbors (39).

**Upland Containment Areas**

Upland containment areas are used to physically, and presumably chemically, contain contaminated dredged material. As with capping, material disposed of in upland containment areas still remains contaminated.

The primary advantage of upland disposal is that it allows greater management and control than is possible in marine environments (259,317,431). For instance, the area could be lined with clay or synthetic materials to reduce the potential for groundwater contamination, water discharged from the site could be controlled and treated, lime could be applied to increase pH and minimize the leaching of metals, or the area could be covered with clean sediment to isolate the contaminated sediment from runoff. Such management techniques, however, can greatly increase the overall costs of disposal.

The major disadvantage of upland disposal is the potential for release of metals (e.g., cadmium, lead, mercury, nickel). Drying the dredged material to enhance its consolidation and increase the area’s capacity significantly increases the potential for mobilization and subsequent release of most metals to the environment. Oxidizing conditions, which are more common in upland than aquatic environments, increase the likelihood that metals will be taken up by plants and transferred to animals, released in runoff from the site, or leach into groundwater.

**Containment Islands**

Another option to dispose of contaminated sediment is to build containment “islands” in relatively protected areas close to a port. These islands consist of an outer perimeter that is gradually filled with contaminated dredged material over a period of a few decades. The primary advantage of containment islands over upland containment areas is that the contaminated material is maintained in a saturated and unoxidized chemical environment, thereby minimizing the potential for migration and release of pollutants. These islands can cause undesirable changes in water circulation or benthic communities or become navigational hazards, however, unless they are located away from navigation channels or biologically important resources.

Several containment islands have either been built or proposed. For example, Hart-Miller Island in the Chesapeake Bay was designed to accept contaminated dredged material from Baltimore Harbor for the next two decades. It has a capacity of 53 million cubic yards (about 63 million wet metric tons), covers approximately 1,100 acres of shallow bottom, and cost $59 million to build (442). The New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection has proposed that the New York and New Jersey Port Authority build a containment island in Raritan Bay. After a containment island has been filled and capped, the island can be developed commercially or used for recreation or wildlife habitat if continued isolation of the contaminated material can be ensured.
In some cases, dredged material is disposed of in diked containment islands that are built in relatively protected areas. The containment island shown here, located in North Carolina, is being filled with dredged material pumped through a pipeline from the dredge in the foreground.

**COSTS OF DISPOSAL OPERATIONS**

Dredging and disposal costs vary significantly from one project to another. In 1986, uncontaminated material averaged about $1.50 per cubic yard for disposal. For marine disposal, the costs of operations using pipeline dredges ranged from about $0.50 to $2.00 per cubic yard (table 27). Costs for ocean disposal using a hopper dredge or dumping barge are usually somewhat greater, reflecting the transport distance to the disposal sites. The use of upland containment areas is considerably more expensive than disposal in marine environments. Costs for disposing highly contaminated dredged material may be 2 to 10 times higher than ordinary disposal costs.

**Table 27.—Approximate Costs Per Cubic Yard for Dredged Material Disposal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disposal Method</th>
<th>Uncontaminated</th>
<th>Contaminated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marine environments?</td>
<td>$0.50 to $2</td>
<td>$3 to $5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upland containment</td>
<td>$5 to $20</td>
<td>$30 to $60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using pipeline dredge with disposal in adjacent waters</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

POLICY ISSUES

Dealing With the Shortage of Disposal Areas

Estuaries and coastal waters are among the most important aquatic environments, but many are severely stressed by pollutants from a variety of waste disposal activities and from runoff. Because of concerns about the immediate physical impacts and potential long-term chemical impacts of dredged material disposal in these waters, coastal States (e.g., California, Delaware, Maryland, North Carolina, Florida, and others) have increasingly restricted waste disposal during the last decade. For example, Maryland does not allow dredged material from Baltimore Harbor to be disposed of in its marine waters without special management, even though some of the material (that generated by any new work, as opposed to maintenance work) would not be contaminated (442).

Despite this trend, two-thirds of all marine dredged material disposal still takes place in estuaries. One reason for this is that most of the material is dredged from these waters. Another is that disposal in estuaries generally is less costly than disposal in upland areas or in waters more distant from shore. Third, according to COE, Federal regulatory policies have made it easier to obtain permits for disposal in estuaries than in coastal and open ocean waters. COE considers the testing requirements under CWA for disposal in estuaries and rivers (or for pipeline discharge of dredged material within the territorial sea) to be less stringent than MPRSA requirements for dumping in coastal and open ocean waters.8

Policies about disposal of wastes in estuaries and coastal waters are influenced by policies about disposal in open ocean waters and on land. If a policy to provide greater protection to estuaries and coastal waters is pursued, it may become difficult to decide where else to put dredged material. As discussed, disposal in the open ocean already appears to be regulated more stringently than in other marine environments. In addition, open ocean disposal usually increases transportation costs significantly and it may not be practical in most situations.

Although the regulatory requirements for upland disposal are less comprehensive (and probably less stringent) than requirements for disposal in aquatic environments, finding new upland containment areas can be difficult and costly. Disposal in upland containment areas is controlled indirectly through Section 404 of CWA and State coastal zone management programs, and some States have imposed standards on the effluent discharged from upland containment areas. Upland disposal may also be subject to State or local land-use requirements. Finally, a shortage of upland containment areas is developing as available areas reach their designed capacity and as concerns about the effects of upland disposal increase.

At the same time, it is not clear that dredged material disposal should be prohibited totally in estuaries and coastal waters. Disposal in some instances causes only short-term and reversible impacts, especially when the volume of material is small, dumping does not occur frequently or continuously, and the dredged material is not a significant source of pollutants. In addition, COE contends that dredged material should receive less stringent regulatory treatment than other wastes because comparable concentrations of pollutants in dredged material may be less available to organisms than the same pollutants in other wastes. COE also notes that dredged material that is disposed of in estuaries usually is not “added” to estuaries, but simply moved from one location to another.

In general, finding a disposal site for dredged material in any environment is becoming increasingly difficult, partly because of public attitudes. Sometimes public attitudes reflect real uncertainties about the impacts of dredged material disposal. For example, it is true that the long-term impacts of disposal in marine waters and on land are not well understood. Similarly, the relative importance of different sources of pollutants are also uncertain and in some cases may never be resolved. (For instance,

---

8It is unclear whether the decrease in material disposed of in coastal and open ocean waters that occurred prior to 1982 (other than in the Mississippi River area) reflects differences in regulatory requirements or simply normal fluctuations in dredging operations. Similarly, it is unclear whether the increase beginning in 1982 reflects an easing of the requirements for ocean disposal permits, perhaps in response to the Federal District Court decision that overturned a ban on the disposal of sewage sludge in the ocean (ch. 7).
despite millions of dollars of research, the importance of dredged material relative to other pollut-
ant sources in the New York Bight is still unclear. ) Public attitudes, however, also can reflect a lack of awareness of the facts. For example, many people think that dredged material from the Mud Dump site in the New York Bight adversely affected New Jersey beaches (441); sediment transport studies, however, show that less than 0.1 percent of the sediment near these beaches is derived from dredged material disposed of at the site (709).

Siting decisions can also be affected by questions about the credibility of COE statements regarding the impacts of dredged material disposal. These questions arise in part because COE both regulates dredging activities and conducts many of them, and because it traditionally has been managed as a development agency. In addition, it does not need Section 404 or Section 103 permits to conduct its own federally authorized dredging projects, although it must comply with all applicable Federal laws and regulations and obtain appropriate State permits. COE also has sponsored most of the technical research on the impacts of marine and land-based disposal, having spent over $100 million since the early 1970s. To avoid bias, however, much of the research has been conducted and/or reviewed by non-COE groups. Recent State-supported research has tended to support the findings of Cosponsored research.

Since disposal sites are becoming increasingly difficult to develop and use, one management approach is to minimize the amount of required dredging, and thus the impacts generated, by developing long-term management plans for dredged material disposal. Revised regulations proposed by COE (for 33 CFR Part 337.9) recognize the value of such plans and suggest their use (51 FR 104: 19693-19706, May 30, 1986). In addition, since most marine disposal consists of material dredged from ports and harbors, it makes sense to link dredging plans with broader management plans for surrounding estuaries and coastal waters. Several examples of such planning efforts exist. The Grays Harbor (Washington) Estuary Management Plan provides a blueprint for the port future dredging and development (441). In the Chesapeake Bay, EPA is conducting a $27 million study of water quality and resources, including all different causes of degradation, and as a part of this effort COE’s Baltimore District is studying the effects of dredging on the Bay (441). Finally, the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority was formed by the State of Washington to provide a broad framework for cleaning up Puget Sound, and as part of this initiative COE’S Seattle District is developing a management plan for dredged material disposal (441).

Long-term management plans for dredged material disposal have several advantages. First, they can be used to guide future decisions about port development while protecting the long-term productivity of an estuary. Such plans can consider the physical, biological, aesthetic, social, and economic resources associated with each proposed project, as well as interrelationships among proposed projects (61,273,496). Second, management plans can provide consistency and predictability for regulators, developers, environmentalists, and all State and Federal agencies. To ensure broad consensus, the planning process can involve all relevant State and Federal agencies, as well as local special interest groups with broad public representation. Finally, long-term plans could help streamline the regulatory review process, thereby reducing the time required to approve future projects and allowing more efficient scheduling of dredging and disposal operations.

Long-term planning efforts, however, are not without potential drawbacks. First, they are initially time-consuming and expensive. Second, unless these plans are incorporated into long-term compliance documents or permits, they may be subject to shifting agency policies. Finally, planning can be difficult because the long-term need for disposal sites is often hard to predict, given uncertainties about future port development.

In addition to developing long-term management plans where feasible, it will be important to conduct more peer-reviewed research about long-term impacts. Both laboratory and long-term field studies need to continue addressing several areas, including: how to assess sediment contamination; the long-term effects of bioaccumulation on individual organisms and community structure; the quality of effluent water discharged from upland containment areas; and procedures to minimize adverse impacts from the dredging and disposal of contami-
nated sediment in different environments (296). To increase the usefulness of research results to Federal and State decisionmakers, COE and EPA could jointly summarize and periodically update the state-of-knowledge on dredging and disposal operations. Short, readable publications would also help to explain to the public the necessity for, and the impacts associated with, dredging and disposal operations (e.g., see ref. 563).

Providing Balanced Consideration of All Disposal Options

As discussed in chapter 1, specific decisions or general policies about the disposal of any material should be based on a comprehensive evaluation of all available options. Evaluations are becoming more important, especially for large dredging projects or ones that involve contaminated material, as disposal sites become scarcer. One example of this type of evaluation is the Dredged Material Disposal Management Plan, prepared by the Port of New York and New Jersey. The plan compares eight disposal alternatives that might be used when the Mud Dump site in the New York Bight is filled to capacity in 15 to 20 years (562).

Regulations proposed by COE in May 1986 would provide general guidelines to ensure that all dredging and disposal alternatives are compared comprehensively by all COE districts. Such comparisons might indicate, for example, that dredged material disposal in the open ocean is more favorable in a specific situation than disposal in estuaries, coastal waters, or on land, even though regulatory requirements appear to be more stringent for the open ocean.

COE has developed a technical framework, with laboratory testing procedures, for evaluating the potential impacts of different disposal options (169). This framework is being tested on contaminated sediment from Commencement Bay, Washington (438). A comprehensive implementation manual describing the different laboratory procedures, however, does not yet exist. This kind of manual, which would need periodic updating to incorporate newly developed techniques, could provide guidance so planners could routinely evaluate the potential impacts of waste disposal. However, it also could impose detailed and costly analyses all disposal operations, regardless of their size or characteristics. The development of national sediment quality criteria also would aid the evaluation of potential impacts.
Chapter 11
Managing Industrial Wastes
“Dumped in Marine Waters
Chapter 11
Managing Industrial Wastes Dumped in Marine Waters

INTRODUCTION

Marine disposal of industrial waste involves two primary modes of delivering wastes to marine waters. Dumping typically involves the use of barges to deliver industrial sludges and slurries directly to surface waters at designated marine dumping sites. In general, dumping of such wastes is not as significant in causing environmental impacts as are the far greater quantities of industrial waste directly discharged through pipelines or outfalls into marine waters within a short distance of the coastline (ch. 8).

Marine dumping of industrial wastes has been greatly reduced in the United States in the last decade, with respect to both number of permittees and quantities of waste. Prior to 1973, over 300 firms used marine waters for dumping; by 1979 the number had fallen to 13 (6), and currently only 3 firms are dumping wastes in marine waters (139). The quantity of dumped industrial wastes has steadily declined from 4.6 million metric tons in 1973 to about 200,000 metric tons in 1985 (figure 36).

Numerous sites have been used by the United States for marine dumping of industrial wastes, but only three have received significant amounts since 1977. These sites, which are administered by EPA Region II, are: 1) the New York Bight Acid Waste Disposal Site, 2) Deepwater Industrial Waste Disposal Site, and 3) the Pharmaceutical Waste Site off Puerto Rico. Only the first two are in current use (see figure 3 in ch. 3), receiving waste from three firms (1 39). Use of the Puerto Rico site was discontinued in 1981 (594).

Industrial waste disposal planning involves considerable capital investment, and the decreasing availability of marine waters as a viable disposal option caused many firms to make long-term investments in land-based disposal or treatment options ( 140). However, some previously attractive land-based options are now subject to much stricter regulation and this may increase pressure to consider marine dumping. Indeed, for particular waste types in some regions of the country and for new generators, the marine option may be very attractive. It is difficult to predict the extent of future pressures to use marine environments for dumping or to gauge what effect a change in regulations might have on marine dumping.

This chapter discusses the marine dumping of drilling fluids, acid and alkaline wastes, pharmaceutical wastes, fish processing wastes, and coal ash and flue gas desulfurization (FGD) sludges. For each waste type considered, the following topics are covered wherever data are available: waste composition; quantities generated and marine-disposed;
management and disposal practices currently used; the fate, availability, and impacts of waste constituents or contaminants; and the current regulatory framework. Table 28 provides a summary of current management practices for the various wastes considered in this chapter. Table 29 summarizes the regulatory framework governing their marine disposal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Waste type</th>
<th>Drilling fluids</th>
<th>Acid/alkaline</th>
<th>Pharmaceuticals</th>
<th>Fish processing</th>
<th>Coal ash/sludge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marine pipeline</td>
<td>1*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine dumping</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land disposal</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land application</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical, chemical, or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biological treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incineration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recycling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aNumbers indicate relative prevalence of use of an option; x indicates an option used to a lesser extent than the numbered options, but to an unknown extent relative to the other options.

*bLand disposal includes landfilling, surface impoundment, and deep-well injection.

SOURCE: Office of Technology Assessment, 1987

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Waste type</th>
<th>Statute</th>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>Program or regulations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drilling muds</td>
<td>CWA</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>NPDES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWA</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>New Source Performance Standards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outer Continental Shelf (OCS)</td>
<td>MMS</td>
<td>Ocs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lands Act</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acid/alkaline</td>
<td>MPRSA</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>Ocean dumping regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmaceutical</td>
<td>MPRSA (dumping)</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>Ocean dumping regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWA (pipeline)</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>NPDES</td>
<td>Pretreatment regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWA (sewer)</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish processing</td>
<td>MPRSA</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>Ocean dumping regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal ash/FGD sludge</td>
<td>MPRSA</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>Ocean dumping regulations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY: CWA = Clean Water Act
MPRSA = Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act
MMS = Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior
NPDES = National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
FGD = flue gas desulfurization

SOURCE: Office of Technology Assessment, 1987

**DRILLING FLUIDS**

**Composition**

The discharge of spent drilling fluids accompanies the exploration and development phases, but not the production phase, of offshore oil and gas activities. Hundreds of compounds are used in drilling fluids formulations, depending on the particular needs of each well. However, four materials account for over 90 percent of the mass of essentially all drilling fluids: barium sulfate (or barite), clays, lignosulfates, and lignites (50 FR 34592, Aug. 26, 1985).

Drilling fluids can be water- or oil-based. Water-based fluids are more commonly used for offshore operations, for both regulatory and technical reasons. EPA's chemical analysis of 8 generic water-based fluids detected no priority pollutant organic chemicals, but 10 priority pollutant metals were detected. In particular, mercury and cadmium were found in all formulations tested (50 FR 34592, Aug. 26, 1985; ref. 384).
Quantities of Waste Generated and Marine-Disposed

About 2 million dry metric tons of drilling fluid components are used annually in offshore drilling activities and discharged directly into marine waters. About 3,900 offshore platforms currently produce oil and gas, accounting for roughly 20 percent of all domestic production (50 FR 34592, Aug. 26, 1985). Almost all (98 percent) such operations are located in the Gulf of Mexico, and over 90 percent of drilling fluid discharges occur there (384); however, increasing exploration in the waters of southern California and Alaska (the only other major sites for drilling fluid discharges) is expected to alter this distribution. EPA estimates that about 800 new platforms will be built between 1986 and 2000, a rate greatly reduced from that between 1972 to 1982, when an average of 1,100 new wells were drilled each year.

Management and Disposal Practices

Under existing regulations, used oil-based drilling fluids (or water-based fluids significantly contaminated with oil) are prohibited from marine discharge. Such fluids must be transported to land for disposal in a facility permitted under the Resource Recovery and Conservation Act or for reconditioning and reuse (40 CFR 435, Subpart A). In contrast, used water-based drilling fluids typically are dumped overboard or discharged from a pipe; both of these practices require a National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit. Most coastal EPA Regions have prohibited direct offshore discharge near certain drilling sites because of ecological sensitivity at the sites (482). In addition, some State laws require land disposal for spent fluids generated in coastal waters (384). Using barges to transport used drilling fluids to shore or to distant ocean sites can be expensive and logistically difficult.

Fate, Availability, and Impact of Waste Constituents

In most areas on the continental shelf, the majority of particles present in drilling fluids and cuttings settle rapidly to the seabed, generally within 1,000 meters of the point of discharge (384). Further dispersion may occur because of bottom currents or tidal action. A plume of particles, however, remains in suspension and is subject to relatively more rapid dispersion and dilution.

The main environmental concerns related to marine disposal of drilling fluids include potential toxicity of various chemical additives or trace metals, increased turbidity in the water column, physical burial of benthic organisms or alteration of physical substrates available to these organisms, and possible long-term accumulation of metals in sediments and marine organisms. The primary acute effects appear to be physical and limited to the benthic environment.

Evidence indicates that most water-based drilling fluids are relatively nontoxic to marine organisms at the concentrations that are achieved shortly after discharge (384). For those fluids exhibiting significant toxicity, it appears to be primarily attributable to the presence of diesel fuel, which can comprise as much as 2 to 4 percent of the total volume.

While most research has focused on acute effects, the concentrations of potentially toxic constituents present at most sites are in a range that is more likely to induce chronic or sublethal effects. Data are limited on such impacts, however, so considerable uncertainty remains regarding the long-term environmental impacts associated with marine disposal of drilling fluids.

Regulatory Framework

The principal authority to regulate marine disposal of drilling discharges lies with EPA, through the NPDES program of the Clean Water Act (Section 402). Such discharges are subject to the ‘best practicable control technology’ (BPT) and ‘best available technology’ (BAT) limitations of the Clean Water Act (ch. 7). Offshore oil and gas operations do not receive individual NPDES permits and instead are covered by a general NPDES permit (ch. 8), unless a facility requests its own permit. Prior to issuance of an individual NPDES permit, EPA must determine that the discharges will not unreasonably degrade the marine environment, in compliance with the Ocean Discharge Criteria of the Clean Water Act (40 CFR 125, Subpart M).
Using this regulatory authority, EPA has imposed a variety of permit conditions, including: limits on the amount of toxic substances or total hydrocarbons in drilling fluids, requirements to conduct toxicity testing of drilling fluid formulations prior to use, seasonal or zonal restrictions on discharges, and special monitoring and reporting requirements (482).

EPA recently proposed BAT effluent limitation guidelines and new source performance standards for offshore oil and gas facilities (50 FR 34592, Aug. 26, 1985). In addition to maintaining the prohibitions against the discharge of oil-based drilling fluids and water-based fluids containing oil, EPA proposed two further controls: a limit on the acute toxicity of drilling fluid discharges and a limit on the discharge of cadmium and mercury to a maximum of 1 part per million (ppm).

A recently renewed general permit covering drilling operations in the Gulf of Mexico (51 FR 24897, July 9, 1986) incorporates the proposed BAT limits, but not the proposed limit for mercury and cadmium. General permits incorporating the BAT limits on these two metals have been issued for Alaska (51 FR 35460, Oct. 3, 1986) and proposed for southern California (50 FR 34036, Aug. 22, 1985).

The Minerals Management Service of the Department of the Interior regulates drilling discharges through lease stipulations and Outer Continental Shelf operating orders, some of which prohibit the use of certain additives. In addition, individual States may impose further requirements on drilling discharges for operations taking place in their territorial waters.

While drilling fluids are not classified as hazardous, their disposal on land is regulated under the solid waste provisions of RCRA.

### ACID AND ALKALINE WASTES

#### Quantities of Waste Generated

Most liquid acid and alkaline wastes are classified generically as corrosive wastes, a RCRA category that also includes sludges and solids. Corrosive wastes comprise almost half of the total hazardous waste generated in the United States (140,690), but it is not known what fraction of these are relatively uncontaminated acids and alkalis with potential for marine disposal.

#### Management and Disposal Practices

Most corrosive wastes are disposed or treated on-site, using methods such as deep-well injection and neutralization. Only 1 to 2 percent of corrosive wastes are disposed off-site (140), including the acid and alkaline wastes that are currently dumped in marine waters. When disposed of in marine waters, these wastes are barged to the disposal site and then dumped in bulk at a permitted rate into the wake of the vessel.

#### Composition and Quantities of Waste Disposed of in Marine Waters

Acid and alkaline wastes from three industrial firms are presently dumped in marine waters (table 30). Under current permit schedules, about 200,000 metric tons from Allied Chemical, DuPont-Edge Moor, and DuPont-Grasselli will continue to be dumped annually after 1986 (139).

Quantities of waste dumped at the New York Bight Acid Waste Site by Allied Chemical have decreased from a high of 60,000 metric tons in 1973 to the current level of about 40,000 metric tons annually; no change is anticipated in the amount of waste to be dumped during the next several years (L. Mattioli, Allied Chemical, pers. comm., Dec. 1986). The current permit expires September 30, 1988; application for renewal of the permit is due

---

Unless otherwise noted the following discussion is based on material from references 139 and 140.
Table 30.—Origin and Quantities of Acid and Alkaline Wastes Currently Dumped in Marine Waters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Type of waste/process</th>
<th>Composition</th>
<th>Dumpsite</th>
<th>Annual quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allied Chemical</td>
<td>Hydrochloric acid from fluorocarbon refrigerants and polymer manufacturing</td>
<td>About 300/0 HCl 1 to 2.5/0 fluoride Suspended solids and total organic carbon in 10s ppm range Petroleum hydrocarbons in 1-10 ppm range Chromium, nickel, zinc in &lt;0.1 to 3 ppm range Arsenic, cadmium, copper, lead, mercury in &lt;0.01 to 1 ppm range pH &lt;1.0</td>
<td>New York Bight Acid Waste Site</td>
<td>30,000 mt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Du Pent-Edge Moor</td>
<td>Iron and other acidic metal chlorides from titanium dioxide production</td>
<td>Chromium in 100s ppm range Zinc and lead in 10s ppm range Copper and nickel in 1-10 ppm range Cadmium in 0.001 ppm range pH 0.1 to 1.0</td>
<td>Deepwater Industrial Waste Site</td>
<td>50,000 mt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Du Pent-Grasselli</td>
<td>Sodium sulfate from agricultural chemical production</td>
<td>10/0 sodium sulfate Low molecular weight organics in 10s-1000s ppm range Chromium, copper, nickel, lead in 0.01 to 0.1 ppm range Cadmium in 0.001 ppm range pH 10 to 12.5</td>
<td>Deepwater Industrial Waste Site</td>
<td>110,000 mt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aBased on present permit limits.  
bThe fluorocarbon polymer/manufacturing facility was recently sold to Ausimont U.S. Inc. (L. Mattioli, Allied Chemical, personal communication, December 1986).  

by April 3, 1988. The only alternative to marine disposal currently being used is to sell the waste for use as hydrochloric acid; about 10 percent of the waste was sold in 1984 and about 6 percent was sold in 1985 (L. Mattioli, Allied Chemical, pers. comm., Dec. 1986).

DuPont-Edge Moor has dumped acid wastes at the Deepwater Industrial Waste Site since 1968. Since 1973, its permits have contained provisions for the cessation of ocean dumping and the development of feasible alternatives. By 1984, such changes had reduced ocean dumping by 70 percent, to less than 115,000 wet metric tons. The current permit expires June 30, 1987, but it can be renewed provided that, despite good-faith efforts, DuPont-Edge Moor has been unable to develop sufficient land-based alternatives to completely replace marine disposal; an application for a new 3-year permit is being submitted on this basis (R. Schwer, E.I. du Pent de Nemours & Co., pers. comm., Nov., 1986).

DuPont-Grasselli has dumped alkaline wastes from 1968 to 1973 at the New York Bight Acid Waste Site and from 1968 to the present at the Deepwater Industrial Waste Site. Between 1973 and 1983, amounts dumped ranged from 118,000 to 290,000 wet metric tons per year. The last permit, valid through the end of 1986, required the development of alternative treatment methods, but contained no deadline for halting dumping.

**Fate, Availability, and Impact of Waste Constituents**

The rationale for allowing marine disposal of acid and alkaline wastes is that they rapidly (within 1 to 4 hours) neutralize after coming into contact with seawater, which has a high natural buffering capacity (157). In addition, discharge into the turbulent wake of the vessel provides rapid mixing and a several thousand-fold dilution. Acute impacts due to transient changes in acidity may occur prior to
neutralization. Such effects, however, would generally be limited to the immediate vicinity of the discharge, and past monitoring has not detected any observable effects on marine life (83, 157). Trace pollutants, primarily toxic metals, may pose longer term risks, although such pollutants are generally rapidly and extensively diluted under typical disposal conditions. Some metals (primarily iron and magnesium) precipitate upon entering marine waters and can remain in suspension for several days or more.

**Regulatory Framework**

Most acid and alkaline wastes are generically classified under RCRA as hazardous due to their corrosivity. However, wastewater treatment sludges from the DuPont-Edge Moor facility, which are usually disposed of by landfilling or ocean dumping, have been delisted and excluded from regulation as a hazardous waste (45 FR 72037, Oct. 30, 1980), and wastewater from the DuPont-Grasselli facility is not considered hazardous because it does not exceed the upper pH limit specified for corrosivity by RCRA (R. Schwer, E.I. du Pent de Nemours & Co., pers. comm., Nov. 1986). In all cases, however, dumping of acid and alkaline wastes in marine waters is allowed only after a case-by-case determination of compliance with the Ocean Dumping Criteria of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA). Permits issued by EPA under authority of MPRSA do not contain requirements for specific treatment of acid and alkaline wastes that are to be dumped; rather they require that dilution to background levels be achieved in a specified length of time.

**PHARMACEUTICAL WASTES**

**Composition**

Pharmaceutical wastes originate from the biological production of antibiotics and the chemical production of pharmaceuticals. They are typically aqueous suspensions near neutral pH; have densities similar to seawater; and contain about 1 percent suspended solids, 2 percent organic carbon, and very low (<1 ppm) levels of metals or high molecular weight organochlorines (relative to other industrial wastes). However, they can contain high concentrations (10 to 100 ppm) of any of several common industrial solvents (139,594).

**Management and Disposal Practices**

Most U.S. pharmaceutical companies responded to EPA regulations by investing in land-based disposal, including onsite incineration and secondary wastewater treatment (e.g., anaerobic digestion, activated sludge treatment). Marine dumping generally is only attractive to those pharmaceutical companies not yet having secondary treatment (138).

**Quantities of Waste Marine-Disposed**

Seven pharmaceutical companies in Puerto Rico dumped pharmaceutical wastes at the designated Pharmaceutical Waste Site (74 km north of Puerto Rico) from at least 1973 until 1981. The amounts dumped increased from 38,000 wet metric tons in 1973 to over 300,000 metric tons in the late 1970s and early 1980s (594).

Because of lower disposal costs and EPA mandates, these wastes are now discharged into a secondary sewage treatment plant completed at Barcelona in 1981 (Black and Veatch, cited in ref. 594). Almost half of the wastewater entering the plant is pharmaceutical wastes. Effluent from the plant is not disinfected and is discharged through a pipeline 800 meters offshore, in waters less than 30 meters deep (208). The volume of pharmaceutical wastes entering the plant is about fourfold higher than that previously marine dumped, but is about tenfold less concentrated in suspended solids, organic carbon, and nitrogen (594).

**Fate, Availability, and Impact of Waste Constituents**

The dispersive high-energy conditions at the Puerto Rico dumpsite diluted dumped wastes by a factor of up to 100,000-fold soon after dumping and by a factor of about 10,000,000-fold over a long-term period (594). However, one clearly demonstrated change at the dumpsite was the almost complete replacement, within 7 years after disposal
began, of resident bacteria with other bacterial species (including several human pathogens—e.g., Salmonella and Vibrio) (207). Some experts attribute the change to a selection for the other species able to degrade particular pharmaceutical waste components, but this conclusion has been questioned (594). Shifts also occurred in the composition and size of the phytoplankton community in the vicinity of the dumpsite (594).

Other potentially more serious impacts have been attributed to the discharge of pharmaceutical wastes into the Barceloneta secondary treatment plant. These include frequent disruption of the treatment process, reduced removal of bacterial pathogens prior to effluent discharge, and significantly elevated levels of fecal bacteria (including human pathogens) in coastal waters (208). Because discharge now occurs close to shore in shallow waters, concerns have been raised that human health impacts under the current disposal system may be greater than those associated with the previous ocean dumping of untreated pharmaceutical waste. In particular, currents and wave action in the area of discharge have been demonstrated to carry waste constituents back to shore (208, 594).

**Regulatory Framework**

Dumping of pharmaceutical wastes at the Puerto Rico dumpsite was regulated under the Ocean Dumping Criteria of MPRSA. The present discharge of effluent from the Barceloneta treatment plant is regulated under an NPDES permit.

**FISH PROCESSING WASTES**

**Composition and Quantities of Waste Generated**

These wastes arise from the processing of seafood for a variety of products. The large tuna and fishmeal industries engage in year-round operations; most other food waste generators are small, seasonal, specialized facilities. Prior to treatment, these wastes are composed entirely of organic matter and "conventional" pollutants: oil, grease, and solids (139). In 1980, 1.4 to 2.0 million metric tons of seafood processing material was produced, an increase of 35 to 41 percent since 1970 (138).

**Management and Disposal Practices**

Most seafood processing material is converted to marketable meal and fertilizer or is recycled (140). The remaining waste can be treated prior to NPDES-permitted discharge, or directly disposed of by landfi lling, land application, or marine dumping. Data on the relative use of these options are not available.

Primary treatment using dissolved air flotation (DAF) systems is typically employed by large processing facilities (140). These systems use coagulant to remove solids from wastewater, thereby generating DAF sludges which are not exempt from ocean dumping regulations. The small quantity of DAF sludge currently generated is disposed of in landfills.

EPA is considering requiring DAF systems for virtually all seafood processing waste generators. If applied throughout the industry, about 2000 metric tons of DAF sludge would be produced annually (140).

**Quantities of Waste Marine-Disposed**

The only site designated for dumping of fish processing wastes is in the Pacific Ocean near American Samoa (45 FR 77435, Nov. 24, 1980; ref. 86). This interim site, which is administered by EPA Region IX, was approved for up to 118,000 wet metric tons per year and for a period of 3 years, pending completion of further studies. Actual quantities of waste dumped at the site were 17,000 wet metric tons in 1982 and 19,500 wet metric tons in 1983 (648).

Region IX expects an increase in requests to dump seafood processing wastes in marine waters, primarily DAF treatment sludge from tuna canneries (140). EPA has proposed to designate a dump-
site in the Southern California Bight for cannery wastes generated by Star-Kist Foods, Inc. (102).

Fate, Availability, and Impact of Waste Constituents

Disposal of these wastes in poorly mixed or relatively enclosed coastal marine environments could cause nutrient overloading. Proper disposal in well-mixed ocean environments appears to be essentially nonhazardous, although some concerns have been raised over potential impacts of the chemical coagulants introduced during DAF treatment (140).

COAL ASH AND FLUE GAS DESULFURIZATION SLUDGES

Composition

Coal ash is the incombustible, inorganic, or mineral fraction of coal remaining after its combustion in industrial and public-owned boilers. It includes fly ash captured by stack scrubbers and bottom ash/slag that is left behind in the boiler. FGD sludges are produced when sulfur-containing flue gases react with air pollution control scrubber reagents (usually calcium carbonate or limestone).

The chemical composition of coal ash varies considerably with the type of coal from which it is derived (288). Primary constituents include the salts and oxides of silicon, aluminum, iron, calcium, magnesium, sodium, potassium, titanium, and sulfur. Other significant trace (<1 percent) constituents include barium, strontium, manganese, and boron. Coal ash leachate has a pH between 6 to 11.5. The composition and quantity of FGD sludge depends on the type of air pollution controls that are employed. It typically contains 5 to 15 percent solids initially and 30 to 80 percent solids after dewatering, and has a pH of 3 to 13 (139,141). Primary components are calcium sulfites, sulfates, and carbonate; major trace elements include barium, boron, copper, fluorine, manganese, molybdenum, nickel, and zinc (288).

Currently, coal ash and FGD sludge from electric utilities are characterized as nonhazardous under RCRA (40 CFR 261.4(b)(4)). However, EPA has proposed new procedures for testing the toxicity of leachates from wastes, which could lead to the classification of some utility wastes as hazardous. The original exemption of such wastes from regulation as hazardous wastes was intended to allow EPA to complete environmental impact studies and determine a course of action (141).

Quantities of Waste Generated

Estimates of the amount of coal ash and FGD sludge generated annually in the United States vary considerably, but they are clearly very high-volume wastes that will continue to increase in quantity at least through the end of this century (table 31). Coal-burning utilities are estimated to produce about 95 percent of total utility ash; the remainder arises from burning of other fossil fuels. Rapid increases in the generation of these wastes are occurring, due to wider application and greater efficiency of sulfur dioxide removal technology, as well as increased coal consumption.

The East Coast States, from Pennsylvania south, and the Gulf States of Florida, Alabama, and Louisiana, are the major sources of utility coal ash and FGD sludge. These States are also expected to exhibit the largest increase in waste generation through 2000 (141; Tobin, 1982, cited in ref. 140).

Management and Disposal Practices

Most utility coal waste is presently disposed of onsite, in unlined landfills and impoundments (table 31); however, the use of unlined impoundments is declining because of concerns about ground-

5 Nonutility industries generate much larger quantities of air pollution control dusts and sludges (257). Many of these are listed as hazardous under RCRA, however, and have not been discussed as candidates for dumping. Nonutility boilers generate an additional 8 million metric tons of coal wastes (257), similar in composition to that generated by utilities.

6 Fly ash and FGD sludge together constitute 5 to 15 percent of the mass of coal from which they are generated. A typical, 1000-megawatt plant will consume 2.4 million metric tons of coal annually, and generate about 650,000 metric tons of ash and sludge (131).

7 This discussion is limited to practices used for utility coal waste. Data on the disposition of coal wastes from nonutility industrial boilers are scant (257).
Table 31.—Quantities and Current Management of Utility Coal Ash and FGD Sludge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Coal ash</th>
<th>FGD sludge</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Annual quantities:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
<td>85 mmt</td>
<td>18 mmt</td>
<td>USWAG, 1982; EG&amp;G, 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>155 mmt</td>
<td>52 mmt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current management practices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent disposed onsite</td>
<td>75%/0</td>
<td>82%/0</td>
<td>JRB, 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent disposed off site</td>
<td>16%/0</td>
<td>18%/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent sold</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent in landfills</td>
<td>40%/0</td>
<td>300%/0</td>
<td>EG&amp;G, 1983; EPRI, 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent in wet ponds</td>
<td>39%/0</td>
<td>670%/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent in mines</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent used commercially</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>&lt;1%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See list of references at end of report.

*Quantities are in million metric tons (wet weight)

SOURCE Office of Technology Assessment, 1987

water contamination and land reclamation (141). These wastes are distinguished from unprocessed wastes arising from seafood cleaning, which are exempted from ocean dumping regulations (40 CFR 220.1(c)(i)).

Some 10 to 20 percent of utility coal wastes are currently recycled or reused in cement manufacture, building materials, road surfacing, sand blasting, roofing, and ice and snow control. While recycling and reuse will increase somewhat, it is not expected to keep up with increases in waste generation. By the year 2000, only an estimated 16 percent of utility coal ash and a much smaller fraction of FGD sludge will be recycled or reused (680). Thus, the vast majority of coal wastes will continue to require disposal.

In contrast to present practices, most future disposal—at least 80 percent—is expected to take place offsite because of insufficient onsite disposal capacity (Tobin, 1982, cited in ref. 140).

Potential for Marine Disposal

No coal ash or FGD sludge is currently disposed of in marine waters, except for research purposes. However, with land for disposal becoming increasingly scarce, and with accelerating coal conversion taking place in New England, the use of the ocean for such disposal has recently received attention: in particular, ConEdison of New York has requested permission to dump fly ash at the 106-mile deepwater disposal site (488). In the absence of regulatory restrictions on the ocean disposal of coal ash, over one-fourth of the total ash generated in the coastal regions (representing over one-tenth of the national total) might be economically disposed of in the ocean by 2000. Estimates for FGD sludge are even higher: about 40 percent of all the FGD sludge generated in coastal regions in 2000, representing over one-fourth of the national total (140). Estimated costs for ocean disposal are about $5 per metric ton, compared to about $16 per metric ton for landfilling (1982 dollars)." Utility coal ash has been dumped in marine waters for many years by the United Kingdom (131, 401). In the United States, two research projects involving dumping of consolidated coal ash in the New York Bight have been conducted (131), and it is possible that coal-waste blocks could be used to construct artificial reefs in both marine and freshwater environments (131, 213).

Fate, Availability, and Impact of Waste Constituents

The principal problems associated with marine disposal of untreated coal ash or FGD sludge include dissolved oxygen depletion, increased turbidity, sulfite toxicity to marine organisms, smothering of benthic organisms, and release of metals. These concerns particularly limit the potential for disposing of FGD wastes in marine waters (131). A promising potential option to address these problems involves the consolidation of a mixture...
of FGD sludge, fly ash, and lime into solid forms (433). The resulting material exhibits significantly decreased release rates for sulfite and metals, and resulting leachates show reduced toxicity to marine organisms. The consolidated material maintains structural integrity over periods of years in the marine environment, and may therefore be an appropriate material for building artificial reefs to provide substrates for colonization by marine organisms and enhance fisheries.
Appendixes
Appendix A

Acknowledgments

Contractors

Arthur D. Little, Inc.
Brookhaven National Laboratory
EG&G Washington Analytical Services Center, Inc.
Chris Elfring, Editor
Florida Institute of Technology
Jay Grimes, University of Maryland
Joseph O'Connor, New York University Medical Center
Willis Pequegnat
Resources For the Future
Science and Public Policy Program, University of Oklahoma
Science Applications International Corp.

OTA Services

The unsung heroes of every OTA assessment:

- Information Center
- Publishing Office
- Service Center

Reviewers and Other Contributors

Many individuals and organizations contributed valuable information, guidance, and substantive reviews of draft material OTA wishes to extend its gratitude to the following for their help (and apologizes to any contributors inadvertently omitted from this list):

Talibah Adisa, Dade County Department of Environmental Resources Management
Ken Adler, Environmental Protection Agency
Lorenzo Alonzo, Houston Public Works Department
Blake Anderson, County Sanitation Districts of Orange County
Vyto Andreliunas, Corps of Engineers New England Division
Forest Arnold, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Judith Ayres, Environmental Protection Agency Region IX
James Bajek, Corps of Engineers New England Division
Dru Barrineau, Corps of Engineers Mobile District
Dan Basta, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Bob Bastian, Environmental Protection Agency
Warren Baxter, Corps of Engineers Seattle District
Ed Bender, Environmental Protection Agency
D. W'. Bennett, American Littoral Society
Harvey Beverly, Corps of Engineers Los Angeles District
Rosina Bierbaum, Office of Technology Assessment
Allen Blume, Center for Environmental Education
Donald Boesch, Louisiana Universities Marine Consortium
Suzanne Bolton, Battelle Columbus Laboratories
Charles Bookman, National Academy of Sciences
James Borberg, Hampton Roads Sanitation District
Robert Borchardt, Houston Public Works Division
David Brailer, Environmental Defense Fund
William Brandt, Dade County' Department of Environmental Resources Management
N. H. Brooks, California Institute of Technology
David Brown, Southern California Coastal Water Research Project
Robert Burd, Environmental Protection Agency Region X
Jack Campbell, South Dade Soil and Water Conservation District
Judy Capuzzo, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution
Charles Carry, Sanitation Districts of Los Angeles County
Mike Champ, Science Applications International Corp.
Frank Covington, Environmental Protection Agency Region IX
Jerome Cura, Goldberg-Zoino & Associates, Inc.
Clif Curtis, The Oceanic Society
Phil Dagatano, New York State Department of Environmental Conservation
Tudor Davies, Environmental Protection Agency
Jack Davis, Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Author-ity
Ron DeCesare, Environmental Protection Agency
Stephen C. Delaney, Environmental Protection Agency
D.A. Dennis, Corps of Engineers Sacramento District
Harriet Diamond, Massachusetts Coastal Zone Management
Iver Duedall, Florida Institute of Technology
Al Dufour, Environmental Protection Agency
Robert Dyer, Environmental Protection Agency
Charles Ehler, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Linda O'Leary, Port Authority; of New York
Robert Ottesen, Corps of Engineers Jacksonville District
Henry Peskin, Resources For the Future
Carolyn Smith Pravlik, Terris & Sunderland
Andrew Robertson, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Robert Robichaud, Environmental Protection Agency Region X
Gilbert Rowe, Brookhaven National Laboratory
Marvin Rubin, Environmental Protection Agency
Thomas Schinazi, Corps of Engineers Philadelphia District
Lewis Schinazi, (California Regional Water Quality Control Board Moira Schoen, Environmental Protection Agency
Doug Segar, Aquatic Habitat Institute
Frank Senske, Philadelphia Water Department
Peter Shelley, Conservation Law Foundation
Diane Sheridan, League of Women Voters of Texas
Keith Silva, Environmental Protection Agency Region IX
Jerome Simpson, Corps of Engineers Portland District
Carl Sindermann, University of Miami
Kirvil Skinnerland, Puget Sound Water Authority
John Spencer, Seattle METRO
Elisa Speranza, Massachusetts Water Resources Authority
Frank Steimle, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
William Stelle, Jr., House Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries
Harold Stevenson, McNeese State University
Frank Sweeney, Science Applications International Corp.
Fern Summer, Water & Wastewater Equipment Manufacturers Association
Dennis Suszekowski, Environmental Protection Agency Region II
Wayne Sylvester, Sanitation Districts of Orange County
John Tavolaro, Corps of Engineers New York District
Nancy Taylor, Sierra Club Clean Coastal Waters Task Force
Joe Teller, Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority
Thomas Thornton, Environmental Protection Agency Region II

Peter Trick, Science Applications International Corp.
Glenn Unterburger, Environmental Protection Agency
Ron Varm, Corps of Engineers Norfolk District
John Waesche, Jardine Insurance Brokers, Inc.
Eric Washburn, Science Applications International Corp.
Thomas Walton, Philadelphia Water Department
Al Wastler, Environmental Protection Agency
Ginger Webster, Environmental Protection Agency
Judith Weis, Rutgers University
Bill Westermeyer, Office of Technology Assessment
Lee White, White, Fine, & Verville
Gene Whitehurst, Corps of Engineers Norfolk District
Richard Whitsel, California Regional Water Quality Control Board
Joe Wilson, Corps of Engineers
Douglas Wolle, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Thomas Yourk, Corps of Engineers Savannah District
Chris Zarba, Environmental Protection Agency

Participants in Dredged Material Workshop, July 23, 1985

The following individuals participated in a workshop held by OTA on the disposal of dredged material:

Bill Conner, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Robert Engler, Waterways Experiment Station
Dan Farrow, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Tim Goodger, National Marine Fisheries Service
Frank Hamons, Maryland Port Administration
David Hankla, Fish and Wildlife Service
George Hanson, Fish and Wildlife Service
Jim Houston, Waterways Experiment Station
Kerr Kamlet, A. T. Kearney, Inc. (formerly with National Wildlife Federation)
Bob Morton, Science Applications International Corp.
Tom O’Connor, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Willis Pequegnat, Consultant
Ronald Vann, Waterways Experiment Station
Al Wastler, Environmental Protection Agency
### Appendix B

#### Acronyms and Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AO</td>
<td>Administrative Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAT</td>
<td>Best Available Technology (Economically Achievable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCT</td>
<td>Best Conventional Pollutant Control Technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR</td>
<td>Baseline Monitoring Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOD</td>
<td>Biochemical Oxygen Demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPJ</td>
<td>Best Professional Judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPT</td>
<td>Best Practicable Control Technology (Currently Available)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBP</td>
<td>Chesapeake Bay Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEQ</td>
<td>Council on Environmental Quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CERCLA</td>
<td>Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFR</td>
<td>Code of Federal Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COE</td>
<td>U.S. Army Corps of Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI</td>
<td>Compliance Sampling Inspection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSO</td>
<td>Combined Sewer Overflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWA</td>
<td>Clean Water Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZMA</td>
<td>Coastal Zone Management Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAF</td>
<td>Dissolved Air Flotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDT</td>
<td>Dichlorodiphenyl Trichloroethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMR</td>
<td>Discharge Monitoring Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOJ</td>
<td>Department of Justice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDF</td>
<td>Environmental Defense Fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIL</td>
<td>Environmental Impairment Liability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIS</td>
<td>Environmental Impact Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMS</td>
<td>Enforcement Management System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EP</td>
<td>Extraction Procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDA</td>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDF</td>
<td>Fundamentally Different Factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGD</td>
<td>Flue Gas Desulfurization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR</td>
<td>Federal Register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FWS</td>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAO</td>
<td>General Accounting Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCWDA</td>
<td>Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDC</td>
<td>London Dumping Convention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLW</td>
<td>Low-level Radioactive Waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDSD</td>
<td>Monitoring and Data Support Division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPRSA</td>
<td>Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NACOA</td>
<td>National Advisory Committee on Oceans and Atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEA</td>
<td>Nuclear Energy Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEMP</td>
<td>Northeast Monitoring Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEP</td>
<td>National Estuary Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEPA</td>
<td>National Environmental Policy Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIMBY</td>
<td>Not In My Backyard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMFS</td>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMPP</td>
<td>National Marine Pollution Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOAA</td>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPDES</td>
<td>National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRDC</td>
<td>Natural Resource Defense Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSPS</td>
<td>New Source Performance Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAD</td>
<td>Ocean Assessments Division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OADPS</td>
<td>Ocean Assessments Division Program Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCEAN</td>
<td>Oceanic Environment Division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIP</td>
<td>Oceanic Monitoring Initiative Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMP</td>
<td>Ocean Monitoring Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMPM</td>
<td>Ocean Monitoring Program Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMPN</td>
<td>Ocean Monitoring Program Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORNL</td>
<td>Oak Ridge National Laboratory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSMP</td>
<td>Oceanic Science and Monitoring Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSE</td>
<td>Oceanic Sciences and Engineering Division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSPP</td>
<td>Ocean Science and Policy Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFRP</td>
<td>Process to Further Reduce Pathogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIRT</td>
<td>Pretreatment Implementation Review Task Force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POTW</td>
<td>Publicly Owned Treatment Works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSES</td>
<td>Pretreatment Standards for Existing Sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSNS</td>
<td>Pretreatment Standards for New Sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSRP</td>
<td>Process to Significantly Reduce Pathogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSWQA</td>
<td>Puget Sound Water Quality Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QNCR</td>
<td>Quarterly Noncompliance Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCRA</td>
<td>Resource Conservation and Recovery Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFF</td>
<td>Resources For the Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAB</td>
<td>Science Advisory Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SASSR</td>
<td>Semi-Annual Statistical Summary Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAV</td>
<td>Submerged Aquatic Vegetation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCCWRP</td>
<td>Southern California Coastal Water Research Project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNC</td>
<td>Significant Noncompliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPMS</td>
<td>Strategic Planning and Management System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBT</td>
<td>Tributyltin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCDD</td>
<td>Tetrachlorodioxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCDF</td>
<td>Tetrachlorodibenzofuran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCLP</td>
<td>Toxic Characteristic Leachate Procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSCA</td>
<td>Toxic Substances Control Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS</td>
<td>Total Suspended Solids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USGS</td>
<td>U.S. Geological Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VRAC</td>
<td>Violation Review Action Criteria</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References
References

42. Bowden, W. B., "Nutrients in Albemarle Sound" (Raleigh, NC: University of North Carolina Sea Grant, 1977).
References

1. Bryan, E. H., “Innovative Management of Resid-
uals-Research Needs,” in Public Waste Manage-
ment and the Ocean Choice, MIT Sea Grant College Program, April 1986, pp. 85-93.
2. Burge, W. D., and Marsh, P. B., “Infectious Dis-
ease Hazards of Landspreading Sewage Wastes, Jour-
Planning for Dredged Material Disposal, in Dredging and Dredged Material Disposal, Con-
ference Proceedings (New York: American Society
of Civil Engineers, November 1984), pp. 999-1005.
Impacts of Aquatic Dredged Material Disposal
(Laboratory Investigations), Technical Report DS-
78-4 (Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Water-
ways Experiment Station, 1978).
5. Cabelli, V. J., Dufour, A. P., et al., “Swimming-
Associated Gastroenteritis and Water Quality, American Journal of Epidemiology 115:606-616,
1982.
Species, Bioscience 36(10):670-672, November
1986.
Marine Mammals and Alarine Birds: Population
Health and Evidence of Pollution Effects, Tech-
nical Memorandum NOS OMA 18 (Seattle, WA:
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administra-
tion, 1985).
8. California Regional Water Quality Control Board,
San Francisco Bay Region, Aquatic Habitat Pro-
gram, information sheet (Oakland, CA: undated).
9. California Regional Water Quality Control Board,
San Francisco Bay Region, ‘Second Draft Basin
Review Document, File No. 1537.00 (SRR) (Oak-
10. California State Water Resources Control Board,
Water Quality Control Plan, Ocean Waters of
California (Sacramento, CA: November 1983).
11. California State Water Resources Control Board,
Water Quality Inventory for Years 1982 & 1983,
Water Quality Monitoring Report No. 84-3TS
12. California State Water Resources Control Board,
‘Plan for Assessing the Effects of Pollutants in the
San Francisco Bay-Delta Estuary, Aquatic Habitat
13. California State Water Resources Control Board,
California State Mussel Watch 1983-84, Water Quality Monitoring Report No. 85-2 WQ(Sacra-
14. Callahan, M., et al., Water-Related Fate of 129


97. Citizens for a Better Environment, Toxics Control at the Source: Industrial Pretreatment of
122. Dalpra, C., ‘Secondary Treatment Waivers Issued, Controversy Cent inues, Water Pollution (on


148. Environmental Policy Alert, “Boston Harbor Dis-


163. Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, Biology Section, Bioassays of Frost Seafoods (Scallop Processing Facility!), St Augustine, St. Johns County, Florida (Tallahassee, FL: July 1985.)


165. Florida Institute of Technology, Definition of the Oceanic, Atmospheric, and Terrestrial Media, an Overview of Resources and Processes in These Media, and a Discussion of the Concepts of Asimilative Capacity and Resilience, contract prepared for U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment (Melbourne, FL: 1986).


172. Freeman, A. M., ‘The Ethical Basis of the Eco-
The Oceans as Waste Space: Viral Pollution of the Marine Environment. DDT, PCB and Benzo(a)pyrene Levels in White Croaker (Genyonemus lineatus) From Southern California, Marine Pollution Bulletin 14(2):60-65, February 1983.


Government of the State of Sao Paulo, Environmental Pollution Control in Cubatao, Results Report July 83 to July 86 (Sao Paulo, Brazil: 1986).


Grasse, J. F., et al., Contaminant Levels and Relative Sensitivities to Contamination in the Deep-Ocean Communities, NOAA Technical


Government of the State of Sao Paulo, Environmental Pollution Control in Cubatao, Results Report July 83 to July 86 (Sao Paulo, Brazil: 1986).


Grasse, J. F., et al., Contaminant Levels and Relative Sensitivities to Contamination in the Deep-Ocean Communities, NOAA Technical


228. "Hawaii Department of Health, 305(b) Report on Water Quality (Honolulu, HI: April 1986).


251. Johnson, E. L., 'Seventh District Court Decision on TMDLs, Memorandum to Regional Water Management Division Directors and Regional Environmental Services Division Directors' (Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water Regulations and Standards, October 23, 1984).

References


274. Kluwe, W., et al., ‘‘Carcinogenicity Testing of Phthalate Esters and Related Compounds by the National Toxicology Testing Program and the National Cancer Institute, Environmental Health Perspectives 45: 129-133, 1982.


301. Lee, C. R., Smart, R. M., et al., Prediction of
Heavy A fetal Uptake by Marsh Plants Based on Chemical Extraction of Heavy Metals From Dredged Material, Technical Report D-78-6 (Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, 1978).


Leschane, T. M., "Economic Charges as Incentives for Pollution Control, in Puget Sound Notes (Seattle, WA: L. S. Environmental Protection Agency Region X, September 1986), pp. 3-6.


Livingston, R. J., Historic Trends of Human Impacts on Seagrass Meadows in Florida (St. Petersburg, FL: Florida Department of Natural Resources, Bureau of Marine Research, manuscript dated Aug. 1, 1986).


Louisiana Department of Environmental Quality, Office of Water Resources, Water Pollution Control Division, Louisiana Water Quality Report (Baton Rouge, LA, 1984).


MacLeod, W., et al., Analysis of Residual Chlo-


335. Maryland Department of Health and Mental Hygiene, Office of Environmental Programs, Maryland Water Quality Inventory (Baltimore, MD: Apr. 15, 1986).

336. Massachusetts Department of Environmental Quality Engineering, Division of Water Pollution Control, Commonwealth of Massachusetts Summary of Water Quality, 1986; Appendix III—

337. Massachusetts Executive Office of Environmental Affairs, Department of Fisheries, Wildlife & Environmental Law Enforcement, Massachusetts Marine Fisheries, Assessment at Mid-Decade (Boston, MA: November 1985).


348. Meade, N. F., and Leeworthy, V., Public Expend-


359. Mississippi Department of Natural Resources, 1984 Water Quality Report to Congress (Jackson, MS: June 1984).


397. North Carolina Department of Natural Resources
and Community Development, Division of Environmental Management, ChownAlbermarle Action Plan, Report No 82-02 (Raleigh, NC: 1982).


399. Nor


419. Ohendorf, H. M., et al., "Reproduction and Or-
References. 293


452. Poukish, C. A., and Allison, J. T., ‘‘1985 Maryland Fish Kill Summary’’ draft (Annapolis, MD: Maryland Department of Health and Mental Hygiene, Office of Environmental Programs, 1986).


454. Prue-Sedgwick, Inc., Sarasota Bay Water Quality Study (Tallahassee, FL: Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, Jan. 21, 1983).


469. ReNewsletter, ‘‘Metro Begins Large-Scale Silvigrow Application, ReNewsletter vol. 2. No. 3 (Seattle, WA: Metro, November 1985).


475. Reinisch, C.L., Charles, A. M., and Stone, A. M.,


477. Resources For the Future, ‘‘An Overview of the RFF Environmental Data Inventory: Methods, Sources and Preliminary Results, Volume I” (Washington, DC: September 1984).


500. Schubel, J. R., et al., Field Intestimations of the


522. Snyder, C., et al., "Evidence for Hematotoxicity..."


References • 297


596. U. S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic


600 U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Ocean Assessments Division, The National Coastal Pollution Discharge Inventory (Rockville, MD: July 1985).


References • 299


633. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Center for Environmental Research Information, Environmental Pollution Control Alternatives—Municipal Wastewater, EPA-625/1-79-012 (Cincinnati, OH: November 1979).


636. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 1, Impacts of Wastewater Disinfection Practices on Coldwater Fisheries, EPA 901-82-000 (Boston, MA: July 1982).


656. L. S. Environmental Protection Agency. Office of


685. Water and Wastewater Equipment Manufacturers Association, Inc., Testimony Before the Subcommittee on Water Resources, House Public Works and Transportation Committee, 'Hearings on Possible Amendments to the Federal Water Pol-


708. Wright, T. D., Aquatic Dredged Material Disposal...
Wastes in Marine Environments


Index
impacts on marine resources: see specific pollutants, reversal and recovery
industrial discharges: 3,6,13,14,177-180,182-193,196-204
amounts of effluents: 186
amounts of priority pollutants: 64,186,187,212
compliance: see NPDES
direct v. indirect: 177,182,185,186,188,197-199,212
effects on municipal facilities: see municipal sewage treatment
exempt from regulation, nonregulated: 26,28,179,185,192,193
expected reduction of priority pollutants: 186-189,193,226
industrial categories: 179,180,183
numbers: 13,14,60,70,72,105
regulatory framework: see NPDES
Industrial Facilities Database: 70
industrial wastes
acid and alkaline wastes: 6,15,260-262
amounts dumped: 63,67,73,257,260-263
cold ash: 15,34,258,264-266
current management practices: 258
discharges: see industrial dischargers, NPDES
drilling fluids: 15,258-260
dumping sites: see dumping sites
fish (seafood) processing waste: 6,15,258,263,264
flue-gas desulfurization sludge: 15,257,264-266
pharmaceutical waste: 258,262,263
regulatory framework: 258
information-gathering programs: see monitoring and research
kepone: 22,129
land-based disposal: see sewage sludge, dredged material availability: 9,11,30,218,221,224,233,251
liability: see public concerns and issues
lobster: 11,215
London Dumping Convention: 63,69,73,74,76,148,149,238,248
Louisiana: 11,29,100-102,116,136,200
Low-Level Radioactive Waste Policy Amendments Act: 68,145
Manhattan Project: 69
marine environments: see estuaries, coastal waters, open ocean
pressure to use for disposal: 7,9,25,26,34,35

permitting provisions: 33,146,150,230
philosophical perspectives: 46
Ocean Dumping Amendments Act: 72
Ocean Dumping Criteria and Regulations: 29,148,150,151,238
specific provisions: 144
MARPOL (International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships): 70,77,149
mercury: 39,62,64,94,124-126,125,224,245,251,260
metals: bioaccumulation: 16,92,94,125,126
bioavailability: 59,91,94,124
biomagnification: 16,92,94,125,126
impacts: 95,105,129-132
internal regulation by organisms: 94
of primary concern: 129,124
pathways to and impacts on humans: 12.5,126,129-132
microorganisms: see pathogens
Minerals Management Service: 258,260
Mississippi River: 15,20,63,183,162-164
Mississippi Sound: 21,116,117
Monitoring and Data Support Division: 86,189
monitoring and research: 10,12,31,35,36,165-169,171-174 (also see NPDES)
effectiveness: 12,13,165,166
environmental impact: 13,60
funding: 10,26,165-169,171-171
in format: monitoring programs: 12.13,165-169,171-174
need for coordination and integration: 13,169
whole effluent toxicity tests: 13,60,96,206
waste assessment see comprehensive waste management
municipal dischargers: 3,6,13,14
amount of effluent: 71,72
amount of effluent: NPDES Ess
compliance: see NPDES
numbers: 13,14,60,70,138
regulatory framework: see NPDES
municipal sewage treatment (POTWs): 13-169,26
construction of treatment plants: 11,29,5,201 (also see Construction Grants Program)
disposal of sewage sludge: 220
sewage sludge generation of sewage sludge: 11
incentives to implement pretreatment program: 201-204
incidental removal: 184.188,215,216,227
industrial disc harses: POTWs: 72,177,182-184,186,188,192,193,203,204-211,212-220,227
National Municipal Policy: 178,20,21,217,219,221-227
National Municipal Policy: 201-204,225-227
removal of municipal sewage sludge: see role in management of industrial wastes: 13,28,182-184,215-226,227
removal of municipal sewage sludge: see role in management of industrial wastes: 13,28,182-184,215-226,227

treatment levels: 21,25,151,116,211-231-233

309
municipal, industrial noncompliance: 197, 198, 225, 226

Permit Compliance System: 1—181, 182
Quarterly Noncompliance Report: 181, 186
self-reporting: 179, 195, 196

Semi-Annual Statistical Summary Report: 181
significant noncompliance: 180, 181, 197-199, 200" tools for tracking: 181

Violation Review Action Criteria: 181

enforcement: 27
administration orders: 181, 200", 201
Enforcement Management System: 179, 180, 182
judicial referrals: 181

number of enforcement actions: 199, 200
penalties: 11, 27, 201, 202
resources: 7, 1 (.25-72, 180, 182, 189, 202, 203
monitoring: 7, 179
Baseline Monitoring Report: 184
Discharge Monitoring Report: 181, 182, 186
resources: 7, 1, 189
permits: 152, 178, 210, 259, 263
backlogs: 191, 192
backsliding: 11, 195

regulations for categorical industries: 190(also see standards)

regulations for municipal dischargers: 178, 179 standards and limitations: see standards
structure and responsibilities: 152, 178, 179

Nuclear Energy Agency: 69, 74

nutrients: 90, 91
eutrophication: 16, 17, 22, 90, 91, 1, 115, 116, 118, 1, 19, 22, 3
nitrogen, nitrates: 7, 62, 65
phosphorus: 7,15, 62, 64, 65

Ocean Discharge Criteria: see Clean Water Act
Ocean Dumping Act: see Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act

Ocean Dumping Criteria: see Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act

ocean incineration: 3, 33, 48, 50
Office of Marine and Estuarine Protection: 154
oil and grease: 6
open ocean: 4

Constraints on disposal: 9, 34
features: 18, 34, 86, 87
general health: 3, 8, 9, 18
issues and policy options: 10-12, 33-35.5
susceptibility to impacts: 18, 86
use for waste disposal: 3, 4, 1 (.15, 18, 23, 24, 33-35, 60, 63
value: 18, 86

Orange County, proposed discharge of sludge: 221, 230

Organic Chemicals, Plastics, and Synthetic Fibers (OCPSF): 187, 188, 190, 191, 194

organic chemicals
bioaccumulation: 16, 59, 92-94, 129, 130, 224
bioavailability: 91
biomagnification: 16, 59, 92, 94, 104, 129, 130
classification, screening: 6, 59, 127-131
impacts: 104-106, 129-133

Narragansett Bay: 70, 102, 119, 36, 154, 245
National Advisory Committee on Oceans and Atmosphere (NACOA): 143
National Environmental Policy Act: 145
National Marine Sanctuary Program: 148
National ocean Pollution Planning Act: 13, 145, 171
NationalOceanic and Atmospheric Administration: 11-13, 16, 27, 57, 58, 131, 147, 1, 54, 157, 167
National Coastal Pollution Discharge Inventory: 16, 157, 167
National Estuary Inventory: 165
National Estuary Program: 32
National Marine Pollution Program: 131, 67, 169, 171, 172
NationalOcean Service: 165, 166
Ocean Assessments Division: 169, 172-174
Status and Trends Program: 173, 174
National Pretreatment Program: 25, 152, 156, 177
Approval Authority: 183
Control authority: 183
General Pretreatment Regulations: 182-185, 199
local limits: 28, 185, 191, 203, 204, 227
National Categorical Standards and regulations: 182, 183, 185, 189, 202, 199
Pretreatment Implementation Review Task Force: 203 standards and limitations: see standards
status of implementional ion: 183, 188, 189, 202, 204
structure and responsibilities: 182-184
National Shellfish Register: see shellfish
Natural Resources Defense Council: 152, 153, 179
Navy: 68, 76
Near-CoastalWaters Strategic Planning Initiative: 155
New Bedford Harbor and Buzzards Bay: 44, 96, 103, 119, 129, 154
New York Bight: 4, 11, 15, 17, 22, 23, 60, 64, 86, 1 (-), 11, 3, 119, 129, 3-4, 151, 219, 222, 223, 244, 245, 252, 253
pollutant inputs and impacts: 15, 64, 65
Restoration Plan: 23
New York City v. EPA decision: 34, 46, 47, 143, 146, 150, 151, 210, 219
nonpoint pollution: 3, 5, 1 (.), 11, 15, 24, 25, 64, 65, 72, 75, 78
agricultural runoff: 3, 6, 7, 78
urban runoff: 3, 6, 7, 72
Northeast Monitoring Program: 172
adequacy of implementational ion and coverage: 7, 24-26, 156, 188-202
compliance: 156, 195-199
compliance sampling inspection: 181, 196
deadlines: 11, 153, 191, 210
extent of noncompliance: 195-199
internal regulation by organisms: 94
pathways to and impacts on humans: 129-133
Oslo Convention: 149
Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act: 258, 260
oxygen-demanding substances: 90
biochemical oxygen demand: 6, 62, 90, 211, 213
hypoxia and anoxia: 16, 17, 20, 22, 90, 100, 101, 107, 113, 116, 118, 119, 223

Pacific coast
California and Hawaii: 13, 61, 62, 64, 66, 72, 109, 114, 115, 199
northern: 62, 64, 109, 113, 114
pathogens: 91, 134, 263
bacteria: 133-140
contamination of shellfish: see shellfish
depuration: 139, 140
disinfection: see disinfection
genetic engineering: 13, 222
monitoring: 60, 91, 137
parasites: 134
pathways to and impacts on humans: 16, 135-138
shortcomings of current standards: 138
viability on land: 224
viability in marine waters: 91, 135, 138, 139
viruses: 133-140
penalties: see NPDES
Permit Compliance System: see NPDES
permits: see NPDES, Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act
pharmaceutical waste: see industrial wastes
philosophical perspectives: 39, 40, 44-46
balancing factors: 45, 143
comparing CWA v. MPRSA: 46, 47, 43, 177
global view: 45
plastics: 76, 77
point sources: see industrial dischargers
municipal dischargers
pollutant control programs: see NPDES, National Pretreatment Program
pollutants (also see individual pollutants)
conventional: 6, 59, 63, 152, 179
expected reductions: see industrial dischargers
hazardous: see RCRA
inputs, quality of information: 57, 58
linking with impacts: 16, 90-94, 99
nonconventional: 6, 59, 63, 152, 179
pathways to humans: see human health impacts
persistent v. labile: 123, 127
priority pollutants, list: 6, 7, 58, 132, 179, 186-189, 194, 206, 212
regulated v. unregulated: 7, 8, 179
relative contribution by major sources: 15, 62-64, 193
toxic: 6, 63, 152, 177, 179, 212, 224 (also see metals, organic chemicals)
unregulated pollutants: 26, 28, 58, 156, 188, 193, 194, 227
polybrominated biphenyls (PCBs): 8, 15, 20, 39, 43, 44, 65, 90
polychlorinated aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs): 60, 94, 102, 103, 123, 129-131, 133, 136
Port and Tanker Safety Act: 145
productivity of marine waters: 34, 81, 82, 84, 86
public concerns and issues: 3, 39, 40, 49-53
equity: 40, 49, 50
liability: 49, 51
NIMBY: 50
public participation: 40, 50, 51, 159, 164
risk acceptability: 9, 40, 50, 51, 53
siting: 49, 50
Public Health Advisors: 131
publicly owned treatment works (POTWs): see municipal sewage treatment
Puget Sound: 10, 19, 32, 70, 86, 102, 103, 112-114, 129, 131, 136, 154, 163, 194, 196, 224
pyrocynelines: 82
radioactive waste
high-level radioactive waste: 3, 74
low-level radioactive waste: 6, 68-70, 145
land-based disposal: 68
marine disposal: 68, 69, 74
moratorium: 33, 68, 69, 74
State compacts: 70
Domestic Sewage Exemption: 28, 147, 204, 210, 212, 227 extraction procedure (EP) toxicity test: 242
Hazardous and Solid Wastes Amendments: 147
small quantity generators: 147, 204
toxic characteristic leachate procedure (TCLP): 242
Resources for the Future: 16, 57, 58
reversal and recovery: 16, 17, 95
accommodative capacity: 93, 96
assimilative capacity: 95
Safe Drinking Water Act: 145
San Francisco Bay: 4, 19, 20, 70, 85, 108, 112, 115, 125, 131, 136, 154, 156, 183
San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board: 20, 160, 163, 169, 170
Santa Monica Bay: 110, 131
Science Advisory Board: 30, 228
screening
pollutants: 59
waterbodies: 32
seafood processing wastes: see industrial wastes
Sea Grant Program: 166
sediment quality criteria: 31, 242, 248
sediments
contamination with toxic material: 17, 26, 103, 104
physical modification: 16, 103
destabilization, accumulation of particles: see fate of pollutants
sewage sludge (also see municipal sewage treatment)
amount and composition: 71,72,216,217
disinfection: see disinfection
disposal technologies: 209,219
general fate when discharged: 88,222
impacts: 223-225 (also see specific pollutants)
role of marine waters in disposal: 231-233
treatment processes: see municipal sewage treatment
sludge (also see municipal sewage treatment)
amounts: 14,60,67,73,217,219,220
beneficial use: 10,34,223,224,233
composition: 212,216
costs of dumping sludge:221
discharge through pipeline: 72,221,230
disposal technologies
  distribution and marketing: 217,218
dumping: 14,15,218-221
  incineration: 218,224,233
  land application: 217,218,224,233
  landfills: 218,224
general fate when dumped: 87,221,222
impacts: 139,223-225 (also see specific pollutants)
regulations for disposal: 11,227,228,233
role of marine waters in disposal: 9,229-231
State programs: 227,228
treatment technologies: see municipal sewage treatment
uncontaminated vs. contaminated: 8,229,233
shellfish
  commercial value: see value of marine resources
contamination by pathogens: 16,101,108,113-115,118,
  119,135,137,138,223
contamination by toxic pollutants: 17,107,108,115,129,
  136
National Shellfish Register: 108,109,165,174
shifting disposal activities to other media: 7,9,34
Southern California Bight: 4,17,86,103,115,222,223,230
Southern California Coastal Water Resource Project: 29,
  1,57,159,160,163,169
species diversity: 17,82
standards:
  BAT (best available technology): 153,184,186-189,192,
    195,259,260
  BCT (best conventional technology): 153,184,189
  BPJ (best professional judgment): 188,191,192,194,195
  BPT (best practicable technology): 1,53,184,195,259
  compliance deadlines: see NPDES
  effluent limit ion: 152
  list of standards or limits: 26,193,194,203-206,226,227
  NSPS (new source performance standards): 153, 184,258
  PSS/s (pretreatment standards for existing sources):
    153,184,186,187,189
  PSNS (pretreatment standards for new sources):
    153,184
  secondary treatment: 152,184 (also see municipal sewage treatment)
  toxic (t-nil-logic) base'd standards: 153,184,206
  toxic effluent standards: 153,184
  water quality-based standards: see water quality approach
State responsibilities, programs: 11,13,25,30,153,162,179,
  183,205,227,228
State revolving loan funds: see Construction Grants Program
  striped bass: 22,43,52,93,118
  submerged aquatic vegetation, kelp: 1,17,22,25,26,81,86,
    117,113,115,120
  Subsaharan Working Group: 74
Supersurf.: see CERCLA
  surfacemicrolayer: 82,102
  suspended solids: 6,15,221,230
  territorial sea: 4,143
Toxic Substances Control Act: 145,210
trapping: see fate of pollutants
tributyltin (TBT): 77
  turbidity: 17,93,244
United Nations Regional Seas Programme: 76,149
unreasonable degradation, definition: 154
value of marine resources: 39-43,166,167
  commercial: 19-22,39,41-44
  esthetic: 39
  recreational: 39,40,43
waiver from secondary treatment: see municipal sewage treatment
waste reduction: see comprehensive waste management
waterbed: management: 8,124,157,159-165 (also see
  water quality approach)
effectiveness: 29,30
  framework: 10,30-33
  programs: 29,30,157
water conservation and reclamation: 9,217,231
Water Quality Act: 10,1,12,26,27,30,31,151,152,154,
  155,182,202,205,214
  estuarine management: see references: 11,155
specific provisions: 11
water quality approach: 10,30-33,205,206
  Federal water quality criteria: 205,206
  water quality standards: 30,58,153,194,205,206,227
  framework to implement: 10,30-33
Water Resources Development Act: 241
West Germany Federal Water Act: 158
whole effluent toxicity tests: see monitoring and research
acid and alkaline wastes: see industrial wastes  
Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds: 154  
Alleged Chemical: 260,261  
Aquatic Habitat Institute: 20,157,159,160,163,169  
assimilative capacity: see reversal and recovery  
Atlantic coast: 66,100  
 northern (Northeast): 61,62,64,72,75,102,103, 
  109-119,120  
 southern (Southeast): 17,61,62,75,107  
  109,118,119  
bacteria: see pathogens  
basin line: 4  
beach closures: 17,102,115,119  
benthic (or bottom-dwelling) organisms: 110,113,114  
 physical burial: 16,91,104,113,245  
best available technology (BAT): see standards  
bioaccumulation: see metals, organic chemicals  
biochemical oxygen demand: see oxygen-demanding substances  
bio magnification: see metals, organic chemicals  
Brazil: 138,150  
brown pelican: 96,104  
Bureau of the Census: 166  
Buzzards Bay: see New Bedford Harbor  
cadmium: 62,64,65,94,127,136,258  
California list wastes: 147  
California Ocean Plan: 13  
canvasback ducks: 104,105  
CERCLA (Superfund): 17,44,49,51,103,114,145,212,238  
Chesapeake Bay: 4,10,11,17,20,22,43,70,75,81,83,84, 
Chesapeake Bay Foundation: 164  
Chesapeake Bay Program: 8,10,22,29,33,155,157,159-165, 
  169  
Clean Air Act (CAA): 31,33,48,63,145,210  
Clean Water Act (CWA): 3-7,10,24-26,30,31,33,48,58,59, 
  76,143-145,151-156,177-179,102,105,194,195,210, 
  212,219,258,249,251,258  
coastwise planning: 33,155,156  
goals, general: 31,153,152,195  
goals, site-specific: 10,31,161,162  
National Municipal Policy: see municipal sewage treatment  
Ocean Discharge Criteria: 28,29,150,152-154,177,259  
philosophical perspectives: 46  
pollutant control programs: see NPDES, National  
  Pretreatment Program, and Construction Grants Program  
specific sections: 144,145  
Coast Guard: 24,77,147  
coastal waters: 4  
general health: 3,7-9,16,17  
features: 17,85,86  
issues and policy options: 9,10,24-33  
susceptibility to impacts: 17,85  
use for waste disposal: 3,9,13,14,17,24,60,63,71  
value: 8,16,86  
Coastal Zone Management Act: 33,145,238  
combined sewer system and overflow: 6,15,17,72,74,75, 
  133,219,224  
Commencement Bay: 19,103,110  
community structure: 82  
compliance, compliance deadlines: see NPDES  
comprehensive waste management: 8,35,40,47-49  
cross-media transfer: 47,48  
linkage of waste disposal policies: 24,30,34,35  
management hierarchy: 8,40,47-49  
multi-media assessment: 9,40,45,47-49  
recycling, beneficial use: 9,12,47  
reducing risk: 48  
role of marine waters: 3,8-12,24-35,228-233  
treatment and disposal: 47  
waste reduction: 9,12,45,47,48  
Construction Grants Program: 7,10,11,152,210,232  
funding: 11,25,26,209,210,224  
State revolving loan funds: 11,26,27,232  
contiguous zone: 143  
Corps of Engineers: 12,23,57,66,147,148,153,157,167, 
  237-242,246,247,251-253  
Council on Environmental Quality: 68,143  
currents: see fate of pollutants  
DIFT: 20,39,59,92,94-96,103-106,110,113,115,116, 
  129-132,136,230,242  
Department of Agriculture: 167  
Department of Energy: 69  
Department of Justice: 179,198  
discharges from pipelines: see industrial dischargers, municipal dischargers  
discharges into municipal sewers: see municipal sewage treatment  
disinfection: 139,213-215  
chlorination: 139,213  
chlorinated byproducts: 139,214,215  
effectiveness: 15,215  
ozonation: 214,215  
Processes to Further Reduce Pathogens: 214,215  
Processes to Significantly Reduce Pathogens: 214,215  
UV radiation: 214,215  
dissolved air flotation: 263,264  
Domestic Sewage Exemption: see RCRA  
dredged material  
amounts: 14,15,60,62,63,66,73,237,239,240  
composition: 66,242,243  
contamination: 237,242,250  
screening tests: 242,246-248  
sediment quality criteria: 242,248  
costs of disposal: 237,247,248,250  
disposal methods  
beneficial uses: 10,11,33,34,239,241  
capping: 11,34,238,248,249
contamination island: 248,249

dumping: 8,14,15,237,239

for contaminated matt’r: 11,248,249

upland contamination: 239, 244,2%, 248,249

disposal sites

designation process: 240

Hart-Miller Island: 249

numbers: 237,239

shortage of: 237,239,251-2.53

fate and impacts after disposal: 237,243-248 (also see specific pollutants)

long-term management plans: 252

pressure formarinedisposal: 240,241

regulatory framework: 148, 153,238,251-253

types of dredges: 242,243

drilling fluids: see industrial wastes

dumping: 3,4,6,11,14,60,63-67 (also see individual waste types)

1981 deadline: see New York City v. EPA decision

ammonia and sewage: 1 +60, 63,21,9

by other countries: 66,73,74,158

controlled MPRA: 4,33,35,46,143, 147,148,230

in termitpermits: 151

public issue: 3

dumping sites

12-Mile Sewage Sludge Dump Site: 9,14,47,67,219-221

Acid Waste Disposal Site: 14,67,257,260,261

Deepwater Industrial Waste Site: 4,23,67,257,261

Deepwater Municipal Sludge Site: 4,9,11,14,15,23,47,67,72-219-221,229

fish (seafood) processing wastes site: 263

interim 106-NI Ille: Ocean Waste Dump Site: 23

mid-Atlantic site: 67

Mud Dump Site: 244,2,52

Pharmaceutical Waste Site: 67,257,262

selection criteria: 12, 35

use of multiple sites: 35

Du Pont: 260,261

economic mechanisms: 35,46

effluent limitations: see standards

electroplating firms: 199

Endangered Species Act: 145

enforcement: see NPDES

environmental indices: see monitoring and research


estuaries: 4

general health: 3.7-9,16,17

issues and policy options: 9.1,0,24-33

susceptibility to impacts: 17,84,85

types and features: 1,8,13,83

used for waste disposal: 3.9,11,3,14,17,24,60,9,1,63,7,1,72,177

value: 8, 16,81

eutrophication: see nutrients

fate of pollutants

biological transport: 89,90

initial dilution: 87,221,222

physical transport (currents, mixing): 88,221

sediment deposition, accumulation of particulates: 16,89,90,222

bioturbation: 90

flocculation: 89

resuspension: 89

sedimentation: 84,89,90,222

trapping: 17,84

faecal coliform bacteria: 6,17,62,64,108,115,116,138 (also see pathogens)

usacidophyl indicator: 58,138

Federal Water Pollution Control Act: see Clean Water Act

fish

commercial fisheries: 19-22,41-44

fin erosion or rot: 112

massive kills: 17, 107, 108, 118, 119


Fish and Wildlife Service: 153,157,165,166,238

fish (seafood) processing waste: see industrial wastes

Flannery Decree: 152,153

flocculation: 84

flue-gas desulfurization sludge (FGD): see industrial wastes

Food and Drug Administration: 136,166

food chains or webs: 82,83,92,93

France River basin ecosystem: 158

fundamentally different factor: 1.52,205

Galveston Bay: 106,116,125

General Accounting Office: 192,197,200,201

Geological Survey: 167

Georges Bank: 86

Grays Harbor: 252

Great Lakes: 4,32

Great Lakes National Program: 33, 155,159,160,163

Toxic Substance Control Agreement: 169

Water Quality Agreement: 162,169

Water Quality Board: 162,164,169

Gulf Coast Waste Disposal Authority: 159,160,164,169


Hazardous and Solid Wastes Amendments: see RCRA

hazardous waste: see RCRA

- disposal sites: 7, 5

discharges to sewers: see municipal sewage treatment hot spots: 85,86,95,224

human health impacts: also see pathogens

acute effects: 125,126

cholera: 134, 136

effects of metals: see metals

effects of organic chemicals: see organic chemicals

gastroenteritis: 16,134,136-138

hepatitis: 16,1,34,137,140

incidence of reported disease: 17,136-138

limitations of data: 124,127,128

pollutant pathways: 123,125,135-138

risks from sewage sludge: 113,225

hypoxia: see oxygen-demanding substances